当代国外语言学与应用语言学文库

English Phonetics and Phonology: A Practical Course

英语语音学与音系学实用教程

Second edition

Peter Roach

外语教学与研究出版社
Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press
剑桥大学出版社
Cambridge University Press

当代国外语言学与应用语言学文库

English Phonetics and Phonology: A Practical Course

英语语音学与音系学实用教程

Second edition

Peter Roach 著

王嘉龄　导读

外语教学与研究出版社

剑桥大学出版社

(京)新登字 155 号

京权图字：01－2000－0163
图书在版编目(CIP)数据

英语语音学与音系学实用教程/(英)罗奇(Roach, P.)著；王嘉龄导读. －北京：外语教学与研究出版社，2000.8
ISBN 7－5600－1900－5

Ⅰ.英… Ⅱ.①罗… ②王… Ⅲ.①英语－语音学－教材 ②英语－音系学－教材 Ⅳ.H311

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2000)第 30848 号

English edition © Cambridge University Press 1983, 1991

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored or transmitted by any means without the prior permission of the publishers.

This edition of English Phonetics and Phonology, Second Edition by Peter Roach is published by arrangement with the Syndicate of the Press of the University of Cambridge, Cambridge, England. It is for sale in the People's Republic of China only.

本书由剑桥大学出版社授权外语教学与研究出版社出版

版权所有　翻印必究

英语语音学与音系学实用教程
Peter Roach　著
王嘉龄　导读
*　*　*
责任编辑：王春丽
出版发行：外语教学与研究出版社
社　　址：北京市西三环北路 19 号 (100089)
网　　址：http://www.fltrp.com.cn
印　　刷：北京外国语大学印刷厂
开　　本：650×980　1/16
印　　张：19.25
版　　次：2000 年 8 月第 1 版　2000 年 8 月第 1 次印刷
印　　数：1—5000 册
书　　号：ISBN 7－5600－1900－5/G·809
定　　价：25.90 元
*　*　*
如有印刷、装订质量问题出版社负责调换

当代国外语言学与应用语言学文库

专家委员会

主　任　王宗炎

副主任　（以姓氏笔画为序）

刘润清　吴一安　李朋义　沈家煊　陆俭明
陈国华　胡文仲　胡壮麟　徐烈炯　桂诗春
顾曰国　戴炜栋

委　员　（以姓氏笔画为序）

文秋芳　方　立　王才仁　王立弟　王克非
王初明　王逢鑫　王嘉龄　史宝辉　宁春岩
田贵森　申　丹　刘世生　朱永生　何兆熊
何自然　张绍杰　张柏然　张德禄　李宇明
李延福　李行德　李筱菊　杨永林　杨信彰
杨惠中　杜学增　汪榕培　邵永真　陈治安
周流溪　林连书　罗选民　姚小平　祝畹瑾
徐盛桓　秦秀白　贾玉新　顾　阳　高　远
高一虹　黄国文　惠　宇　董燕萍　蒋祖康
韩宝成　蓝　纯　潘永樑

策　划　霍庆文

Preface by Halliday

Foreign Language Teaching & Research Press is to be congratulated on its initiative in making these publications in linguistics available to foreign language teachers and postgraduate students of linguistics in China.

The books are a representative selection of up-to-date writings on the most important branches of linguistic studies, by scholars who are recognized as leading authorities in their fields.

The availability of such a broad range of materials in linguistics will greatly help individual teachers and students to build up their own knowledge and understanding of the subject. At the same time, it will also contribute to the development of linguistics as a discipline in Chinese universities and colleges, helping to overcome the divisions into "English linguistics", "Chinese linguistics" and so on which hinder the progress of linguistics as a unified science.

The series is to be highly commended for what it offers to all those wanting to gain insight into the nature of language, whether from a theoretical point of view or in application to their professional activities as language teachers. It is being launched at a time when there are increasing opportunities in China for pursuing linguistic studies, and I am confident that it will succeed in meeting these new requirements.

M. A. K. Halliday
Emeritus Professor
University of Sydney

王宗炎序

近年来，国际交往日益频繁，国际贸易急速发展，出现了一种前所未有的现象：学外语、教外语、用外语的人多了；研究语言学和应用语言学的人多了；开设这方面专业的高校也多了，语言学硕士生和博士生也多了。就是不以此为专业，学习语言学和应用语言学的也不乏其人。为了给从事这个专业的师生提供便利，同时又帮助一般外语教师、涉外工作者以及汉语研究者开阔思路，扩大视野，提高效率，我们献上这套内容崭新而丰富的丛书——英文版《当代国外语言学与应用语言学文库》。

文库首批推出54部外国英文原著，它覆盖了语言学与应用语言学28个分支学科。这批书是我们与各地有关专家教授反复研究之后精选出来的。出版这样大规模的语言学与应用语言学丛书，这在我国语言学界和外语教学界是破天荒第一次。

我们这样做，抱着什么希望呢？总的说来，是遵循教育部关于加强一级学科教育的指示，在世纪之交，推出一套书来给中国的外语教育领航，同时也给一般外语工作者和汉语研究者提供信息，拓宽思路。

我们希望这个文库能成为进一步带动外语教学改革和科研的发动机；我们希望它能成为运载当代外国语言学理论、语言研究方法和语言教学方法来到中国的特快列车；我们希望，有了这套书，语言学与应用语言学专业师生就能顺利地进行工作；我们希望，通过读这套书，青年外语教师和外语、汉语研究者能迅速把能力提高，把队伍不断扩大。

以上是我们的愿望，可是从广大读者看来，这个文库是否真的有出台的必要呢？我们想，只要大家看一下今天的客观情况，就知道这套书有填空补缺的作用，是让大家更上一层楼的扶梯。

我们跟许多人一样，认为国内的外语教学和语言学与应用语言学研究是成绩斐然的，但是某些不足之处也无庸讳言。

在语言研究方面，有大量工作还等着大家去做。汉语语法研究，过去由于结构主义的启示，已经成绩卓著，可是现在虽则引进了功能主义，还看不出什么出色的成果。语料语言学是新兴学科，在我国刚刚起步，机器翻译从50年代就有人搞，然而其进展至今不能令人满意。

在语言理论方面，我们不时听到一些片面的、所见不全的论调。有人说，1957年前西方根本没有什么理论语言学，其创始者是Chomsky；也有人说，语言纯属社会文化范畴；还有人说，搞语言研究只有量化方法才是科学方法，定性方法不值得一提。

谈到外语教学，某些看法做法是分明不值得赞许的。有人以为交际教学只管听说，不管读写，也有人以为教精读课就是教阅读，不管口语。在分析课文时老师满堂灌，学生开口不得，是常见的；教听力课时老师只管放录音，对学生不给半点提示点拨，也并非罕有现象。

上述这些缺点，我们早有所知，现在我们更加明白，必须力图改进，再也不能安于现状了。为了改进，我们就得参考国外的先进理论，借鉴国外的有效措施。眼前这个文库，就是我们上下求索的结果。

在编辑这个文库时，我们在两方面下了功夫。

一方面，在选书时，我们求全，求新，求有代表性和前瞻性。我们不偏爱一家之言，也不只收一家外国出版社之书。语言学与应用语言学的主干学科固然受到了应有的重视，分支学科可也不忽视。语料语言学、语言统计学是新兴学科，我们收入了专著；句法学、语义学久已有人研究，我们也找到了有关的最新著作。

另一方面，我们邀请了国内知名的博士生导师、硕士生导师为各书撰文导读，为读者铺平道路。语言学和应用语言学专著包罗宏富，初学者读起来可能觉得茫无头绪。为了助他们一臂之力，本文库中每一种书我们都请专家写了一万字

左右的导读材料。哪怕书中内容比较陌生，谁只要在读书前看一下导读材料，读书后把材料再看一遍，一定能弄清脉络，掌握要点。

在结束本文时，我们想向爱好泛读的人们提个建议。语言和社会生活息息相关；我们靠语言与他人协作；通过语言继承传统文化，接受外国先进思想和科学知识；利用语言来教育下一代，帮助他们创造美好的未来；语言又反过来表达着我们的个性和我们充当的各种角色。学一点语言学和应用语言学，有助于增强我们的语言意识，对我们的工作和生活都是有利的。我们不妨把此事作为一个项目，列入自己的日程。持之以恒，必有所获。

王宗炎

中山大学教授
博士生导师

导　读

《英语语音学与音系学实用教程》一书系英国 Reading 大学语音学教授 Peter Roach 所著，1983 年由英国剑桥大学出版社出版。书问世后，立即为世界多所大学和其他高等教育机构所采用。1991 年，经作者修改补充后出第二版，即现在的这本书。

Peter Roach 教授发表过多篇语音学方面的学术论文，曾任国际语音协会秘书。他长期讲授语音学与英语发音等课程，具有丰富经验。这本书是他多年教学与研究的结晶。

本书是为英语专业或语言学专业（在英国一些学校叫语言学与语音学专业）的学生编写的教材，也可供英语教师或有志成为英语教师的人使用。内容包括讲解英国英语如何发音和与此相关的语音学与音系学知识。但书中讲的音系学不是纯音系学理论。有些地方涉及音系学，是为了更好地解释英语发音中的各种现象，而不是介绍纯音系学理论。作者把书中讲的音系学叫做"应用音系学"（applied phonology），以区别于"纯音系学"（pure phonology）。

英语发音主要有英国英语与美国英语两种。此外，还有澳大利亚英语、新加坡英语等不同发音。这本书讲的是英国英语的发音。英国本土虽不大，但由于自然地形的阻隔，加之过去交通不便，不同地区的人很少来往，形成了方言纷繁的局面。近几个世纪以来，"由于政治和商务的原因和宫廷的存在，英国东南部，特别是伦敦地区的发音"取得了高于其他方言发音的社会声望（social prestige）（Gimson 1980），成为非官方的标准音。这种发音常被称为"标准的发音"（Received Pronunciation，简称 RP），这是因为，用英国著名语音学家 Daniel Jones 的话来说，它最容易被听懂。英国广播公司（British Broadcasting Corporation，简称 BBC）的播音员用它播音，教外国学生英语也教这种发音。我国建国以来的英语教学一直教的是 RP。Roach 这本书讲的也是 RP 发音。

但 Roach 这本书所采用的音标体系与我国中小学和大学课本中的音标体系却有些不同，这里略做说明。首先，两种音标体系标的都是 RP 发音，采用的都是国际音标（International Phonetic Alphabet，简称 IPA）。国际音标是 1886 年成立的国际语音协会（International Phonetic Association，简称也为 IPA）所制定的一套用作各国语言标音的符号（国际音标符号表，见本书第 40－41 页）。各国语音学家从中采用一部分

相关符号来标写各种语言(如俄语、法语、汉语等)的发音。由于用途不同或采用者的观点不同而产生了不同的标音方法。英国英语最广泛使用的标音体系是英国著名语音学家 Daniel Jones 在他编的《英语发音词典》(*English Pronouncing Dictionary*,简称 EPD)里所采用的那一套符号。这本发音词典初版于 1917 年,其后不断修订重印。我国目前学校课本采用的是 EPD 第 13 版(1967)的符号。该版署名为 Jones 著,他的学生 Gimson 编。Jones 于 13 版出版的当年逝世,1977 年出版的第 14 版署名改为 Gimson,音标符号做了一些改动。Roach 这本书采用的是第 14 版的符号。这两版的辅音符号是一样的,但元音符号有些不同。现将两套元音符号对比如下:

EPD 第 13 版	EPD 第 14 版
iː	iː
i	* ɪ
e	e
æ	æ
ɑː	ɑː
ɔ	* ɒ
ɔː	ɔː
u	* ʊ
uː	uː
ʌ	ʌ
əː	* ɜː
ə	ə
ei	* eɪ
əu	* əʊ
ai	* aɪ
au	* aʊ
ɔi	* ɔɪ
iə	* ɪə
εə	* eə
uə	* ʊə

(带星号的音标是 14 版中不同于 13 版的音标符号)

两版的不同之处,有以下两点:

1. 12 个单元音中,13 版中有四对元音(iː i, ɔː ɔ, uː u, əːə)以有无加长符号相区别,而 14 版中,这四对元音符号不仅有带不带加长符号的区别,而且符号本身也不同。

2. 八个双元音中,13 版中的 i,u 在 14 版中分别改为 ɪ,ʊ;13 版的 ε 在 14 版中改为 e。

EPD这样改的目的，主要是使人能一目了然地看出，上述四对元音的不同不仅在于音长，而且音质也不同。

EPD第14版于1977年出版后，其音标体系很快就被英国出版的一些重要词典所采纳，如最具权威性的《牛津英语词典》(*Oxford English Dictionary*，简称OED)，原有一套自己制定的标音系统，但1989年的第二版已采用了EPD第14版的体系。另一部很有影响的词典《牛津简明英语词典》(*Concise English Dictionary of Current English*，简称COD)，1990年第8版也采用了这一标音体系。此外，在我国流行甚广的《牛津高级英语学习词典》(*Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*，简称ALD)，从1980年第三版第11次印刷时起已采用了EPD第14版的体系，并在第四版继续沿用。

EPD第14版的音标体系在我国亦开始被使用。陆谷孙主编的《英汉大词典》(1989)已采用了这一体系。外研社新版的《新概念英语》(1997)也使用了这套音标。

下面看一下课本谈到哪些语音学与音系学理论问题，还有哪些问题没有涉及。

语音学包括三个方面的内容，即研究语音发生的发音语音学，研究语音的声学属性的声学语音学和研究语音的感知的听觉语音学。本书在讲英语元音和辅音的发音时，讲了发音器官、发音部位、发音方法和语音的分类。这些属于发音语音学的内容。关于声学语音学和听觉语音学，作者只在最后一章有简略的介绍。如想进一步学习这方面的知识，可看本书第二十章20.2注释所列出的几本书。Roach这本书列入了国际语音协会制定的国际音标符号表，但没有讲英语发音中没有使用的音标。想要对这些音标符号有所了解，可参阅Ladefoged(1980)的《语音学教程》。

音系学是在19世纪末20世纪初随着音位概念的确立而从语音学中分离出来，自成学科的。它主要经历了两个大的阶段：20世纪前半世纪的结构主义音系学(也叫结构主义音位学)和后半世纪的生成音系学。近三十年来，生成音系学已取代了结构主义音位学，成了音系学理论的主流学派。但在语音教学上，人们仍主要使用结构主义音位学的一些概念和相关方法。结构主义音位学把音位作为音系分析的基本单位。它从观察到的大量语料入手，经过切分、认同和分类等程序，得到一种语言的音位系统。这一音位系统包括该语言的全部元音与辅音音位、各个音位的音位变体及其出现的音境等等。上述音位系统正好是英语发音教学中所需要的。因此，本书在讲英语元音和辅音时，运用了音位这一概念，并专辟一章(第五章)加以讲解，又用另外一章(第十三

章)、对某一个音应分为两个音位还是算作一个音位进行了讨论。生成音系学是生成语法的有机组成部分。生成语法研究存在于人的头脑中有关语言的知识,生成音系学作为生成语法的组成部分,研究人的头脑中有关语音的知识,并力求以形式化的方式表达出来。这种理论主要是探讨语言的本质,不着重教学上的应用。本书在谈到它时说,从纯课堂教学的角度看,生成音系学没有多少东西可供使用,并容易产生混乱。这话亦不无道理,因为生成音系学研究本来就不是为语音教学服务的。如前所述,生成音系学是目前音系学的主流学派。如想知道音系学的现状,就必须对生成音系学的理论有所了解,这方面可看 Roca (1999)的《音系学教程》。讲得更深入一点的教材还有 Kenstowicz (1994)的《生成语法中的音系学》。

现在谈一谈学习这本书时该注意哪些问题:

《英语语音学与音系学使用教程》全书共分二十章。第一章为一个简短的导论。第二章到第十九章从小到大依次讲英语的单个音(第二章到第七章)、音节(第八、九章)、词(第十、十一章)、连续语流(第十四章)和语调(第十五章到第十九章),中间第十三章讲音系分析问题。最后一章简单介绍作者认为学生今后可进一步学习的三个领域。每一章的具体内容在分章导读中还要谈到,这里不再赘述。由于这本书是课本,不是参考书,因此每一章都要认真阅读,并掌握其内容。书中的黑体字是表示重要概念的词,要彻底明白其含义并记住。这些内容包括了有关英语发音的各种知识。但要学会正确流畅的发音,仅仅掌握有关英语发音的知识是远远不够的,还必须进行反复刻苦的模仿和练习。为此,除课本之外,教程还有配套录音带两盘,分为二十个单元,每章配一个单元,有跟读、辨认、标音和标写重音及语调符号等练习。中国学生在国内学英语,由于条件所限,语音常常不准确,即便是英语本科生和研究生也常存在语音问题。因此,根据书中要求认真听录音并做语音练习,是十分必要和有益的。书后附有录音的文字材料和语音练习的答案。对于将来要做英语教师的人,最好还要把英语语音和汉语语音进行对比。关于汉语普通话的语音,可参阅林焘、王理嘉(1992)的《语音学教程》,关于汉语普通话的音位,可参阅王理嘉(1994)的《音系学基础》。

此外,每一章后面还有三个部分的内容。第一部分对正文中的一些问题进行讨论并提供有关参考书目。这一部分,原本是与该书第一版配套的教师用书中的内容,后根据读者的要求,出第二版时并入课本中,并且不再另出教师用书。英语教师和准备做英语教师的人,最好也把这一部分认真研读一下。再有兴趣的话,还可接着读其中提出的有

关文献。第二部分是给教这本书的教师提出的教学建议。这不但对教师有用,而且对将来要当英语教师的学生也是很有用的。第三部分是作者为第二版加的书面练习。这些练习可以巩固并运用所学的知识和技能,是学这本教程必须要做的。书后附有练习答案。

参考文献:

Kenstowicz, M. (1994) *Phonology in Generative Grammar*, Oxford: Blackwell.

Ladefoged, P. (1982) *A Course in Phonetics*, New York: Harcourt Brace Jovanovich.

Roca, I. & Johnson, L. (1999) *A Course in Phonology*, Oxford: Blackwell.

林焘、王理嘉:《语音学教程》,北京,北京大学出版社,1992。

王理嘉:《音系学基础》,北京,北京大学出版社,1994。

第一章 引 言

这一章是全书的引言。它首先提出了这本教材的目的及学生通过学习它可以学到些什么。这本书的一个重要目的,是要讲解英语是怎样发音的。但作者说,此书不光讲解英语发音,如果是那样的话,书名叫做《英语发音》会更为合适。他说,在英语学习达到较高阶段时,应把英语发音放在语音学与音系学的框架里来学。

书中接着介绍了音位的概念,并说要用一套特殊符号来表示英语发音。接下去介绍书的几部分内容,书中黑体字与引号的用法。

然后作者讲了口音(accent)和方言(dialect)的区别,并介绍本书所讲的标准发音(Received Pronunciation)。

问题:

1. 学习英语发音时为什么要学点语音学和音系学理论?
2. 为什么要用一套专门音标而不用英语字母来表示英语发音?
3. 本书讲的是英国英语的哪种发音?为什么讲这种发音?
4. 这本书使用的是哪一套音标?为什么使用这套音标?

第二章 语音的发生

这一章讲语音的发生和英语短元音,共分三小节。

第一小节讲语音发音的过程。气流从肺部产生，通过喉部、声道，到达口或鼻，形成一个完整的发音过程。本章这一部分着重介绍了喉以上的各个发音器官，包括咽、软腭、硬腭、齿龈、牙、上下唇和舌。

学习这一部分要注意以下几点：要掌握上述发音器官的名称、位置和在该部位发出的音的名称。还应学会画发音器官的侧面图。这里要注意：舌前(front)指舌位四边图的前边，不是舌的最前边。其位置在舌叶的后边。

第二小节讲元音与辅音的区别。这一部分还介绍了以音的分布来作为区别元音与辅音的标准。另外还讲了正则元音(cardinal vowel)(也称基本元音)、次正则元音(secondary cardinal vowel)(也称次基本元音)和元音音位四边形。这一部分最后提出给元音分类的三个变数：舌位高低、舌位前后和嘴唇形状(主要有圆唇、展唇和中性)。

学习这节最好能听正则元音和次正则元音的录音，以对正则元音有个清楚的认识。还要学会怎样根据元音四边形上的点来描写元音。

第三小节讲英语短元音。英语只有七个短元音，即：ɪ，e，æ，ʌ，ɒ，ʊ，ə。学习这一节要记住这些短元音在元音四边形上的位置，并要注意舌位四边形上的点指舌位最高点的位置。这一节讲六个短元音，另一个短元音 ə 将在以后讲到。

在正文后边的注释中，作者提到了 vocoid 与 contoid 两个术语。这是美国语言学家 Kenneth Pike 提出的，用来指从语音上区分的元音和辅音。他用 vowel 与 consonant 来指音系上的元音与辅音。目前，不论从语音学还是音系学，都用 vowel 与 consonant。vocoid 与 contoid 已基本不用。但了解一下这两个术语还是必要的。

问题：

1. 发音器官有哪些？
2. 如何区别元音与辅音？
3. 正则元音指什么？有什么用途？
4. 怎样用四边形上的点来认识元音的舌位？

第三章　长元音、双元音和三元音

这一章共分三小节。

第一小节讲英国英语的五个长元音，即：iː，ɜː，ɑː，ɔː，uː。学习英语长元音要注意两个问题：(1)英语元音的长度是相对的，同一个元音

在不同环境中具有不同的长度，如在浊辅音前比在清辅音前长（bɪd 中的 ɪ，比 bɪt 中的 ɪ 长），说长元音比短元音的长度长，是指在同一环境中的情况，如 bɪt 中的 ɪ，比 bɪt 中的 ɪ 长；bɪd 中的 ɪ，比 bɪd 中的 ɪ 长。(2) 长元音和短元音的不同，不仅在于音长不同，而且还在于音质不同。本书采用 EPD14 版的音标将这两种不同都表示出来了，而 EPD13 版没有将质的不同表示出来。

13、14 版	14 版	13 版
长元音	短元音	短元音
iː	ɪ	i
ɔː	ɒ	ɔ
uː	ʊ	u

第二小节讲双元音。双元音可分为两类：闭合双元音（closing diphthong）和集中双元音（centering diphthong），集中双元音指发音时向央元音 ə 滑动，而闭合双元音发音时向 ɪ 或 ʊ 滑动。发闭合双元音时要注意做到前长后短，前重后轻，双元音与单元音的区别在于发单元音时，口型与舌位保持不动，而发双元音是从一个元音向另一个元音滑动的过程。发闭合双元音时还要注意实际上滑动并不到位。

另一点要注意的是 aɪ，aʊ 中的 a 与长元音 ɑː 的符号不同，a 是前元音，ɑ 是后元音。发 aʊ 时比发 aɪ 时 a 靠后一些（因此有的书将 aʊ 标为 ɑʊ）。

第三小节讲三元音。三元音只有 5 个，可看做是 5 个闭合双元音加上 ə。实际上是将三元音看作是两个元音。因此把带三个元音的词看作两个音节，标上重音符号，如（layer）ˈleɪə，（our）ˈaʊə。

总之，长元音和双元音均比短元音长。有人把长元音和双元音称为紧元音，将短元音称为松元音。

二、三两章讲了全部英语元音（ə 除外）。学到这里可列表做一小结，并记住各个元音的特点。

问题：

1. 英语共有多少个元音？请将其分类。
2. 英语长元音与短元音有何不同？
3. 英语双元音有何特点？可分为哪几类？

第四章　发声与辅音

这一章共四个小节。

第一小节讲喉的构造和生理特征。喉的主要结构是由软骨构成的"盒形"结构，盒子里边有两条声带。声带之间的空间叫声门。声带的活动由它们后边的一对勺状软骨控制，声带的不同开合变化在语音中起重要作用。学习这部分要弄清喉的构造和声带的四种状态。

第二小节讲呼吸与发声。语音是由空气运动造成的，而世界上最常见的发音运动方式是从肺向外呼吸，叫外向肺部运动。这一小节还讲了呼吸的原理以及声带振动所造成的发声，这种声音可在强度、频率和音质三个方面有所不同。

第三小节讲塞音(plosive，国内英语界有时将它译为爆破音)。塞音有四个特点。形成塞音要经过成阻、持阻、除阻和除阻后四个阶段。

第四小节讲英语塞音。英语有六个塞音：p，t，k，b，d，g。他们按发音部位不同分为三组，每组又按发音时声带振动与否分为清浊。这六个音均可出现在词首，词中和词尾三个部位。出现在词首时，p，t，k 送气，b，d，g 不送气。要注意的是，出现在 s 后边时，p，t，k，不送气。听说一些英语教师教学生时说 p，t，k 出现在 s 后出现浊化。这是不正确的。实际情况是，这时 p，t，k，仍是清辅音，但不送气。另一点要注意的是，塞音处在词尾时，一个重要的区别是清塞音前的元音短，浊塞音前的元音长，长元音和双元音尤为突出。要注意这长短的区别是由于清辅音前的元音减短了，而不是浊辅音前的元音加长了。

第五小节讲强音(fortis)和弱音(lenis)。有的语音学家认为发 p，t，k 等清辅音时要比发 b，d，g 等浊辅音更加用力，因此称前者为强音，称后者为弱音。本书也采用了这两个术语。

问题：

1. 喉由哪几部分组成？各个部分有什么作用？
2. 塞音有哪些特点？发塞音要经过几个阶段？
3. 英语塞音有什么特点，发音时应注意哪些问题？

第五章　音　位

这一章分三节。

第一节讲音位。在研究语音问题时，可将语流分成小的片段，叫音段(segment)。但作为语音基础的是一些抽象单位，叫音位。一个语言的所有音位的集合(set)叫音位系统(phonemic system)。一个音位可由许多不同的音来实现。有些音在同一位置可互相代替，而不改变意义，这叫自由变异(free variation)。一个音位有些音不能出现在同一位置上，而各有各的特殊位置，这叫互补分布(complementary distribution)。实现一个音位的不同音叫音位变体(allophone)。要注意，学习英语发音时要弄清每个音位有哪些音位变体，各用在什么地方。

第二节讲音标和标音。最著名的音标是由国际语音协会(International Phonetic Association，简称 IPA)制定的音标，叫国际音标(International Phonetic Alphabet，简称也是 IPA)。标音可分为音位标音(phonemic transcription)与语音标音(phonetic transcription)，也可分为窄式(narrow)与宽式(broad)标音。语音标音放在方括弧[ ]内，音位音标一般放在斜杠/ /之间，但本书没有采用斜杠，而用黑体表示。不同书对标音采用不同符号，作者讲了产生不同的原因。关于本书为何采用 EPD14 版的音标系统，可参阅全书导读中对这一点的讲解。

第三节讲音系学。这一节首先对语音学与音系学的区别加以说明。语音学描写我们说话时使用的各个音，音系学研究语音的抽象方面，即音位在语言中的作用、和不同音位之间的关系。音系学还研究某一语言中对音位序列的限制和音节结构。除音位区别之外，重音(stress)和语调(intonation)也造成语音对比。它们所造成的对比跨越几个音段(音位)，所以这些对比是超音段的(suprasegmental)，研究重音、语调和其他超音段方面的问题的音系学叫超音段音系学(suprasegmental phonology)。

问题：

1. 音位和音段有什么区别？为什么说音位是抽象单位？
2. 对同一语言的语音为什么有不同的标音法？本书采用哪种标音法？为什么？
3. 音系学与语音学有什么不同？超音位音系学研究什么？
4. 自由变异和互补分布是什么意思？举例说明。

第六章　擦音与塞擦音

这一章分四个小节。

第一节讲擦音与塞擦音(fricatives & affricates,国内英语界有时也译为摩擦音和破擦音)。发擦音时,气流从一个小缝隙出来,发出可持续的辅音。塞擦音从塞音开始,以擦音结束。组成塞擦音的塞音和擦音必须具有同一发音部位。

第二节讲英语的擦音,共有九个,即:f, v, θ, ð, s, z, ʃ, ʒ, h。前八个音可按发音部位分为四组,每组又分为强(清)弱(浊)两个音。要注意,发θ,ð时,美国英语将舌放在上下牙之间,是齿间音(interdental),而英国英语发这两个音一般将舌尖放在上齿后边,如49页图14b所示。但书中的文字说明说发此音时舌尖触下前牙,舌叶触上牙,与图部位不符。Jones和Gimson的图与文字说明均说舌放在上齿后,与图14b所示部位一致。因此,发音部位应以图为准。另外,作者在注解中说发ð时摩擦极少,更像弱齿背塞音。这是作者个人观点,可供参考,但不能发成英语的d。另外,图14a,b,c均未在发音部位留出空隙,应留出空隙,以免发成塞音。另一个要注意的是,发声门擦音h时,舌头、下腭与嘴唇的位置均与后边元音位置相同。

第三节讲英语塞擦音。本书说英语只有两个塞擦音,即tʃ与dʒ,并不把我们课本中列为塞擦音的tr, dr, ts, dz列为塞擦音。

第四节讲强辅音。前已提到元音,特别是长元音和双元音,在强辅音前变短,除此之外,鼻音和边音(m, n, ŋ, l)在强辅音前也变短。另外,边音和延续音l, r, w, j在p, t, k后边清化,即失去浊音。这一节还讲到喉化发音,可了解,但不是重点。

问题:

1. 擦音与塞擦音发音特点是什么?
2. 每个英语擦音的发音部位是哪里?
3. h与其他擦音有何不同?

第七章　鼻音与其它辅音

这一章有四小节。

第一小节讲鼻音。鼻音的基本特点是软腭下垂,气流从鼻子出来。英语有三个鼻音m,n,ŋ,其发音位置与塞音p, t, k相同。这一节用大部分篇幅讲ŋ。ŋ从语音学角度看简单,但从音系学角度看却较为复杂。书中对ŋ的分布做了详细的介绍。

第二小节讲l。l是边辅音。发音时,气流在口腔中间部分受阻,

从舌头旁边流出。l 在元音前舌前部抬起，发的音像元音 i，叫清晰 l (clear l)。l 在元音后，舌后部抬起，发的音像元音 ʊ，叫混浊 l(dark l)。

第三小节讲 r。国内教材按 Jones 的分类说是擦音。本书说是齿龈后延续音(approximant)。延续音很难描述。简单说，是发音位置的器官彼此接近，但没近到产生"完全的"辅音，因此没有摩擦。发 r 音时舌头通常稍稍向后卷，舌尖向上。这样发出的音，叫卷舌音(retroflex)。但在音节首，跟在 p，t，k 后边的 r 稍有摩擦，并产生清化。r 的另一特点是发音时略有圆唇，但不可过分。

第四小节讲 j，w。这两个音许多人过去叫"半元音"。本书也称"延续音"。它们从语音上看像元音，从音系上看像辅音。发音时 j，w 很像前闭元音 iː，uː，但很短。本书认为 j，w 没有摩擦，按擦音发是错误的。它们只有在音节首出现在 p，t，k 后才略有摩擦，并变成清音。

第四、六、七章讲了英语全部辅音，共 24 个(没有国内教材经常列出的 ts，dz，tr，dr)，并按发音部位和发音方法，列成英语辅音音位表(62 页)。学习时可借助此表，记住各个辅音的发音特点。此外，还须记住哪些辅音有音位变体，都是哪些。

问题：

1. 为什么说 ŋ 从语音上看简单？从音系上看复杂？
2. l 有几个音位变体？都在什么位置出现？
3. r 的发音特点有哪些？
4. 如何理解 j 和 w 语音上像元音，音系上像辅音？

第八章　音　节

这一章分为两部分。

第一部分讲音节的性质。从语音学角度看，音节有一个发音时气流不受或很少受阻挡、声音相对宏亮的中心，中心前后气流受阻更大，声音不那么宏亮。由一个元音组成的音节叫最小音节(minimum syllable)。有些音节有音节首音(onset)，有些音节有音节尾音(coda)，有些音节既有音节首音，也有音节尾音。但仅这样从语音学角度描写音节，在划分音节时会碰到很多问题。从音系学角度看，就不同了。具体到划分英语音节，这涉及英语音节的各部分能由哪些英语音位组成。

第二部分讲英语音节的结构。音节首音可由一至三个辅音组成。如首音为一个辅音，除 ŋ 外，其他辅音均可担当此任。两个辅音做首音

有两种情况：一种以 s 开头，可参阅表三；另一种为多个辅音开头，第二个辅音为 l，r，w，j，参阅表四。音节首为三个辅音时，第一个必定是 s，第二个为清塞音 p，t，k，第三个为边音或通音 l，r，w，j 等。

英语音节尾音为一个辅音时，所有辅音，除 h，r，w，j 外，都可以做。音节尾音为两个或更多辅音时，情况较为复杂，但书中分门别类且借助表格表达得很清楚。近来音系学家又增加了韵(rhyme)这一单位，见 73 页图。另外，有时音节中心可由成音节辅音构成。以上说明英语音节的构成是有一定规律并受一定限制的。学习时要予以充分注意。

问题：

1. 音节由哪些部分构成？它们之间关系如何？
2. 英语音节首音有几种情况？举例说明。
3. 英语音节尾音有哪几种类型？各举数例说明。
4. 了解英语音节构造对学习英语发音有何作用？

第九章　强音节与弱音节

这一章分为四小节。

第一节主要讲弱音节的特点。音节分强与弱。弱音节都是非重读音节。比起强音节，弱音节中的元音相对短一些，强度较弱。

第二节讲 ə。ə 是英语中最常见的元音，永远在弱音节中出现。它是一个央元音，高度与前后均处在中间，发音时力度小，是松元音。作者说何时发 ə，与拼法有关。本节用十组例子加以说明。

第三节讲前后闭元音。弱音节中还有两个经常出现的元音，分别处于 iː 与 ɪ 的区域之间和 uː 与 ʊ 的区域之间。书中表示这两个音时，不用 iː，ɪ，也不用 uː，ʊ，而用 i，u。作者强调说 i，u 不属于英语音位，是为了读写音标容易些而加的符号。笔者认为不妨把这两个音看作是 ɪ，ʊ 的音位变体，符号仍用 ɪ，ʊ。

第四节讲成音节辅音。有些弱音节中没有元音，音节的中心是 l，r 或鼻音，称为成音节辅音。

l 是英语成音节辅音中最引人注目的。可出现在塞音之后。在 t，d，n 之后出现时产生舌侧除阻(lateral release)。

在成音节鼻音中，最常见的是 n。n 出现在同一发音部位的 t，d 后边，发生鼻腔除阻(nasally released)。m，ŋ 也可作为成音节鼻音，但只出现在发生同化或省音过程之后。

r作为成音节辅音在RP中很少见。

这一节中出现最小对儿(minimal pair,也译最小对立体)这一术语,但没有定义。最小对儿指两个意义不同的词,它们音段数目相同,只有一处在语音上不同,如pit,bit; write,ride。最小对儿可用来判断两个不同的音属于不同音位。

问题:

1. 强音节与弱音节有什么不同?哪些元音可在弱音节中出现?
2. ɔ有哪些特点?它常出现在什么地方?
3. 本章中为何采用i和u这两个不是音位的符号?你是否同意采用这两个音标?同意或不同意的原因是什么?
4. 成音节辅音的定义是什么?发音时有什么特点?

第十章　简单词的重音

这一章有三小节。

第一节讲重音的性质。从发音看,一般认为发重读音节时,肌肉更加用力。从感知看,重读音节较之非重读音节更具凸显性(prominence)。产生凸显性有四个主要因素:声音大小,音节长度,音高和元音性质。书中说实验表明,影响最大的是音高,时长也是重要因素。声音大小和元音性质影响要小得多。

第二节讲重音等级。本书主张分为三个等级。最强的为主要重音(primary stress),比主要重音弱但比非重读音节强的是次要重音(secondary stress),第三等级为非重读(unstressed)。

第三节讲词中重音的位置。有些语言,词的重音有固定位置,但英语不是这样的语言。要决定英语词的重音所在,须利用下边四种信息中的几种或全部。

1. 从构词法上看,是简单词还是复合词(即派生词)或合成词。
2. 词属哪一词类(名词、动词、形容词)
3. 词由几个音节组成
4. 以上音节的音系结构

这一章讲简单词的重音。

简单词的重音,根据该词是名词、动词或形容词而有所不同。双音节词和三音节词的重音规则也不一样。书中给出了几条简单的规则,并举例说明。在学习简单词重音时,可根据每种情况,自己再找出若干

不同词类的词加以验证。

问题：

1. 重音的性质如何？
2. 为什么说英语单词重音相当复杂？
3. 有人说英语单词重音不可预测，有人则认为要努力寻找重音规则。你有什么看法？

第十一章　复合词的重音

这一章有六小节。

第一节讲复合词。第十章讲了简单词的重音。所谓简单词是说这个词是由一个语法单位(语素)构成的。复合词是由两个或更多语法单位(语素)构成的。复合词有两大类：1. 词干 + 词缀，叫词缀词(affix words)；2. 由两个独立词构成的词叫合成词(compound word)。英语词缀分为两种：出现在词干前边的前缀(prefix)和出现在词干后边的后缀(suffix)。

第二节讲后缀。主要讲常见的、能产的(productive)后缀。后缀对词的重音的影响有三种：

1. 有些后缀本身带主要重音，如 -ee，-eer 等。

2. 有些后缀不影响主要重音位置，如 -able，-age，-al 等。

3. 影响词干中重音的后缀，如-ic，-ion 等使主要重音落到词干最后音节上。另一类后缀，如 -ance，ant 等使主要重音几乎总是落到词干上。

第三节讲前缀。这一节非常简单，基本意思是说前缀对词的重音没有影响。

第四节讲合成词，只讲由两个词构成的合成词。两个名词构成的合成词重音落在第一音节上。其他合成词一般也是重音落在第一音节上。但书中列出了重音落在第二音节上的几种情况。这里要注意的是，要区别合成词和词组，如 blackboard(黑板)是合成名词，重音在第一个音节，black board(黑色的板子)是名词词组，由两个词组成，词组的重音在第二个音节上。

第五节讲可变重音(variable stress)。英语中有两种情况可使重音发生变动：

1. 一个词如果其相邻词有重音可使它的重音发生变动。

2. 有些词不同人给予不同重音。

第六节讲有一类词因词类不同而重音不同。这类词做名词或形容词时,重音落在第一音节,做动词时,重音在第二个音节。

问题:

1. 复合词有几类?
2. 词缀词的重音有几种情况?除书中列词外,请各再举出5个例子说明。
3. 合成词重音如何确定?
4. 什么情况会使词的重音挪动?

第十二章 弱 式

英语中大约有四十个词可以用两种不同方式发音,一种叫强式(strong forms),一种叫弱式(weak forms)。具有强式与弱式这两种形式的词几乎都是功能词(function word),如助动词,介词,连词等。这些词在某些场合用强式,但更多的是用弱式。这些词在以下场合要用强式:

1. 在句末时。
2. 与另一个词形成对比时。
3. 用重音表示强调时。
4. 被单独引用时。

这一章用大部分篇幅列出了28组39个最常用的有弱式的词的弱式及用法。对其中一些介词,连词,助动词及其他词除列出弱式外,还列出其在句末时应读的强式。

这一章的重点是列出了近四十个常用的有弱式的词。中国人学英语在使用这类词时常常只记住它的强式读音,在所有场合都使用强式。这听上去会不自然,一听就是外国人读的英语。另外,由于英国人说英语大量使用弱式,不了解或不熟悉弱式读音,在听英国人说英语时会遇到很大困难。所以学习英语发音要把了解并学会弱式发音作为一个重要内容。

问题:

1. 为什么要学习区分并使用强式和弱式?
2. 强式与简略式(contracted form)有什么区别?
3. 什么时候不能使用弱式,必须使用强式?

4. 找一篇短文或对话，将其中有弱式的词标出强式和弱式，并学会按此朗读、说话。

第十三章　音位分析中的问题

本章主要讲音位分析中的一些问题，共分两大类。

第一类称为分析中的问题。这一类问题是要决定一种语言中哪些是音位。例如，英语中 tʃ 和 dʒ 是一个塞音后跟一个擦音。对这一现象有两种分析，一种是把 tʃ 作为一个辅音音位，另一种是把 tʃ 看作是 t 和 ʃ 两个辅音音位。对这两种分析，书中从四个方面进行了详细的讨论。这一类问题还有一些，如第七章讨论过的 ŋ 的问题：ŋ 是一个独立音位，还是 n 的音位变体？另一问题是长元音和双元音问题：它们是独立音位，还是由两个元音音位组成的，还是由一个元音和一个辅音（j，w，h）组成的？此外，对成音节辅音也有不同分析方法。

第二类问题是归属问题。如 s 后边的 p，t，k 现在归入 p，t，k 音位，但也可归入 b，d，g 音位。有人认为 ə 和 ʌ 可归入一个音位，有人认为 ə 不是一个音位，而是几个不同元音的音位变体。

以上这些问题说明对英语音位系统有许多种分析方法，这些方法各有利弊。作者认为在把英语语音教学作为实用目标时，非常抽象的分析是不合适的。另一种标准就是一种分析方法要符合人脑中对语音的表达。但作者认为大脑极为复杂，目前提出的分析不会和大脑的表达有多少相似的地方。

这一章提出的各种问题虽与学习英语发音没有太直接的关系，但对于开阔思路、启迪思维具有一定作用。有兴趣的读者可阅读有关材料，并进行思考和做出判断。

问题：

1. 对同一种语言为什么不同人会得出不同的音位系统？
2. 国内一般课本把 tr，dr，ts，dz 作为四个独立音位。而这本书没把它们列为独立音位，这两种分析方法各有什么根据？
3. 书中把 ə 作为一个独立音位，但又有人把 ə 看作是几个不同元音的音位变体。你如何看待这个问题？

第十四章　连贯语流的几个方面

英语连贯语流的发音并不是简单地将一个个单词连在一起的发音。连贯语流的发音涉及英语节奏、同化、省音和连读等几个方面对单词的作用。这一章就是讲这几个方面的问题，分为四小节。

第一节讲节奏(rhythm)。有一种常见的理论认为英语有重音节拍节奏(stress-timed rhythm)，即重读音节之间相隔的时间大致相同，不管有没有或有多少非重读音节。这种理论还认为有一些语言有音节节拍节奏(syllable-timed rhythm)，即所有音节不论重读音节还是非重读音节，它们之间相隔的时间大致相同。有些人提出将音步(foot)做为一种节奏单位，并用树形图表示其节奏结构，树形图中 s 代表强(strong)，w 代表弱(weak)。在正常语流中英语还常常对强弱的交替进行调整。在不同的讲话方式中节奏会有所不同。但本书作者对上述重音节拍节奏的理论提出质疑。他说语音实验没有能够表明"重音节拍语言"与"音节节拍语言"之间有真正区别。不过，传统"节奏练习"对外国人学英语仍有其用处。

第二节讲同化(assimilation)。同化是一个音在语流中受相邻的音的影响而变得与其相像的现象。由于说话语速和方式不同，同化的程度也有所不同。前音受后音影响叫逆同化 (regressive assimilation)。后音受前音影响叫顺同化 (progressive assimilation)。

受同化影响的音多为辅音。发生同化的有发音部位，发音方式和清浊等三个方面。同化既可以跨词界也可发生在语素与语素之间，或在语素内部。本书认为同化本质上是一种自然现象，外国人学英语发音时不必刻意追求。这一点很重要，在学和教同化时要注意。

第三节讲省音(elision)。省音指在某些语境中一些音消失，这是在快速、随便的言语中才出现的。书中认为外国人不必学习省音，但应知道英国人彼此之间谈话时常有许多该出现的音被省掉了。本书并分类举了一些省音的例子。

第四节讲连读(linking)。这指在语流中有时将两个词中前面词结尾的辅音与后面词开头的元音连起来，如 it - is。其中最常见的是连音 r (linking r)，即拼写中一个词词尾为不发音的字母 r，碰到后一个词的词首是元音则将 r 与后面的元音连读。许多说 RP 的人还在拼写中没有 r 的地方加上一个 r，叫外加音 r (intrusive r)，这一点外国人学习英语不必学。

问题：

1. 英语节奏有什么特点？
2. 英语中最常见的同化有哪些？

第十五章　语调(一)

音系学由音段音系学(segmental phonology)和超音段音系学(suprasegmental phonology)组成。超音段音系学研究重音和语调两部分内容。本书用五章，即全书约四分之一的篇幅讲语调，足以说明语调的重要性和作者对语调的重视。本章共分四节。

第一节讲语调的形式(form)和功能(function)。语调中起最重要作用的是音高(pitch)。用来表示一个音节的音高总体行为的是声调(tone)。单音节的词可以是平调(level tone)或动态调(moving tone)。动态调可分为降调(falling tone)和升调(rising tone)。关于各种不同语调的功能本书只提出几条一般规则。

第二节讲声调和声调语言(tone language)。世界上有许多语言用声调决定词的意义，称为声调语言，如汉语。英语不是声调语言。

第三节讲复杂声调和音高高度。除上述三种简单调之外，还有更为复杂的调，其中最常见的为降升调(fall-rise)和较少用的升降调(rise-fall)。在通常状态下，人们说话时语调一般在调域下部，但要表示强烈感情，有时要用特殊音高，用箭头↑表示。

第四节讲英语语调的几种功能。这里主要用 yes 和 no 两个单音节词初步讲一下降、升、降升、升降和平调五种调的基本用法。

关于英语语调的表示方法，有生成音系学的表示法，还有美国结构主义和英国语音学派两种表示方法。本书采用英国语音学派标调方法。

作者认为本教程要训练外国人识别并模仿英语语调，以便通过多听、多说学会英语语调。学习本章时要通过听录音并做录音中提出的口头练习，学会正确识别并发出英语语调中的五种基本调。

问题：

1. 超音段音系学和音段音系学有什么不同？它包括几个部分？
2. 音高和频率有何共同点和不同点？
3. 声调语言有什么特点？为什么说英语不是声调语言？

4. 五种基本调各表示什么基本意思?

第十六章　语调(二)

本章共分三节。

第一节讲调元(tone-unit)。为了分析语调,需要一个比音节大的单位,称为调元。调元可由一个或一个以上的音节组成。每个调元中必须有一个带有声调的音节,称为调核音节(tonic syllable,简写为 TS)。一段话由一个或更多调元组成,每个调元由一个或更多音步组成,每个音步由一个或更多音节组成,每个音节由一个或更多音位组成。

第二节讲调元的结构。调元分简单调元和复合调元两种,本节讨论简单调元。调元除调核音节外,还可有调头(head,简写为 H)。调头前成分(pre-head,简写为 PH)和调尾(tail,简写为 T)。从第一个重读音节到调核音节(不包括调核音节)为调头,调头前非重读音节为调头前成分,调核音节后为调尾。这可表示为(PH) (H) TS (T),括号内成分为可有可无。

第三节讲简单调元中可能出现的音高。调核音节必须带有前述五种调中的一个。在调核音节后如还有其他音节(即调尾),那么声调的音高运动不在调核音节上完成,例如在升调后的调尾上的音节继续升高。在降调后的调尾上的音节继续下降。平调后的调尾上的音高保持同一水平。

学习这一章要了解调元的结构及其组成部分并通过听录音学会识别调元中的调核音节。此外,还要通过学习本章文字说明并模仿录音,学会用正确的英语语调朗读。

问题:

1. 调元在音系单位的层次关系中占什么地位?
2. 调元由哪几个部分组成?
3. 调尾的音高是由什么决定的?

第十七章　语调(三)

这一章共分三节。

第一节讲带调尾的降升调与升降调。降升调后如有调尾时,常常

是降调部分在调核音节上，升调部分分布在调尾上。升降调的升调部分在调核音节上，降调部分分布在调尾上。

第二节讲高调头(high head)和低调头(low head)。调头中第一个重读音节高，叫高调头，第一个重读音节低，叫低调头。调头中有不止一个重读音节时，这些重读音节的音高略有变化，变化的走向从开始的音高向调核音节的音高变化。非重读音节的音高和它前边重读音节的音高相同。

第三节分析语调形式中碰到的问题。第一个难题是调核音节的确定。一般认为有音高运动的音节是调核音节。但有几种情况使调核音节难以确定。第二个难题是调元界限常常难以确定。常用来确定调元界限的两条原则是在界限处常有音高的突然变化和节奏的中断和变化。第三个难题是有一些非正常的调元。例如，偶尔出现降升降调或升降升调。有时重读音节不是全高或全低。还有时说话被打断，使一个调元中没有调核音节。

问题：

1. 带调尾的降升调和不带调尾的降升调有何相同与不同的地方？
2. 高调头如多于一个音节，各个音节的音高是怎样的？

第十八章　语调的功能(一)

前面三章论述语调的形式。这一章和下一章讲述语调的功能。关于语调功能有多种不同分法，最常见的是分为四种，即表示态度的功能、表示重音的功能、表示语法的功能和语篇中的功能。这一章专门讲人们关注较多的表示态度的功能。

作者认为，研究语调时，用人们实际说的话比制造一些例子更好一些。他说，表示态度或情感有三种超音段变项：语调的序列成分(如调核音节、调头、调尾等)、语调的韵律成分(如调域宽度、语速等)和准语言因素(如面部表情、手势等)。他认为前两种属于语调，后一种则不是。对于语调的某些成分，可以作出一些概括，例如，对调核的基本意思多数书有一致意见，即降调表示肯定和意思终结，升调表示一般问句、列举、还有话要说和鼓励，降升调表示不肯定、犹豫、请求，升降调表示惊讶、感叹。但作者认为这些概括过于宽泛，不足以使外国人学会使用英语语调，要想学习英语语调表示态度的功能，最好的办法是和与说英语的本族人进行对话，听他们讲，和他们说。这是很好的建议。如无

条件的话，则要多听各种英国英语的录音，作为补偿。

问题：

1. 研究英语语调的材料来源有哪几种？你认为哪一种最好？
2. 决定说话人态度的超音段因素有哪些？各举几例说明。
3. 听说英语的人说话时，应怎样学习英语语调？

第十九章　语调的功能(二)

上一章讲了语调表示态度的功能。这一章分三节讲另外三种功能。

第一节讲语调表示重音的功能。作者认为词的重音独立并先于语调的选定，所以只有调核重音位置的确定属语调的重音功能。调核音节最常见的一个位置是调元中的最后一个实词。但为了实现对比的目的，任何一个词都可以成为调核音节。

第二节讲语调表示语法的功能。人们常举出用不同语调区别句子歧义的例子来说明语调的语法功能。把调元界标放在不同位置可对句子作出不同的解释。书中接着讨论了调元与语法单元的关系。

第三节讲语调在语篇中的功能。过去一般将句子作为语言分析的最大语法单位。语篇分析探讨比句子更大的语境。将语篇分析用于语调的研究领域，主要有两个领域：一个领域是用语调把听话人的注意力集中到最重要的信息上来，另一个领域涉及对会话行为的调节。他认为研究这一功能可以对语调的用法给以更全面的解释。

问题：

1. 本章讲的语调三种功能具有什么共同点？举例说明。
2. 语调在语篇中的功能是最近发展起来的研究领域。它有什么重要性？

第二十章　语音学与音系学中可供继续学习的领域

这是本书最后一章。这一章分三节，为想进一步学习语音学与音系学的学生介绍了三个可供深入学习的领域。

第一节介绍区别特征。

作者首先提出，本书涉及音系学时，都是使用其概念和方法来讲英语发音的各种现象，可称为“应用音系学”。然而，他又说，在对各种语言进行音系分析时出现了许多有趣的难题。对这些音系现象进行的“纯音系学”研究，虽与语言教学无关，但长期以来却是理论语言学的重要领域。区别特征分析就是其中一个重要的方面。区别特征的思想最早是在20世纪30年代由布龙菲尔德(Bloomfield)和特鲁别茨科伊(Trubetzkoy)提出来的。后来雅各布森(Jakobson)与哈利(Halle)和乔姆斯基(Chomsky)与哈利先后提出了很有影响的两套区别特征。此外，还有一些人也提出了自己的区别特征。书中对这些不同的特征只在注释中略有提及，没有详述。有兴趣可看注释中列出的文献。

第二节讲实验语音学。作者说，实验语音学近一个世纪以来一直是语音学的一个重要部分，作者希望实验语音学与语言教学今后将有更密切的联系。这一节对实验语音学的三个部分(发音语音学、声学语音学和听觉语音学)的最新进展做了简要的介绍。

第三节讲对语音变异即不同口音的研究。传统上这种研究仅限于地理位置不同所产生的不同口音，称为方言学。最近社会语言学的研究考虑到变异的其他来源，如年龄、性别、社会阶级、教育背景、个性等等。此外，还有一些场景因素，如说话人与听话人的社会关系，说话的场合，和使用语言的目的等也都对发音产生影响。最后，语音变体还和说话风格(如正式、随便等)有关。

问题：

1. “应用音系学”与“纯音系学”有何不同？纯音系学有何用处？
2. 区别特征理论与音位理论有哪些不同？
3. 实验语音学分几个部分？各自研究什么？如何研究？
4. 社会语言学与语音学有何关系？

List of symbols used

1. *Symbols for phonemes*

ɪ	as in 'pit' pɪt	iː	as in 'key' kiː
e	as in 'pet' pet	ɑː	as in 'car' kɑː
æ	as in 'pat' pæt	ɔː	as in 'core' kɔː
ʌ	as in 'putt' pʌt	uː	as in 'coo' kuː
ɒ	as in 'pot' pɒt	ɜː	as in 'cur' kɜː
ʊ	as in 'put' pʊt		
ə	as in 'abour, 'upper' əbəʊt, ʌpə		
eɪ	as in 'bay' beɪ	əʊ	as in 'go' gəʊ
aɪ	as in 'buy' baɪ	aʊ	as in 'cow' kaʊ
ɔɪ	as in 'boy' bɔɪ		
ɪə	as in 'peer' pɪə		
eə	as in 'pear' peə		
ʊə	as in 'poor' pʊə		
p	as in 'pea' piː	b	as in 'bee' biː
t	as in 'toe' təʊ	d	as in 'doe' dəʊ
k	as in 'cap' kæp	g	as in 'gap' gæp
f	as in 'fat' fæt	v	as in 'vat' væt
θ	as in 'thing' θɪŋ	ð	as in 'this' ðɪs
s	as in 'sip' sɪp	z	as in 'zip' zɪp
ʃ	as in 'ship' ʃɪp	ʒ	as in 'measure' meʒə
h	as in 'hat' hæt		
m	as in 'map' mæp	l	as in 'led' led
n	as in 'nap' næp	r	as in 'red' red
ŋ	as in 'hang' hæŋ	j	as in 'yet' jet
		w	as in 'wet' wet
tʃ	as in 'chin' tʃɪn	dʒ	as in 'gin' dʒɪn

2. *Non-phonemic symbols*

i as in 'react', 'happy' riækt, hæpi

u as in 'to each' tu iːtʃ

ʔ glottal stop

ʰ aspiration, as in 'pin' pʰɪn

̩ syllabic consonant, as in 'button' bʌtn̩

3. *Stress and intonation*

| tone-unit boundary

|| pause

ˈ primary stress, as in 'open' ˈəʊpən

ˌ secondary stress, as in 'ice cream' ˌaɪsˈkriːm

Tones: ˩fall
˨rise
˩˨fall-rise
˨˩rise-fall
˧level

ˈ stressed syllable in head, high pitch, as in ˈplease ˩do

ˌ stressed syllable in head, low pitch, as in ˌplease ˩do

˙ stressed syllable in tail, as in ˩my ˙turn

↑ extra pitch height, as in ↑˩my ˙turn

Preface to the second edition

I am very glad to have had the opportunity to make some improvements to *English Phonetics and Phonology*, though since it has become widely used as a course-book I have tried not to make a lot of fundamental changes. Many of the improvements have been made in response to feedback from users around the world. The most obvious change is that there is no longer a separate book for tutors: this book contained most of the information about further reading and alternative approaches, and this information was not sufficiently accessible to student readers. There is now just one book and the "Tutor's Book" information is given in the form of notes at the end of each chapter. In doing this I have left out the general discussion that was in the Tutor's Book about pronunciation teaching methods: I feel that this is a subject that does not really belong in this book, and is better dealt with elsewhere; I have, however, included some specific notes for teachers after most of the chapters. I have also taken the opportunity to include some written exercises at the end of each chapter: these are not meant to give a comprehensive test on the material in the chapter, but to give a little useful practical follow-up. I have not made any changes to the tape exercises.

Of the other changes, some are simply terminological changes and re-phrasing of various points. Many excellent books and papers have appeared since 1983, and reference is made to these. There have been some changes in the practice and terminology of general phonetics (particularly arising out of the Kiel Congress of the International Phonetic Association in 1989 and the subsequent revision of the Association's recommendations), and finally there are places where as a result of discussing and reading my views on some of the issues presented in the first edition have developed in new directions.

I hope that the new edition will continue to serve the needs of newcomers to a subject that can at times be difficult but ought to be enjoyable and interesting most of the time.

Thanks

The material in this course was originally developed over more than ten years, and during that period many people helped me. The first time I actually wrote out a full version was when I was teaching (on leave from Reading University) in the Department of English at the University of Seville, Spain, for the academic year 1975–6. For this valuable experience my thanks are chiefly due to Professor Antonio Garnica and to Reading University, but I would also like to thank the staff of the Seville Department of English and the British Council in Madrid for their assistance.

I am extremely glad that Cambridge University Press arranged for this course to be tested before publication in a number of institutions around the world concerned with English language teaching at an advanced level. The trials have resulted in a large amount of valuable comments and suggestions based on practical experience, and I am very grateful to the testers for the work they devoted to this task. I must make special mention of three testers. Dr Roger Bowers, of The British Council, wrote a detailed and penetrating critique of the course that was enormously valuable; however, his connection with the course goes back further than that, as he gave me encouragement, material and ideas when we were colleagues in the Department of Linguistic Science at Reading University. It has been useful to me to have the critical comments of Professor Garnica of Seville, whose role in the early development of the course was mentioned above and who tested it in its later form. I am also very glad that a colleague at Leeds University, David Taylor of the Overseas Education Unit, was able to try the course out with a group of overseas teachers of English. I would like to thank all the other testers: The British Council in Athens and in Naples, The University of Strasbourg, The University of Sussex (School of European Studies) and The Cultura Inglesa, São Paulo.

I have received a lot of help and encouragement from colleagues at Reading University and at Leeds University, where I owe a particular debt to Marion Shirt for her detailed reading of two drafts of the course. I am also grateful to all the students I have taught, both on degree courses and on Summer Schools; I have learned a lot from them.

The cassettes that accompany the course include material provided by Tony Fox, Patrick Leach, Doreen Lucas and David Maguire. I am very grateful to Eric Brearley for making the recordings and to my wife

Helen, who has helped me in so many ways in addition to being the "other voice" on the cassettes.

I would like to acknowledge some of the help I have had in preparing this second edition. Joanne Kenworthy of the Polytechnic of East London has given me invaluable advice, and I would like to thank her particularly. I have had many useful comments on the first edition from Tom Baldwin, Caroline Henton, Jack Windsor Lewis and Linda Taylor, and helpful discussion on a number of points with Bill Hardcastle, Peter Ladefoged, John Laver, Celia Scully and John Wells. I have been glad to have the advice of Annemarie Young of Cambridge University Press on many occasions during the preparation of this edition. I wish I could thank individually all the other people who have written or spoken to me about the book and given me ideas for improving it. Finally, I am grateful as before to my wife (and friend and colleague) Helen for all she has done for me.

Contents

Preface by Halliday F9
王宗炎序 F10
导读 F13
List of symbols used F35
Preface to the second edition F37
Thanks F38
How to use this book 1

1 Introduction 3

2 The production of speech sounds 8
2.1 Articulators above the larynx
2.2 Vowel and consonant
2.3 English short vowels

3 Long vowels, diphthongs and triphthongs 18
3.1 Long and short vowels
3.2 Diphthongs
3.3 Triphthongs

4 Voicing and consonants 26
4.1 The larynx
4.2 Respiration and voicing
4.3 Plosives
4.4 English plosives
4.5 Fortis and lenis

5 The phoneme 36
5.1 The phoneme
5.2 Symbols and transcription
5.3 Phonology

6 Fricatives and affricates 47
6.1 Production of fricatives and affricates
6.2 The fricatives of English
6.3 The affricates
6.4 Fortis consonants

7 Nasals and other consonants 56
7.1 Nasals
7.2 l
7.3 r
7.4 j and w

8 The syllable 67

9 Strong and weak syllables 75
9.1 Strong and weak
9.2 The ə vowel ("schwa")
9.3 Close front and close back vowels
9.4 Syllabic consonants

10 Stress in simple words 85
10.1 The nature of stress
10.2 Levels of stress
10.3 Placement of stress within the word

11 Complex word stress 95
11.1 Complex words
11.2 Suffixes
11.3 Prefixes
11.4 Compound words
11.5 Variable stress
11.6 Word-class pairs

12 Weak forms 102

13 Problems in phonemic analysis 110
13.1 Problems of analysis
13.2 Problems of assignment

14 Aspects of connected speech 120
14.1 Rhythm
14.2 Assimilation
14.3 Elision
14.4 Linking

15 Intonation 1 133
15.1 Form and function in intonation
15.2 Tone and tone languages
15.3 Complex tones and pitch height
15.4 Some functions of English tones

16 Intonation 2 144
16.1 The tone-unit
16.2 The structure of the tone-unit
16.3 Pitch possibilities in the simple tone-unit

17 Intonation 3 152
17.1 Fall–rise and rise–fall tones followed by a tail
17.2 High and low heads
17.3 Problems in analysing the form of intonation

18 Functions of intonation 1 163
18.1 The attitudinal function of intonation

19 Functions of intonation 2 172
19.1 The accentual function of intonation
19.2 The grammatical function of intonation
19.3 The discourse function of intonation
19.4 Conclusions

20 Further areas of study in phonetics and phonology 182
20.1 Distinctive features
20.2 Experimental phonetics
20.3 The study of variety

Recorded exercises 194

Tape Unit 2: English short vowels 195
Tape Unit 3: Long vowels, diphthongs and triphthongs 196
Tape Unit 4: Plosives 199
Tape Unit 5: Revision 201
Tape Unit 6: Fricatives and affricates 203
Tape Unit 7: Further consonants 205
Tape Unit 8: Consonant clusters 207
Tape Unit 9: Weak syllables 209
Tape Unit 10: Word stress 211
Tape Unit 11: Complex word stress 213
Tape Unit 12: Weak forms 215
Tape Unit 13: Revision 217
Tape Unit 14: Elisions 219
Tape Unit 15: Tones 220
Tape Unit 16: The tone-unit 221
Tape Unit 17: Intonation 223
Tape Unit 18: Intonation – extracts from conversation 224
Tape Unit 19: Transcription of connected speech 225
Tape Unit 20: Further practice on connected speech 227

Answers to written exercises 228
Answers to recorded exercises 239
Recommendations for general reading 248
Bibliography 251
Index 259
文庫索引 263

How to use this book

The first thing to remember about this book is that it is intended to be a *course*. It is designed to be read from beginning to end, and is therefore different from a reference book. Most readers of the book are expected either to be studying in a college or university, or to be practising English language teachers. The readers can be divided into groups as follows:

Firstly, they will be either a) students using the course under the direction of a tutor in charge of their course, or b) working through the course as individuals.

Secondly, they will be either i) native speakers of a language other than English, or ii) native speakers of English.

Finally, they will be either 1) teachers of English (or being trained to be such), or 2) students of English or linguistics and phonetics.

The course is intended to be used by all of these groups (if you multiply them together you get eight categories, and you should be able to place yourself in one of them); most of the material in the course has at some time or other been used by people of all eight categories, but it is necessary to use the course differently in these different circumstances.

Each chapter is followed by short additional sections, which you may choose not to use. Firstly, there is a section of notes on problems and further reading: this tells you how you can go further in studying the areas discussed in the chapter. Secondly, where relevant, there are brief notes for teachers about pronunciation teaching and the use of the taped practice material. Finally, there are some written exercises which test your understanding of the material in the chapter. Answers to the questions are given near the end of the book (pp. 229–39).

The course includes *cassettes* containing practical exercise material; there are 19 Tape Units which correspond to Chapters 2–20 of this book. When there is a relevant exercise on the cassettes, the symbol [cassette] is placed in the margin with a reference to the exercise, e.g. [cassette] TU1, Ex 1 indicates Tape Unit 1, Exercise 1. If you are in category (i) (a non-native speaker of English), every Tape Unit ought to be relevant to you, though the relevance of any particular exercise will depend on your particular native language. If you are in category (ii), only some of the exercises will be relevant: those on intonation are the most likely to be worth studying. If possible the cassettes should be used in a language laboratory, where a tutor can correct mistakes for you and where you

can record your voice in exercises where you have to speak, but they are still of value when used on an ordinary cassette recorder.

The way in which this book is designed to be used by readers in category (a) is the following:

i) All the students in a class read a chapter of this book.
ii) The students then have a class with the tutor in charge of this part of their course. This provides an opportunity to discuss the material in the chapter, and for the tutor to check if difficult points have been understood, to provide additional explanation and examples if necessary and possibly to recommend further reading.
iii) If the students are not native speakers of English it is expected that they will then have a session working on the Tape Unit corresponding to the chapter they have read and discussed.
iv) The group then goes on to the next chapter.

If you are working through the course individually you will of course arrange your own way of proceeding; the only important point here is that it would not be advisable to use the Tape Units without first reading the relevant chapters in the book.

The book begins with an Introduction, and there is no Tape Unit corresponding to this. Please read the Introduction, whatever category you come into, since it explains the purpose of the course and presents a number of basic points that are important for understanding the material that follows.

1 Introduction

You probably want to know what the purpose of this course is, and what you can expect to learn from it. An important purpose of the course is to explain how English is pronounced in the accent normally chosen as the standard for people learning the English spoken in England. If this was the only thing the course did, a more suitable title would have been "English Pronunciation". However, at the comparatively advanced level at which this course is aimed it is usual to present this information in the context of a general theory about speech sounds and how they are used in language; this theoretical context is called **phonetics and phonology**. Why is it necessary to learn this theoretical background? The same question arises in connection with grammar: at lower levels of study one is concerned simply with setting out how to form grammatical sentences, but people who are going to work with the language at an advanced level as teachers or researchers need the deeper understanding provided by the study of grammatical theory and related areas of linguistics. The theoretical material in the present course is necessary for anyone who needs to understand the principles regulating the use of sounds in spoken English.

The nature of phonetics and phonology will be explained as the course progresses, but one or two basic ideas need to be introduced at this introductory stage. In any language we can identify a small number of regularly used sounds (vowels and consonants) that we call **phonemes**; for example, the vowels in the words 'pin' and 'pen' are different phonemes, and so are the consonants at the beginning of the words 'pet' and 'bet'. Because of the notoriously confusing nature of English spelling it is particularly important to learn to think of English pronunciation in terms of phonemes rather than letters of the alphabet; one must be aware, for example, that the word 'enough' begins with the same vowel phoneme as that at the beginning of 'inept' and ends with the same consonant as 'stuff'. We often use special **symbols** to represent speech sounds; using the symbols chosen for this course, the word 'enough' would be written (**transcribed**) as **ɪnʌf**. A list of the symbols is given on p. ix.

The first part of the course is mainly concerned with identifying and describing the phonemes of English. Chapters 2 and 3 deal with vowels and Chapter 4 with some consonants. After this preliminary contact with the practical business of how some English sounds are pronoun-

ced, the fifth chapter looks at the phoneme and at the use of symbols in a theoretical way, while the corresponding Tape Unit revises the material of Chapters 2–4. After the phonemes of English have been introduced, the rest of the course goes on to look at larger units of speech such as the syllable and at aspects of speech such as **stress** (which could be roughly described as the relative strength of a syllable) and **intonation** (the use of the pitch of the voice to convey meaning). It would be a mistake to think that phonemes are studied first because they are the most important aspect of speech; the reason is simply that, in my experience, courses which begin with matters such as stress and intonation and deal with phonemes later are found more confusing by the students who use them.

You will have to learn a number of technical terms; you will find that when they are introduced in order to be defined or explained, they are printed in **bold type**. This has already been done in this Introduction in the case of, for example, **phoneme**, **phonetics** and **phonology**. Another convention to remember is that when words used as examples are given in spelling form, they are enclosed in single quotes (see for example 'pin', 'pen', etc.). Double quote marks are used where quote marks would normally be used; see, for example, "English Pronunciation" above.

Languages have different **accents**: they are pronounced differently by people from different geographical places, from different social classes, of different ages and different educational backgrounds. The word "accent" is often confused with **dialect**. We use the word "dialect" to refer to a variety of a language which is different from others not just in pronunciation but also in such matters as vocabulary, grammar and word-order. Differences of accent, on the other hand, are pronunciation differences only.

This course is not written for people who wish to study American pronunciation. The accent that we concentrate on and use as our **model** is the one that is most often recommended for foreign learners studying British English. It is most familiar as the accent used by most announcers and newsreaders on serious national and international BBC broadcasting channels. It has for a long time been identified by the rather quaint name **Received Pronunciation** (usually abbreviated to its initials, **RP**). The pronunciation of English in America is different from most accents found in Britain. There are exceptions to this – you can find accents in parts of Britain that sound American, and accents in America that sound English. But the pronunciation that you are likely to hear from most Americans does sound noticeably different from RP.

In talking about accents of English, the foreigner should be careful about the difference between **England** and **Britain**; there are many different accents in England, but the range becomes very much wider if the accents of Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland (Scotland and

Wales are included in Britain and with Northern Ireland form the **United Kingdom**) are taken into account. Within the accents of England, the distinction that is most frequently made by the majority of English people is between **Northern** and **Southern**. This is a very rough division, and there can be endless argument over where the boundaries lie, but most people on hearing a pronunciation typical of someone from Lancashire, Yorkshire or other counties further north would identify it as "Northern". This course deals almost entirely with RP. There is, of course, no implication that other accents are inferior or less pleasant-sounding; the reason is simply that RP is the accent that has always been chosen by British teachers to teach to foreign learners, and is the accent that has been most fully described and has been used as the basis for textbooks and pronouncing dictionaries.

If you are a native speaker of English and your accent is different from RP you should try, as you work through the course, to note what your main differences are for purposes of comparison. I am not, of course, suggesting that you should try to change your pronunciation to RP! If you are a learner of English you are recommended to concentrate on RP initially, though when you have worked through the course and become familiar with this you will probably find it an interesting exercise to listen analytically to other accents of English, to see if you can identify the ways in which they differ from RP and even to learn to pronounce some examples of different accents yourself.

Notes on problems and further reading

I feel that if we had a completely free choice of model accent it would be possible to find more suitable ones: many Scottish and Irish accents, for example, have a much more straightforward relationship between spelling and sounds than does RP, and have simpler vowel systems, and would therefore be easier for most foreign learners to acquire. Unfortunately, the majority of English teachers would be reluctant to learn to speak in the classroom with such an accent, so this is not a practical possibility.

For introductory reading on English pronunciation, see O'Connor (1980), pp. 5–6; Brown (1990), pp. 12–13; Gimson (1989), pp. 83–8. For a discussion of the status of RP, see Abercrombie (1965). For those who want to know more about British accents, a simple introduction is Hughes and Trudgill (1987); undoubtedly the major work on all accents of English is Wells (1982), which is a very valuable source of information (see especially pp. 117–18 and 279–301 on RP). A recent book that has caused a certain amount of controversy is Honey (1989),

which discusses the importance of accents (and RP in particular) in education, politics and social life. I disagree with many of the views expressed, but the book is interesting to read.

A problem area that has received a lot of attention is the choice of symbols for representing English phonemes. In the past, many different conventions have been proposed and students have often been confused by finding that the symbols used in one book are different from the ones they have learned in another. The symbols used in this book are in almost every respect those devised by A. C. Gimson for the *English Pronouncing Dictionary* (14th edition) and used in his *Introduction to the Pronunciation of English* (1989). These symbols are now used in most modern works on English pronunciation published in Britain, and can therefore be looked on as a *de facto* standard. Although good arguments can be made for some alternative symbols, the advantages of having a common set of symbols for pronunciation teaching materials and pronunciation entries in dictionaries are so great that it would be very regrettable to go back to the confusing diversity of earlier years.

The subject of symbolization is returned to in Chapter 5, section 5.2.

Notes for teachers

Pronunciation teaching is not popular all the time with teachers and language-teaching theorists, and in recent years it has been fashionable to treat it as a rather outdated activity. It has been claimed, for example, that it attempts to make learners try to sound like native speakers of RP, that it discourages them through difficult and repetitive exercises and that it fails to give importance to **communication**. A good example of this attitude is to be found in Brown and Yule (1983), pp. 26–7. The criticism is misguided, I believe. No pronunciation course that I know has ever said that learners must try to speak perfect RP; to claim this mixes up **models** with **goals**: the *model* chosen is RP, but the *goal* is normally to develop the learner's pronunciation sufficiently to permit effective communication with native speakers. Pronunciation exercises can be difficult, of course, but if we eliminate everything difficult from our teaching, we may end up doing very little beyond getting students to play little communication games. It is, incidentally, quite incorrect to suggest that the classic works on pronunciation and phonetics teaching concentrated on mechanically perfecting vowels and consonants: Jones (1956), for example, writes "'Good' speech may be defined as a way of speaking which is clearly intelligible to all ordinary people. 'Bad' speech is a way of talking which is difficult for most people to understand . . . A person may speak with sounds very different from those of his hearers

and yet be clearly intelligible to all of them, as for instance when a Scotsman or an American addresses an English audience with clear articulation. Their speech cannot be described as other than 'good'."

There are many different and well-tried methods of teaching and testing pronunciation, many of which are used in this book. I do not feel that it is suitable in this book to go into a detailed analysis of these methods, but there is an excellent treatment of the subject in Kenworthy (1987). Gimson (1989) also discusses pronunciation teaching (chapter 12), and Brown and Yule (1983) contains some interesting ideas.

2 The production of speech sounds

2.1 Articulators above the larynx

All the sounds we make when we speak are the result of muscles contracting. The muscles in the chest that we use for breathing produce the flow of air that is needed for almost all speech sounds; muscles in the larynx produce many different modifications in the flow of air from the chest to the mouth. After passing through the larynx, the air goes through what we call the **vocal tract**, which ends at the mouth and nostrils. Here the air from the lungs escapes into the atmosphere. We have a large and complex set of muscles that can produce changes in the shape of the vocal tract, and in order to learn how the sounds of speech are produced it is necessary to become familiar with the different parts of the vocal tract. These different parts are called **articulators**, and the study of them is called **articulatory phonetics**.

Fig. 1 is a diagram that is used frequently in the study of phonetics. It represents the human head, seen from the side, displayed as though it had been cut in half. You will need to look at it carefully as the articulators are described, and you will often find it useful to have a mirror and a good light placed so that you can look at the inside of your mouth.

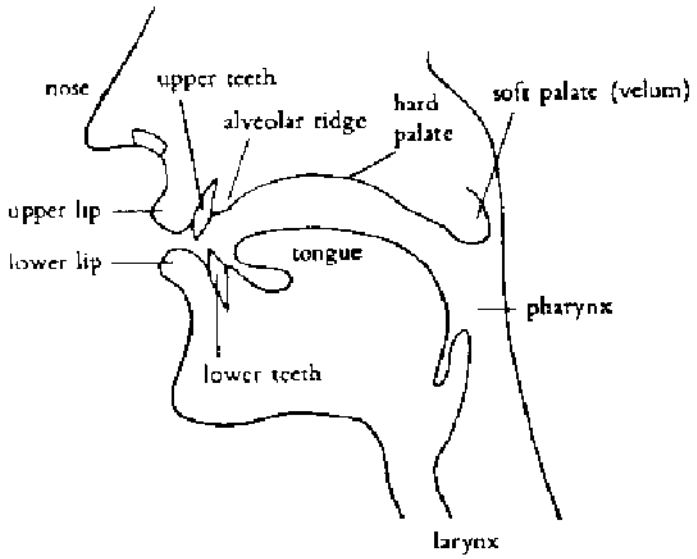


Fig. 1 The articulators

i) The **pharynx** is a tube which begins just above the larynx. It is about 7 cm long in women and about 8 cm in men, and at its top end it is divided into two, one part being the back of the mouth and the other being the beginning of the way through the nasal cavity. If you look in your mirror with your mouth open, you can see the back of the pharynx.

ii) The **velum** or **soft palate** is seen in the diagram in a position that allows air to pass through the nose and through the mouth. Yours is probably in that position now, but often in speech it is raised so that air cannot escape through the nose. The other important thing about the velum is that it is one of the articulators that can be touched by the tongue. When we make the sounds **k** and **g** the tongue is in contact with the lower side of the velum, and we call these **velar** consonants.

iii) The **hard palate** is often called the "roof of the mouth". You can feel its smooth curved surface with your tongue.

iv) The **alveolar ridge** is between the top front teeth and the hard palate. You can feel its shape with your tongue. Its surface is really much rougher than it feels, and is covered with little ridges. You can only see these if you have a mirror small enough to go inside your mouth (such as those used by dentists). Sounds made with the tongue touching here (such as **t** and **d**) are called **alveolar**.

v) The **tongue** is, of course, a very important articulator and it can be moved into many different places and different shapes. It is usual to divide the tongue into different parts, though there are no clear dividing lines within the tongue. Fig. 2 shows the tongue on a larger scale with these parts shown: **tip, blade, front, back and root**. (This use of the word "front" often seems rather strange at first.)

vi) The **teeth** (upper and lower) are usually shown in diagrams like Fig. 1 only at the front of the mouth, immediately behind the lips. This is for the sake of a simple diagram, and you should remember that most speakers have teeth to the sides of their mouths, back almost to the soft palate. The tongue is in contact with the upper side teeth for many speech sounds. Sounds made with the tongue touching the front teeth are called **dental**.

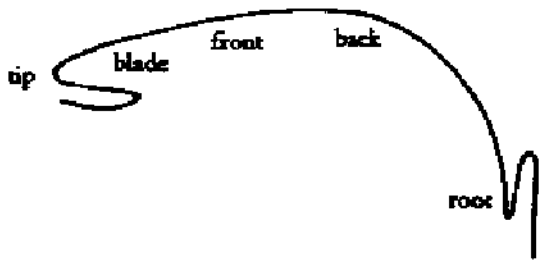


Fig. 2 Sub-divisions of the tongue

vii) The lips are important in speech. They can be pressed together (when we produce the sounds p, b), brought into contact with the teeth (as in f, v), or rounded to produce the lip-shape for vowels like u:. Sounds in which the lips are in contact with each other are called **bilabial**, while those with lip-to-teeth contact are called **labiodental**.

The seven articulators described above are the main ones used in speech, but there are three other things to remember. Firstly, the larynx (which will be studied in Chapter 4) could also be described as an articulator – a very complex and independent one. Secondly, the jaws are sometimes called articulators; certainly we move the lower jaw a lot in speaking. But the jaws are not articulators in the same way as the others, because they cannot themselves make contact with other articulators. Finally, although there is practically nothing that we can do with the nose and the nasal cavity, they are a very important part of our equipment for making sounds (what is sometimes called our **vocal apparatus**), particularly nasal consonants such as m, n. Again, we cannot really describe the nose and the nasal cavity as articulators in the same sense as (i) to (vii) above.

2.2 Vowel and consonant

The words **vowel** and **consonant** are very familiar ones, but when we study the sounds of speech scientifically we find that it is not easy to define exactly what they mean. The most common view is that vowels are sounds in which there is no obstruction to the flow of air as it passes from the larynx to the lips. A doctor who wants to look at the back of a patient's mouth often asks the patient to say "ah"; making this vowel sound is the best way of presenting an unobstructed view. But if we make a sound like s or d it can be clearly felt that we are making it difficult or impossible for the air to pass through the mouth. Most people would have no doubt that sounds like s and d should be called consonants. However, there are many cases where the decision is not so easy to make. One problem is that some English sounds that we think of as consonants, such as the sounds at the beginning of the words 'hay' and 'way', do not really obstruct the flow of air more than some vowels do. Another problem is that different languages have different ways of dividing their sounds into vowel and consonant; for example, the usual sound produced at the beginning of the word 'red' is felt to be a consonant by most English speakers, but in some other languages (some dialects of Chinese, for example) the same sound is treated as one of the vowels.

If we say that the difference between vowels and consonants is a difference in the way that they are produced, there will inevitably be some cases of uncertainty or disagreement; this is a problem that cannot be avoided. It is possible to establish two distinct groups of sounds (vowels and consonants) in another way. Consider English words beginning with the sound h; what sounds can come next after this h? We find that most of the sounds we normally think of as vowels can follow (for example e in the word 'hen'), but practically none of the sounds we class as consonants. Now think of English words beginning with the two sounds bi; we find many cases where a consonant can follow (for example d in the word 'bid', or l in the word 'bill'), but hardly any cases where a vowel may follow. What we are doing here is looking at the different contexts and positions in which particular sounds can occur; this is the study of the **distribution** of the sounds, and is of great importance in phonology. Study of the sounds found at the beginning and end of English words has shown that two groups of sounds with quite different patterns of distribution can be identified, and these two groups are those of vowel and consonant. If we look at the vowel–consonant distinction in this way, we must say that the most important difference between vowel and consonant is not the way that they are made, but their different distributions. Of course, the distribution of vowels and consonants is different for each language.

There are many interesting theoretical problems connected with the vowel–consonant distinction, but we will not return to this question. For the rest of this course it will be assumed that the sounds are clearly divided into vowels and consonants.

We begin the study of English sounds in this course by looking at vowels, and it is necessary to say something about vowels in general before turning to the vowels of English. We need to know in what ways vowels differ from each other. The first matter to consider is the shape and position of the tongue. It is usual to simplify the very complex possibilities by describing just two things: firstly, the vertical distance between the upper surface of the tongue and the palate, and secondly the part of the tongue, between front and back, which is raised highest. Let us look at some examples:

i) Make a vowel like the iː in the English word 'see' and look in a mirror; if you tilt your head back slightly you will be able to see that the tongue is held up close to the roof of the mouth. Now make an æ vowel (as in the word 'cat') and notice how the distance between the surface of the tongue and the roof of the mouth is now much greater. The difference between iː and æ is a difference of **tongue height**, and we would describe iː as a relatively **close** vowel and æ as a relatively **open** vowel. Tongue height can be changed by moving the tongue up or down, or moving the lower jaw up or down. Usually we use some

combination of the two sorts of movement, but when drawing side-of-the-head diagrams such as Fig. 1 and Fig. 2 it is usually found simpler to illustrate tongue shapes for vowels as if tongue height was altered by tongue movement alone, without any accompanying jaw movement. So we would illustrate the tongue height difference between i: and æ as in Fig. 3.

ii) In making the two vowels described above, it is the front part of the tongue that is raised. We could therefore describe i: and æ as comparatively front vowels. By changing the shape of the tongue we can produce vowels in which a different part of the tongue is the highest point. A vowel in which the back of the tongue is the highest point is called a **back** vowel. If you make the vowel in the word 'calm', which we write phonetically as ɑ:, you can see that the back of the tongue is raised. Compare this with æ in front of a mirror; æ is a front vowel and ɑ: is a back vowel. The vowel in 'too' (u:) is also a comparatively back vowel, but compared with ɑ: it is close.

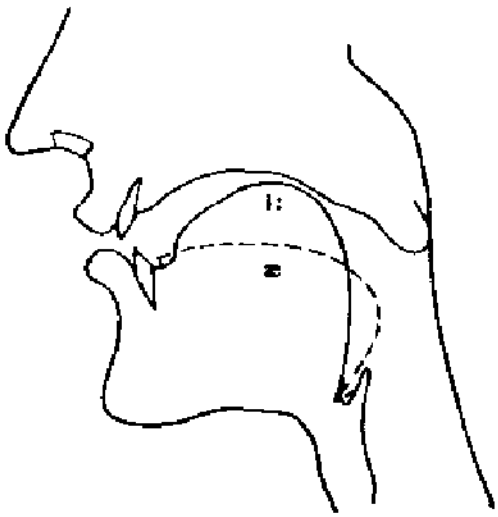


Fig. 3 Tongue positions for i: and æ

So now we have seen how four vowels differ from each other; we could show this in a simple diagram (Fig. 4). However, this diagram is rather inaccurate. Phoneticians need a very accurate way of classifying vowels, and have developed a set of vowels, arranged in a close–open, front–back diagram like Fig. 4, which are not the vowels of any

	Front	Back
Close	i:	u:
Open	æ	ɑ:

Fig. 4 Extreme vowel positions

particular language. These **cardinal vowels** are a standard reference system, and people being trained in phonetics have to learn to make them accurately and recognise them correctly. If you learn the cardinal vowels, you are not learning to make English sounds, but you *are* learning about the range of vowels that the human vocal apparatus can make, and also learning a useful way of describing, classifying and comparing vowels. They are recorded at the end of Cassette 2.

It has become traditional to locate cardinal vowels on a four-sided figure (quadrilateral) of the shape seen in Fig. 5 (the design used here is the one recommended by the International Phonetic Association in 1989). The exact shape is not really important – a square would do quite well – but we will use the traditional shape. The vowels on Fig. 5 are the so-called **primary** cardinal vowels; these are the vowels that are most familiar to the speakers of most European languages, and there are other cardinal vowels (**secondary cardinal vowels**) that sound less

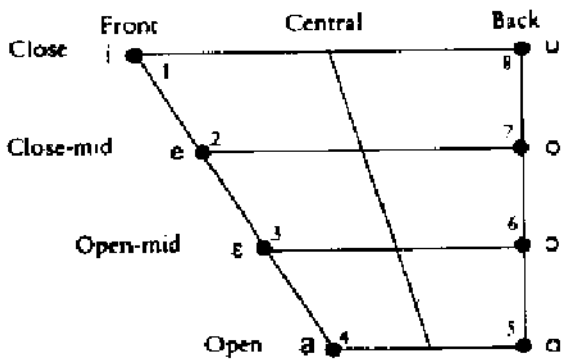


Fig. 5 Primary cardinal vowels

familiar. Cardinal vowel no. 1 has the symbol [i], and is defined as the vowel which is as close and as front as it is possible to make a vowel without obstructing the flow of air enough to produce friction noise; friction noise is the sort of hissing sound that one hears in consonants like s or f. Cardinal vowel no. 5 has the symbol [ɑ] and is defined as the most open and back vowel that it is possible to make. Cardinal vowel no. 8 [u], is fully close and back and no. 4 [a], is fully open and front. After establishing these extreme points, it is possible to put in intermediate points (vowels no. 2, 3, 6 and 7). Many students when they hear these vowels find that they sound strange and exaggerated; you must remember that they are *extremes* of vowel quality. It is useful to think of the cardinal vowel framework like a map of an area of country that you are interested in. Obviously, if the map is to be useful to you it must cover all the area; but if it covers the whole area of interest it must inevitably go a little way beyond that and include some places that you might never want to go to. However, it is still important to know where the edges of the map are drawn. When you are familiar with these

extreme vowels, you have (as mentioned above) learned a way of describing, classifying and comparing vowels. For example, we can say that the English vowel æ (the vowel in 'cat') is not as open as cardinal vowel no. 4 [a]. (In this course cardinal vowels will always be printed within square brackets to distinguish them clearly from English vowel sounds.)

We have now looked at how we can classify vowels according to their tongue height and their frontness or backness. There is another important variable of vowel quality and that is **lip-rounding**. Although the lips can have many different shapes and positions, we will at this stage consider only three possibilities. These are:

i) **Rounded**, where the corners of the lips are brought towards each other and the lips pushed forwards. This is most clearly seen in cardinal vowel no. 8 [u].
ii) **Spread**, with the corners of the lips moved away from each other, as for a smile. This is most clearly seen in cardinal vowel no. 1 [i].
iii) **Neutral**, where the lips are not noticeably rounded or spread. The noise most English people make when they are hesitating (written 'er') has neutral lip position.

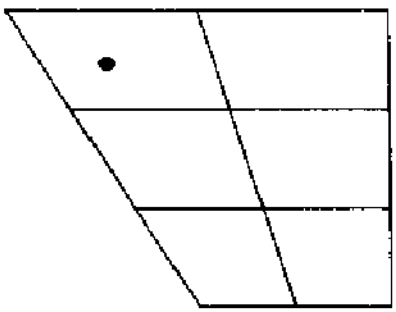
Now, using the principles that have just been explained, we will examine some of the English vowels.

2.3 English short vowels

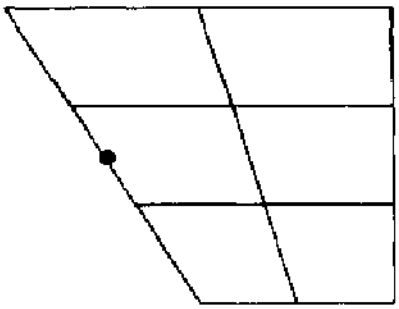
TU 2, Exs 1–4

English has a large number of vowel sounds; the first ones to be examined are short vowels. The symbols for these short vowels are: ɪ, e, æ, ʌ, ɒ, ʊ. Short vowels are only *relatively* short; as we shall see later, vowels can have quite different lengths in different contexts.

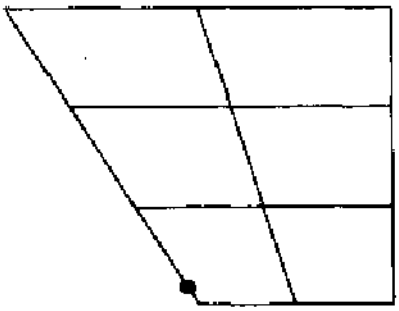
Each vowel is described in relation to the cardinal vowels.



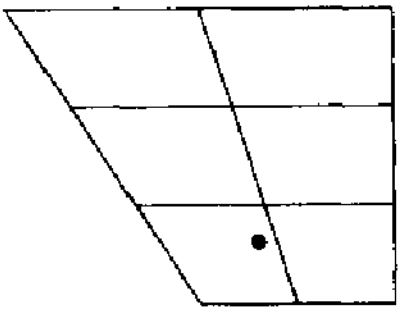
ɪ (example words: 'bit', 'pin', 'fish') The diagram shows that, though this vowel is in the close front area, compared with cardinal vowel no. 1 [i] it is more open, and nearer in to the centre. The lips are slightly spread.



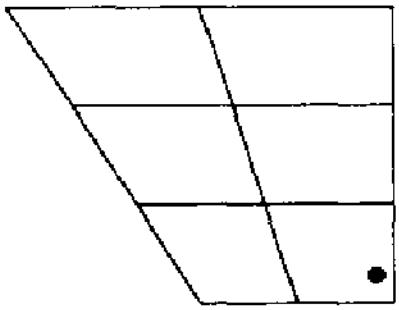
e (example words: 'bet', 'men', 'yes')
This is a front vowel between cardinal vowel no. 2 [e] and no. 3 [ɛ]. The lips are slightly spread.



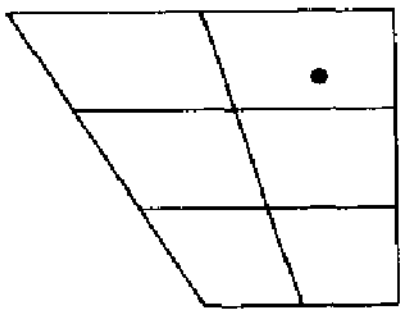
æ (example words: 'bat', 'man', 'gas')
This vowel is front, but not quite as open as cardinal vowel no. 4 [a]. The lips are slightly spread.



ʌ (example words: 'but', 'some', 'rush')
This is a central vowel, and the diagram shows that it is more open than the open-mid tongue height. The lip position is neutral.



ɒ (example words: 'pot', 'gone', 'cross')
This vowel is not quite fully back, and between open-mid and open in tongue height. The lips are slightly rounded.



ʊ (example words: 'put', 'pull', 'push')
The nearest cardinal vowel is no. 8 [u], but it can be seen that ʊ is more open and nearer to central. The lips are rounded.

There is one other short vowel, for which the symbol is ə. This central vowel, which is called **schwa**, is a very familiar sound in English; it is heard in the first syllable of the words 'about', 'oppose', 'perhaps', for example. Since it is different from the other vowels in several important ways, we will study it separately in Chapter 9.

Notes on problems and further reading

One of the most difficult aspects of phonetics at this stage is the large number of technical terms that have to be learned. Every phonetics textbook gives a description of the articulators, and I will not attempt to list all of them. Two useful introductions are Ladefoged (1982), chapter 1, and O'Connor (1973), chapter 2. I would recommend Hardcastle (1976), chapter 5, to anyone wishing to go into a more detailed study of this subject.

The best-known discussion of the vowel–consonant distinction is by Pike (1943), pp. 66–79. He suggests that since the two approaches to the distinction produce such different results we should use new terms: sounds which do not obstruct the airflow (traditionally called "vowels") should be called *vocoids*, and sounds which do obstruct the airflow (traditionally called "consonants") should be called *contoids*. This leaves the terms "vowel" and "consonant" for use in labelling phonological elements according to their distribution and their role in syllable structure. While vowels are usually vocoids and consonants are usually contoids, this is not always the case: for example, j in 'yet' and w in 'wet' are (phonetically) vocoids but function (phonologically) as consonants.

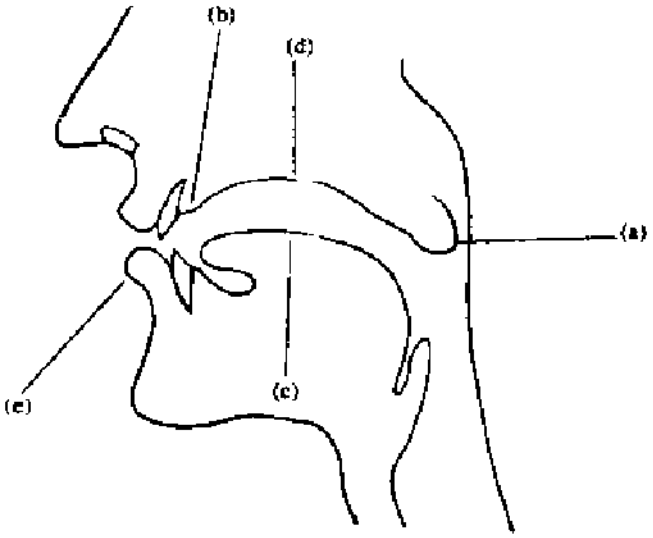
A study of the distributional differences between vowels and consonants in English is described in O'Connor and Trim (1953); a briefer treatment is in Gimson (1989), pp. 29–31 and 54–5.

The classification of vowels has a large literature. I would recommend Jones (1975), chapter 8, Ladefoged (1982), pp. 11–14 and Abercrombie (1967), pp. 55–60 and chapter 10. Ladefoged, in a series of studies, has examined experimentally most of the fundamental principles of vowel classification and his findings are summarised in Ladefoged (1967), pp. 50–142. The International Phonetic Association has recently revised its vowel classification system: see *Journal of the International Phonetic Association*, vol. 19, no. 2 (1989). It is much easier to understand the Cardinal Vowel system if you can hear the vowels themselves. I have included a recording of my pronunciation of the eight "Primary Cardinal Vowels" on Cassette 2, after the end of Tape Unit 20; it is not a good idea to mix up the study of these vowels

with practice on English vowels. In a more thorough presentation of the vowels I would have avoided using the notion of "Primary" vowels, since what makes them primary is to a large extent the fact that they are particularly familiar to speakers of the European languages that have been dominant in the development of contemporary phonetics, and we should try not to be influenced by such subjective factors. Consequently, at a more advanced level of study it is better to refer to vowels on the Cardinal Vowel quadrilateral simply by their tongue position and lip configuration.

Written exercises

1. On the diagram provided, various articulators are indicated by numbered arrows (a–e). Give the names for the articulators.



2. Using the descriptive labels introduced for vowel classification, say what the following Cardinal Vowels are:

   a) u *b)* e *c)* a *d)* i *e)* o

3. Draw a vowel quadrilateral and indicate on it the correct places for the following English vowels:

   a) æ *b)* ʌ *c)* ɪ *d)* e

4. Write the symbols for the vowels in the following words:

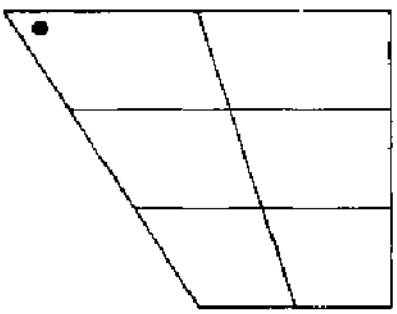
   a) bread *b)* rough *c)* foot *d)* hymn
   e) pull *f)* cough *g)* mat *h)* friend

3 Long vowels, diphthongs and triphthongs

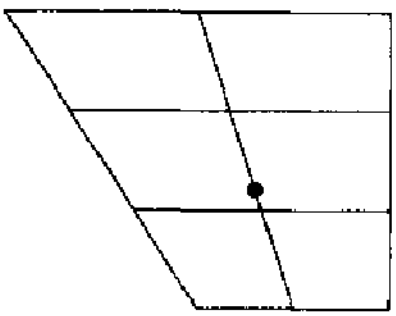
3.1 Long and short vowels

In Chapter 2 the short vowels were introduced. In this chapter we look at other types of English vowel sound. The first to be introduced here are the five **long vowels**; these are the vowels which tend to be longer than the short vowels in similar contexts. It is necessary to say "in similar contexts" because, as we shall see later, the length of all English vowel sounds varies very much according to context (such as the type of sound that follows them) and the presence or absence of stress. To remind you that these vowels tend to be long, the symbols consist of one vowel symbol plus a length-mark made of two dots :. Thus we have: iː, ɜː, ɑː, ɔː, uː. We will now look at these long vowels individually.

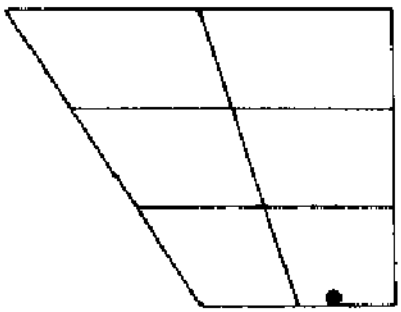
TU 3,
Exs 1–5



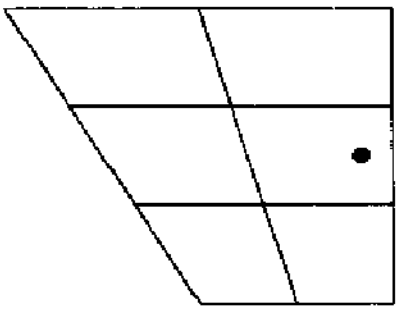
iː (example words: 'beat', 'mean', 'peace')
This vowel is nearer to cardinal vowel no. 1 [i] (that is, it is more close and front) than the short ɪ vowel of 'bid', 'pin', 'fish' described in Chapter 2. Although the tongue shape is not much different from cardinal vowel no. 1, the lips are only slightly spread and this results in a rather different vowel quality.



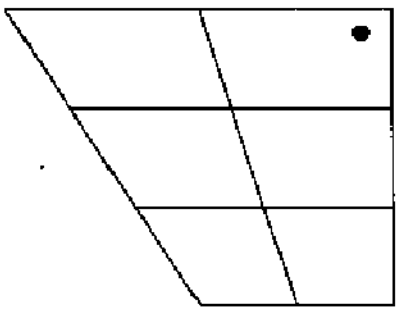
ɜː (example words: 'bird', 'fern', 'purse')
This is a central vowel which is well-known in most English accents as a hesitation sound (spelt 'er'), but which many foreigners find difficult to copy. The lip position is neutral.



ɑː (example words: 'card', 'half', 'pass')
This is an open vowel in the region of cardinal vowel no. 5 [ɑ], but not as back as this. The lip position is neutral.



ɔː (example words: 'board', 'torn', 'horse')
The tongue height for this vowel is between cardinal vowel no. 6 [ɔ] and no. 7 [o]. This vowel is almost fully back and has quite strong lip-rounding.



uː (example words: 'food', 'soon', 'loose')
This vowel is not very different from cardinal vowel no. 8 [u], but it is not quite so back nor so close, and the lips are only moderately rounded.

You may have noticed that these five long vowels are different from the six short vowels described in Chapter 2 not only in length but also in quality. If we compare some similar pairs of long and short vowels, for example ɪ with iː, or ʊ with uː, or æ with ɑː, we can see distinct differences in quality (resulting from differences in tongue shape and position, and lip position) as well as in length. For this reason, all the long vowels have symbols which are different from those of short vowels; you can perhaps see that the long and short vowel symbols would still all be different from each other even if we omitted the length mark, so it is important to remember that the length mark is used not because it is essential but because it helps learners to remember the length difference. Perhaps the only case where a long and short vowel are closely similar in quality is that of ə and ɜː; but ə is a special case, as we shall see later.

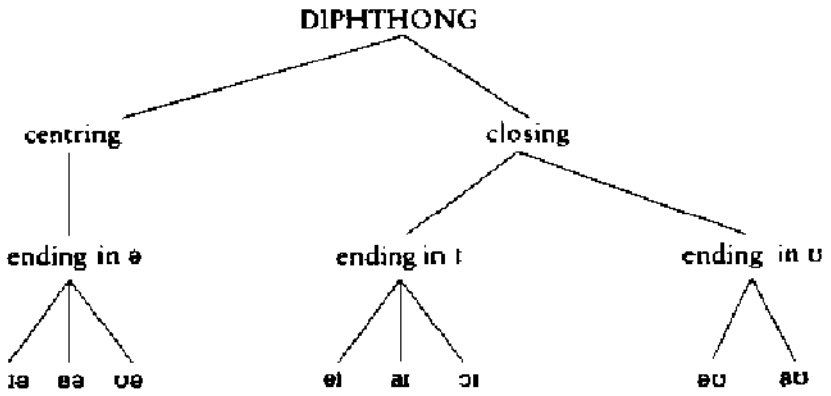
3.2 Diphthongs

TU 3, Exs 6 & 7

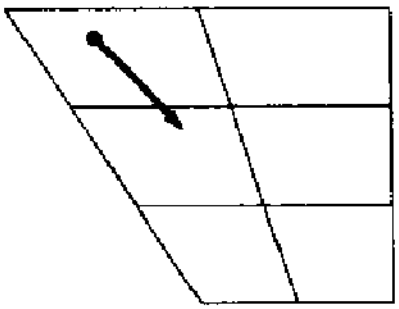
RP has a large number of **diphthongs**, sounds which consist of a movement or **glide** from one vowel to another. A vowel which remains constant and does not glide is called a **pure vowel**, and one of the most common pronunciation mistakes that result in a learner of English having a "foreign" accent is the production of pure vowels where a diphthong should be pronounced.

In terms of length, diphthongs are like the long vowels described above. Perhaps the most important thing to remember about all the diphthongs is that the first part is much longer and stronger than the second part; for example, most of the diphthong aɪ (as in the words 'eye', 'I') consists of the a vowel, and only in about the last quarter of the diphthong does the glide to ɪ become noticeable. As the glide to ɪ happens, the loudness of the sound decreases. As a result, the ɪ part is shorter and quieter. Foreign learners must, therefore, always remember that the last part of English diphthongs must not be made too strongly.

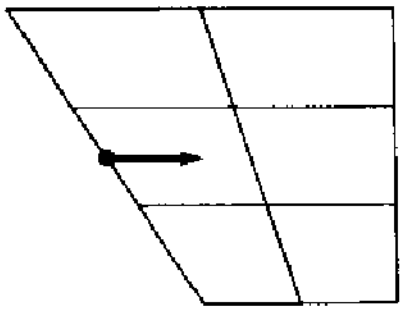
The total number of diphthongs is eight. The easiest way to remember them is in terms of three groups divided as in this diagram:



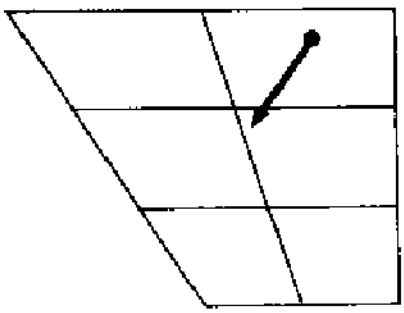
The **centring** diphthongs glide towards the ə (schwa) vowel, as the symbols indicate.



ɪə (example words: 'beard', 'Ian', 'fierce')
The starting point is a little closer than ɪ in 'bit', 'bin'.



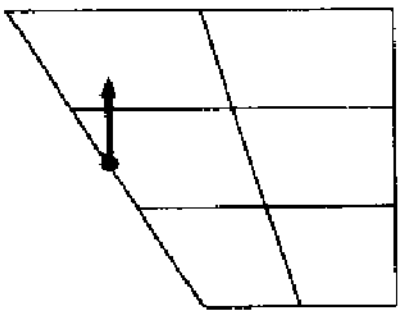
eə (example words: 'aired', 'cairn', 'scarce')
This diphthong begins with the same vowel sound as the e of 'get', 'men'.



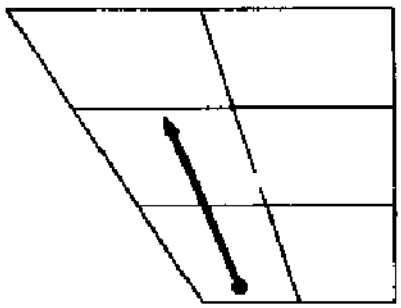
ʊə (example words: 'moored', 'tour')
This has a starting point slightly closer than ʊ in 'put', 'pull'.

The **closing** diphthongs have the characteristic that they all end with a glide towards a closer vowel. Because the second part of the diphthong is weak, they often do not reach a position that could be called close. The important thing is that a glide from a relatively more open towards a relatively more close vowel is produced.

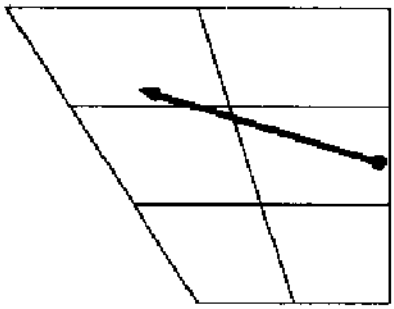
Three of the diphthongs glide towards ɪ, as described below:



eɪ (example words: 'paid', 'pain', 'face')
The starting point is the same as the e of 'get', 'men'.

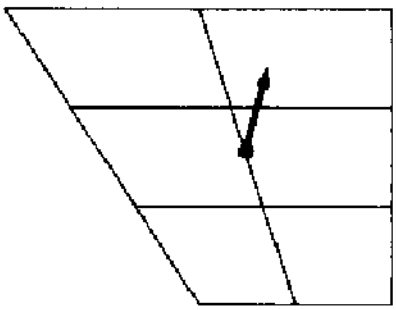


aɪ (example words: 'tide', 'time', 'nice')
This diphthong begins with an open vowel which is between front and back; it is quite similar to the ʌ of the words 'cut', 'bun'.

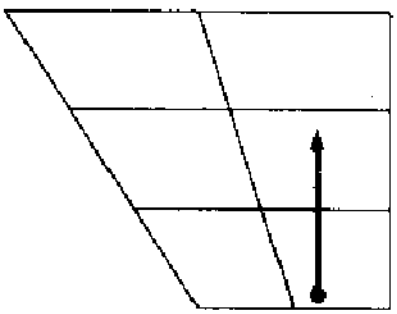


ɔɪ (example words: 'void', 'loin', 'voice')
The first part of this diphthong has the same quality as ɔː in 'ought', 'born'.

Two diphthongs glide towards ʊ, so that as the tongue moves closer to the roof of the mouth there is at the same time a rounding movement of the lips. This movement is not a large one, again because the second part of the diphthong is weak.



əʊ (example words: 'load', 'home', 'most')
The vowel position for the beginning of this is the same as for the "schwa" vowel ə, as found in the first syllable of the word 'about'. The lips may be slightly rounded in anticipation of the glide towards ʊ, for which there is quite noticeable lip-rounding.



aʊ (example words: 'loud', 'gown', 'house')
This diphthong begins with a vowel similar to ɑː but a little more front. Since this is an open vowel, a glide to ʊ would necessitate a large movement. Usually in English the glide towards ʊ begins but is not completed, the end of the diphthong being somewhere between close-mid and open-mid in tongue height. There is only slight lip-rounding.

3.3 Triphthongs

TU 3, Ex 8

The most complex English sounds of the vowel type are the **triphthongs**. They can be rather difficult to pronounce, and very difficult to recognise. A triphthong is a glide from one vowel to another and then to a third, all produced rapidly and without interruption. For example, a careful pronunciation of the word 'hour' begins with a vowel quality similar to ɑː, goes on to a glide towards the back close rounded area (for which we use the symbol ʊ), then ends with a mid-central vowel (schwa, ə). We use the symbols aʊə to represent the way we pronounce 'hour', but this is not always an accurate representation of the pronunciation.

The triphthongs can be looked on as being composed of the five closing diphthongs described in the last section, with ə added on the end. Thus we get:

eɪ + ə = eɪə	əʊ + ə = əʊə
aɪ + ə = aɪə	aʊ + ə = aʊə
ɔɪ + ə = ɔɪə	

The principal cause of difficulty for the foreign learner is that in present-day English the extent of the vowel movement is very small, except in very careful pronunciation. Because of this, the middle of the three vowel qualities of the triphthong (that is, the ɪ or ʊ part) can hardly be heard and the resulting sound is difficult to distinguish from some of the diphthongs and long vowels.

We will not go through a detailed description of each triphthong. This is partly because there is so much variation in the amount of vowel movement according to how slow and careful the pronunciation is, and also because the "careful" pronunciation can be found by looking at the description of the corresponding diphthong and adding ə to the end. However, to help identify these triphthongs, some example words are given below:

eɪə 'layer', 'player'	əʊə 'lower', 'mower'
aɪə 'liar', 'fire'	aʊə 'power', 'hour'
ɔɪə 'loyal', 'royal'	

Notes on problems and further reading

Long vowels and diphthongs can be seen as a group of vowel sounds that are consistently longer *in a given context* than the short vowels

described in the previous chapter. Some writers (particularly Americans) give the label **tense** to long vowels and diphthongs and **lax** to the short vowels. This is done (and explained) in Jakobson and Halle (1964), Chomsky and Halle (1968) and many others.

As I mentioned in the notes on Chapter 1, the choice of symbols has tended to vary from book to book, and this is particularly noticeable in the case of length-marks for long vowels (this issue comes up again in Chapter 5, section 5.2); you could read Gimson (1989), section 4; two works which are opposed to length-marks are Brown (1990) and Windsor Lewis (1975b), but at the present time the transcription with length-marks seems to be an agreed standard.

The phonemes iː and uː are usually classed as long vowels; it is worth noting that most English speakers pronounce them with something of a diphthongal glide, so that a possible alternative transcription could be ɪi and ʊu respectively. This is not normally proposed, however.

It seems that triphthongs in RP are in a rather unstable state, resulting in the loss of some distinctions: in the case of some speakers, for example, it is not easy to distinguish between 'tyre' taɪə, 'tower' taʊə and 'tar' tɑː. BBC newsreaders often pronounce 'Ireland' as ɑːlənd, particularly in the context 'Northern Ireland'. Gimson (1964) has suggested that a change in the phonemic system of RP is in progress in this area.

Notes for teachers

I mention above that iː and uː are often pronounced as slightly diphthongal: although this glide is often noticeable, I have never found it helpful to try to teach foreign learners to pronounce iː and uː in this way. Foreign learners who wish to get close to the RP model should be careful not to pronounce the "r" that is usually found in the spelling corresponding to ɑː, ɔː and ɜː ('ar', 'or', 'er').

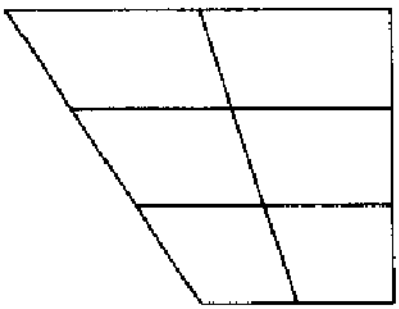
Most of the essential pronunciation features of the diphthongs are described in Chapter 3. Two additional points are worth making, I feel. The diphthong ʊə is included, but this is not used as much as the others – many English speakers use ɔː in words like 'moor', 'mourn', 'tour'. However, I feel that it is preferable for foreign learners to learn this diphthong to ensure the maximum distinctiveness of words in pairs like 'moor' and 'more', 'poor' and 'paw'. The other diphthong that requires comment is əʊ. English speakers seem to be especially sensitive to the quality of this diphthong, particularly to the first part. It often happens that foreign learners, having understood that the first part of the diphthong is not a back vowel, exaggerate this by using a vowel that is

too front, producing a diphthong like [eʊ]; unfortunately, this gives the impression of a "posh" accent – it sounds like someone trying to copy an upper-class pronunciation, since [eʊ] for eʊ is very noticeable in the speech of the Royal Family.

Written exercises

1. On the vowel diagram given below, indicate the glides for the diphthongs in the following words:

a)	fright	*c)*	clear
b)	home	*d)*	cow



2. Write the symbols for the long vowels in the following words:

a)	broad	*d)*	learn	*g)*	err
b)	ward	*e)*	cool	*h)*	seal
c)	calf	*f)*	team	*i)*	curl

3. Write the symbols for the diphthongs in the following words:

a)	tone	*d)*	way	*g)*	hair
b)	style	*e)*	beer	*h)*	why
c)	out	*f)*	coil	*i)*	they

4 Voicing and consonants

4.1 The larynx

We begin this chapter by studying the **larynx**. The larynx has several very important functions in speech, but before we can look at these functions we must examine its anatomy and physiology, that is, how it is constructed and how it works.

The larynx is in the neck; it has several parts, shown in Fig. 6. Its main structure is made of **cartilage**, a material that is similar to bone but less hard. If you press down on your nose, the hard part that you can feel is cartilage. The larynx's structure is made of two large cartilages. These are hollow and are attached to the top of the **trachea**; when we breathe, the air passes through the trachea and the larynx. The front of the larynx comes to a point and you can feel this point at the front of your neck – particularly if you are a man and/or slim. This point is commonly called the **Adam's Apple**.

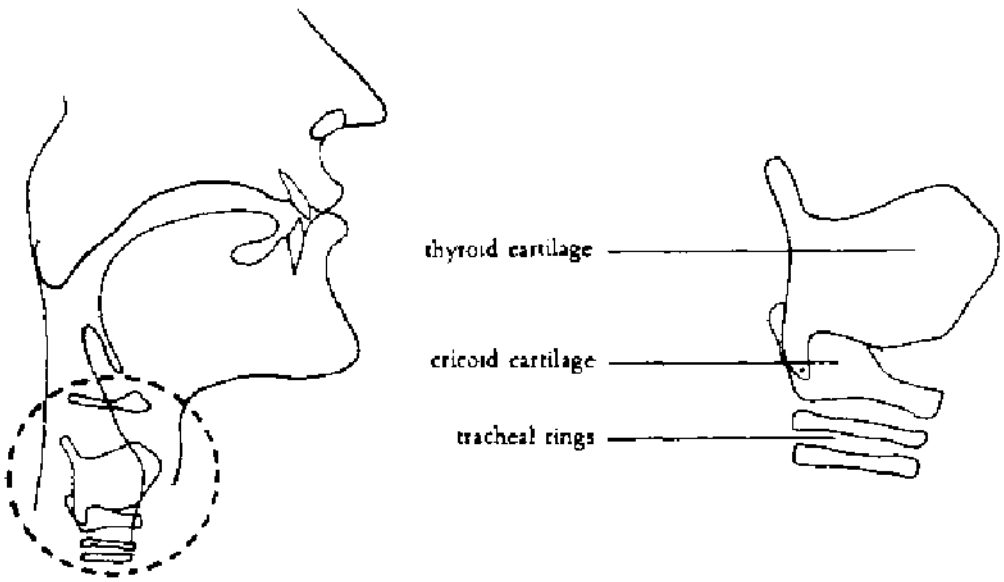


Fig. 6 The larynx

Inside the "box" made by these two cartilages are the **vocal folds**, two thick flaps of muscle rather like a pair of lips; an older name for

these is **vocal cords**. Looking down the throat is difficult to do, and requires special optical equipment, but Fig. 7 shows in diagram form the most important parts. At the front the vocal folds are joined together and fixed to the inside of the thyroid cartilage. At the back they are attached to a pair of small cartilages called the **arytenoid cartilages** so that if the arytenoid cartilages move, the vocal folds will move too.

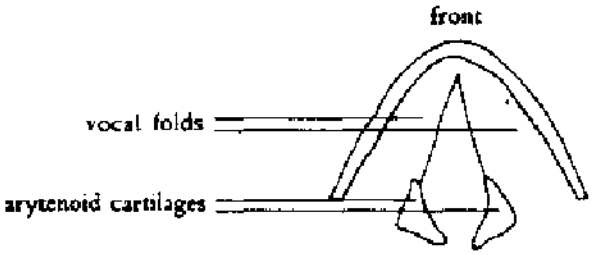


Fig. 7 The inside of the larynx seen from above

The arytenoid cartilages are attached to the top of the cricoid cartilage but they can move so as to move the vocal folds apart or together (Fig. 8). We use the word **glottis** to refer to the opening between the vocal folds. If the vocal folds are apart we say that the glottis is open; if they are pressed together we say that the glottis is closed. This seems quite

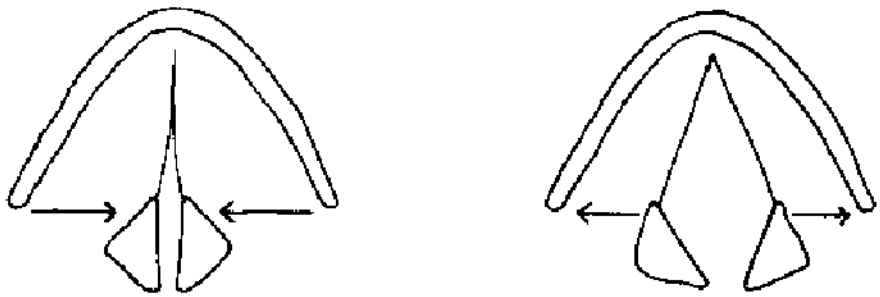


Fig. 8 Arytenoid cartilages causing closing and opening of the glottis

simple, but in fact we can produce a very complex range of changes in the vocal folds and their positions. These changes are often important in speech. Let us first look at four easily recognisable states of the vocal folds; it would be useful to practise moving your vocal folds into these different positions.

i) Wide apart.
The vocal folds are wide apart for normal breathing and usually during voiceless consonants like p, f, s (Fig. 9a). Your vocal folds are probably apart now.

ii) Narrow glottis.
If air is passed through the glottis when it is narrowed as in Fig. 9b,

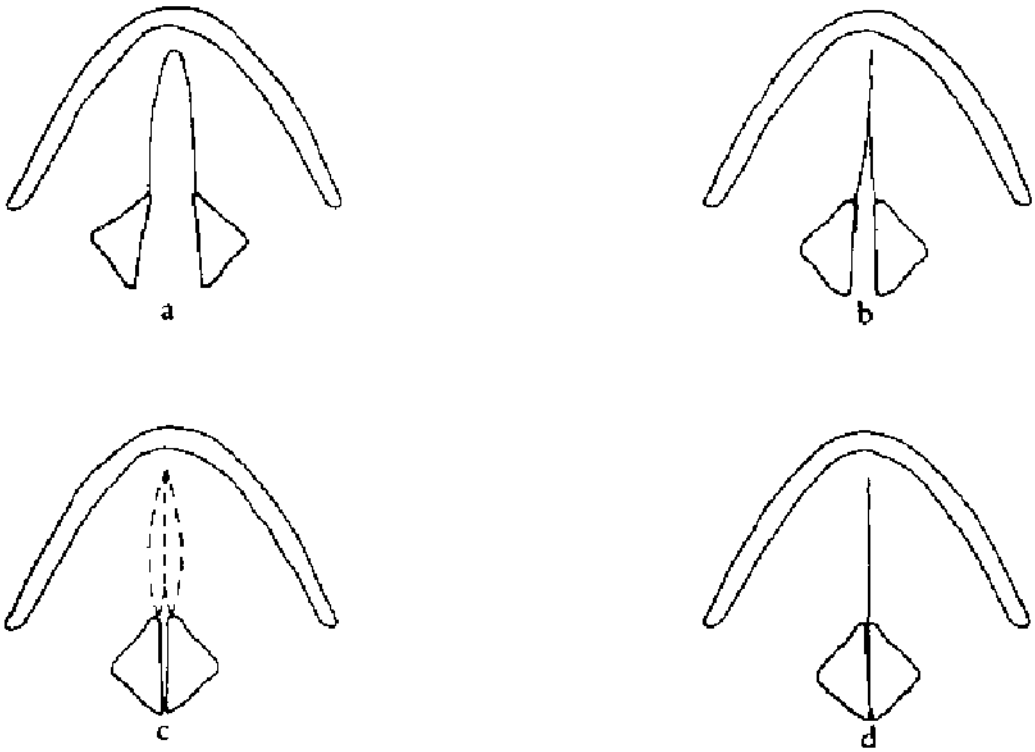


Fig. 9 Four different states of the glottis

the result is a fricative sound for which the symbol is **h**. The sound is not very different from a whispered vowel. It is called a **voiceless glottal fricative**. (Fricatives are discussed in more detail in Chapter 6.) Practise saying **ahahahahaha** – alternating between this state of the vocal folds and that described in (iii) below.

iii) Position for vocal fold vibration.
When the edges of the vocal folds are touching each other, or nearly touching, air passing through the glottis will usually cause **vibration** (Fig. 9c). Air is pressed up from the lungs and this air pushes the vocal folds apart so that a little air escapes. As the air flows quickly past the edges of the vocal folds, the folds are brought together again. This opening and closing happens very rapidly and is repeated regularly, averaging roughly between two and three hundred times per second in a woman's voice and about half that rate in adult men's.

iv) Vocal folds tightly closed.
The vocal folds can be firmly pressed together so that air cannot pass between them (Fig. 9d). When this happens in speech we call it a **glottal stop** or **glottal plosive**, for which we use the symbol *ʔ*. You can practise this by coughing gently; then practise the sequence **aʔ aʔaʔaʔaʔa**.

4.2 Respiration and voicing

Section 4.1 referred several times to air passing between the vocal folds. The normal way for this air flow to be produced is for some of the air in the lungs to be pushed out; when air is made to move out of the lungs we say that there is an **egressive pulmonic airstream**. All speech sounds are made with some movement of air, and the egressive pulmonic is by far the most commonly found in the languages of the world. There are other ways of making air move in the vocal tract, but they are not usually relevant in the study of English pronunciation, so we will not discuss them here.

How is air moved into and out of the lungs? It is important to know something about this, since it will make it easier to understand many aspects of speech, particularly the nature of stress and intonation. The lungs are like sponges that can fill with air, and they are contained within the **rib cage** (Fig. 10). If the rib cage is lifted upwards and outwards there is more space in the chest for the lungs and they expand, with the result that they take in more air. If we allow the rib cage to return to its rest position quite slowly, some of the air is expelled and can be used for producing speech sounds. If we wish to make the egressive pulmonic airstream continue without breathing in again (for example when saying a long sentence and not wanting to be interrupted) we can make the rib cage press down on the lungs so that more air is expelled.

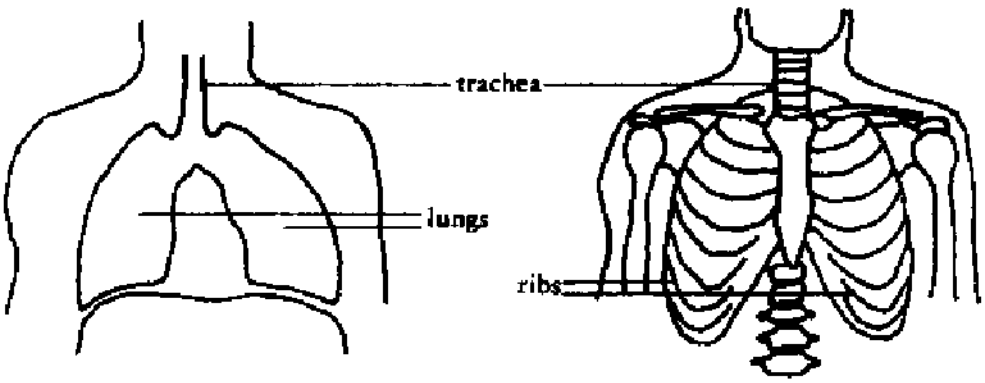


Fig. 10 The lungs and the rib cage

In talking about making air flow into and out of the lungs, the process has been described as though the air was free to pass with no obstruction. But as we saw in Chapter 2, to make speech sounds we must obstruct the air flow in some way – breathing by itself makes very little sound. We obstruct the airflow by making one or more obstructions or **strictures** in the vocal tract, and one place where we can make a stricture is in the larynx, by bringing the vocal folds close to

each other as described in the previous section. Remember that there will be no vocal fold vibration unless the vocal folds are in the correct position and the air below the vocal folds is under enough pressure to be forced through the glottis.

If the vocal folds vibrate we will hear the sound that we call **voicing** or **phonation**. There are many different sorts of voicing that we can produce – think of the differences in the quality of your voice between singing, shouting and speaking quietly, or think of the different voices you might use reading a story to young children in which you have to read out what is said by characters such as giants, fairies, mice or ducks; many of the differences are made with the larynx. We can make changes in the vocal folds themselves – they can, for example, be made longer or shorter, more tense or more relaxed or be more or less strongly pressed together. The pressure of the air below the vocal folds (the **subglottal pressure**) can also be varied. Three main differences are found:

i) Variations in **intensity** – we produce voicing with high intensity for shouting, for example, and with low intensity for speaking quietly.
ii) Variations in **frequency** – if the vocal folds vibrate rapidly, the voicing is at high frequency; if there are fewer vibrations per second the frequency is lower.
iii) Variations in **quality** – we can produce different-sounding voice qualities, such as those we might call harsh, breathy, murmured or creaky.

We will consider the ways in which we make use of these variables in later chapters.

4.3 Plosives

A **plosive** is a consonant articulation with the following characteristics:

- One articulator is moved against another, or two articulators are moved against each other, so as to form a stricture that allows no air to escape from the vocal tract. The stricture is, then, total.
- After this stricture has been formed and air has been compressed behind it, it is **released**, that is, air is allowed to escape.
- If the air behind the stricture is still under pressure when the plosive is released, it is probable that the escape of air will produce noise loud enough to be heard. This noise is called **plosion**.
- There may be voicing during part or all of the plosive articulation.

To give a complete description of a plosive consonant we must describe what happens at each of the following four phases in its production:

i) The first phase is when the articulator or articulators move to form the stricture for the plosive. We call this the **closure phase**.
ii) The second phase is when the compressed air is stopped from escaping. We call this the **hold phase**.
iii) The third phase is when the articulators used to form the stricture are moved so as to allow air to escape. This is the **release phase**.
iv) The fourth phase is what happens immediately after (iii), so we will call it the **post-release phase**.

4.4 English plosives

English has six plosive consonants, p, t, k, b, d, g. The glottal plosive ʔ occurs frequently but it is of less importance, since it is usually just an alternative pronunciation of p, t or k in certain contexts.

The plosives have different places of articulation. p and b are bilabial; the lips are pressed together (Fig. 11). t and d are alveolar; the tongue blade is pressed against the alveolar ridge (Fig. 12). Normally

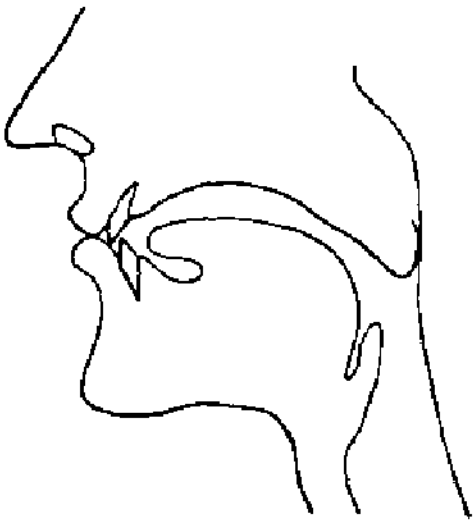


Fig. 11 Bilabial articulation

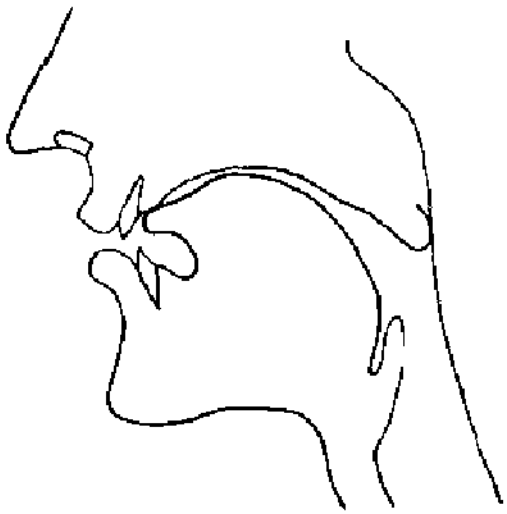


Fig. 12 Alveolar articulation

the tongue does not touch the front teeth as it does in the dental plosives found in many languages. k and g are velar; the back of the tongue is pressed against the area where the hard palate ends and the soft palate begins (Fig. 13).

p, t and k are always voiceless. b, d and g are sometimes fully voiced, sometimes partly voiced and sometimes voiceless; we will consider what they should be called in 4.5 below.

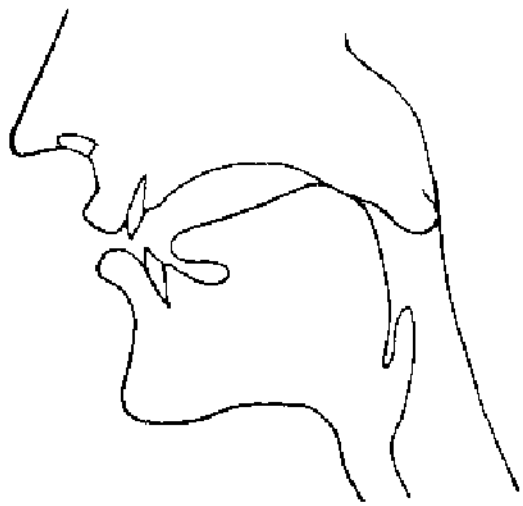


Fig. 13 Velar articulation

All six plosives can occur at the beginning of a word (**initial position**), between other sounds (**medial position**) and at the end of a word (**final position**). To begin with we will look at plosives preceding vowels (CV, where C stands for a consonant and V stands for a vowel), between vowels (VCV) and following vowels (VC). We will look at more complex environments in later chapters.

TU 4, Ex 1

i) Initial position (CV)

The closure phase for p, t, k and b, d, g takes place silently. During the hold phase there is no voicing in p, t, k; in b, d, g there is normally very little voicing – it begins only just before the release. If the speaker is pronouncing an initial b, d or g very slowly and carefully there may be voicing during the entire hold phase (the plosive is then fully voiced), while in rapid speech there may be no voicing at all.

The release of p, t, k is followed by audible plosion, that is, a burst of noise. There is then, in the post-release phase, a period during which air escapes through the vocal folds, making a sound like h. This is called **aspiration**. Then the vocal folds come together and voicing begins. The release of b, d, g is followed by weak plosion, and this happens at about the same time as, or shortly after, the beginning of voicing. The most noticeable and important difference, then, between initial p, t, k and b, d, g is the aspiration of the voiceless plosives p, t, k. The different phases of the plosive all happen very rapidly, of course, but the ear distinguishes clearly between p, t, k and b, d, g. If English speakers hear a fully voiced initial plosive they will hear it as one of b, d, g but will notice that it does not sound quite natural. If they hear a voiceless unaspirated plosive they will also hear that as one of b, d, g, because it is

aspiration, not voicing which distinguishes initial p, t, k from b, d, g. Only when they hear a voiceless aspirated plosive will they hear it as one of p, t, k; experiments have shown that we perceive aspiration when there is a delay between the sound of plosion and the beginning (or **onset**) of voicing.

In initial position b, d, g cannot be preceded by any consonant, but p, t, k may be preceded by s. When one of p, t, k is preceded by s it is unaspirated. From what was said above it should be clear that the unaspirated p, t, k of the initial combinations sp, st, sk have the sound quality that makes English speakers perceive a plosive as one of b, d, g; and if a tape recording of a word beginning with one of sp, st, sk is heard with the s removed, an initial b, d or g *is* heard by English speakers.

ii) Medial position (VCV)

The pronunciation of p, t, k and b, d, g in medial position depends to some extent on whether the syllables preceding and following the plosive are stressed. In general we can say that a medial plosive may have the characteristics either of final or of initial plosives.

TU 4, 2 & 3

iii) Final position (VC)

Final b, d, g normally have little voicing; if there is voicing, it is at the beginning of the hold phase. p, t, k are, of course, voiceless. The plosion following the release of p, t, k and b, d, g is very weak and often not audible. The difference between p, t, k and b, d, g is primarily the fact that vowels preceding p, t, k are much shorter. The shortening effect of p, t, k is most noticeable when the vowel is one of the long vowels or diphthongs.

4.5 Fortis and lenis

Are b, d, g voiced plosives? The description of them makes it clear that it is not very accurate to call them "voiced"; in initial and final position they are scarcely voiced at all, and any voicing they may have seems to have no perceptual importance. Some phoneticians say that p, t, k are produced with more force than b, d, g, and that it would therefore be better to give the two sets of plosives (and some other consonants) names that indicate that fact; so the voiceless plosives p, t, k are sometimes called **fortis** (meaning 'strong') and b, d, g are then called **lenis** (meaning 'weak'). It is probably true that p, t, k are produced with more force (though nobody has really proved it – **force of articulation** is very difficult to define and measure). On the other hand, the terms fortis and lenis are difficult to remember. Despite this, we shall follow the practice of many books and use these terms.

The plosive phonemes of English can be presented in the form of a table as shown below:

	PLACE OF ARTICULATION		
	bilabial	alveolar	velar
FORTIS ("voiceless")	p	t	k
LENIS ("voiced")	b	d	g

Tables like this can be produced for all the different consonants. Each major type of consonant (such as plosives like p, t and k, fricatives like s and z and nasals like m and n) obstructs the airflow in a different way, and these are classed as different **manners of articulation**.

Notes on problems and further reading

4.1, 4.2 If you need to know more about the larynx and about respiration in relation to speech, see Borden and Harris (1984), pp. 58–9; Ladefoged (1967), pp. 1–20; Hardcastle (1976), chapters 3 and 4.

4.3 The outline of the stages in the production of plosives is based on Arnold (1967). In classifying consonants it is possible to go to a very high level of complexity if one wishes to account for all the possibilities. See for example Pike (1945), pp. 85–156 and Catford (1968).

4.4 It has been pointed out that the transcription sb, sd, sg could be used quite appropriately instead of sp, st, sk; see Davidsen-Nielsen (1969).

The vowel length difference before final voiceless consonants is apparently found in many (possibly all) languages, but in English this difference, which is very slight in most languages, has become exaggerated so that it has become the most important factor in distinguishing between final p, t, k and b, d, g (see Chen, 1970). Some phonetics books wrongly state that b, d, g lengthen preceding vowels, rather than that p, t, k shorten them. The conclusive evidence on this point is that if we take the pair 'right' raɪt and 'ride' raɪd, and then compare 'rye' raɪ, the length of the aɪ diphthong when no consonant follows is practically the same as in 'ride'; the aɪ in 'right' is much shorter than the aɪ in 'ride' and 'rye'.

4.5 The "fortis/lenis" distinction is a very complicated question. It is necessary to consider how one could measure "force of articulation"; many different laboratory techniques have been tried to see if the articulators are moved more energetically for fortis consonants, but all have proved inconclusive; the only difference that seems reasonably reliable is that fortis consonants have higher air pressure in the vocal

tract, but Lisker (1970) has argued convincingly that this is not conclusive evidence for "force of articulation". It is possible to ask phonetically untrained speakers whether they feel more energy is used in pronouncing p, t, k than in b, d, g, but (as pointed out in Ashby, 1979) there are many difficulties in doing this. A useful review of the "force of articulation" question is in Catford (1977), pp. 199–208. I feel the best conclusion is that any term one uses to deal with this distinction (whether "fortis"/"lenis" or "voiceless"/"voiced") is to be looked on as a **cover term** (similar to the notion of a "cover feature' in Ladefoged, 1965) – a term which has no simple physical meaning but which may stand for a large and complex set of phonetic characteristics.

Written exercises

1. Try to write brief descriptions of the actions of the articulators and the respiratory system in the words given below. Here as an example is a description of the pronunciation of the word 'be' bi:

   "Starting from the position for normal breathing, the lips are closed and the lungs are compressed to create air pressure in the vocal tract. The tongue moves to the position for a close front vowel, with the front of the tongue raised close to the palate. The vocal folds are brought close together and voicing begins; the lips then open, releasing the compressed air. Voicing continues for the duration of an iː vowel. Then the lung pressure is lowered, voicing ceases and the articulators return to the normal breathing position."

   Words to describe: (a) goat (b) ape

2. Indicate with a ˘ mark which of the following vowels and diphthongs are shortened as a result of a following fortis consonant:

a) tea tiː	*d*) dark dɑːk	*g*) egg eg
b) meat miːt	*e*) card kɑːd	*h*) oak əʊk
c) toad təʊd	*f*) lip lɪp	*i*) kite kaɪt

3. Transcribe the following words:

a) bake	*d*) bought	*g*) bored
b) goat	*e*) tick	*h*) guard
c) doubt	*f*) bough	*i*) peak

5 The phoneme

5.1 The phoneme

In Chapters 2–4 we have been studying some of the sounds of English. It is now necessary to consider some fundamental theoretical questions. What do we *mean* when we use the word "sound"? How do we establish what are the sounds of English, and how do we decide how many there are of them?

When we speak, we produce a continuous stream of sounds. In studying speech we divide this stream into small pieces that we call **segments**. The word 'man' is pronounced with a first segment m, a second segment æ and a third segment n. It is not always easy to decide on the number of segments. To give a simple example, in the word 'mine' the first segment is m and the last is n, as in the word 'man' discussed above. But should we regard the aɪ in the middle as one segment or two? We will return to this question.

As well as the question of how we divide speech up into segments, there is the question of how many different sounds (or segment types) there are in English. Chapters 2 and 3 introduced the set of vowels found in English. Each of these can be pronounced in many slightly different ways, so that the total range of sounds actually produced by speakers is practically infinite. Yet we feel quite confident in saying that the number of English vowels is not more than twenty. Why is this? The answer is that if we put one of those twenty in the place of one of the others, we can change the meaning of a word. For example, if we substitute æ for e in the word 'bed' we get a different word: 'bad'. But in the case of two slightly different ways of pronouncing what we regard as "the same sound", we usually find that, if we substitute one for the other, a change in the meaning of a word does not result. For example, if we substitute a more open vowel (cardinal vowel no. 4 [a]) for the æ in the word 'bad', the word is still heard as 'bad'.

The principles involved here may be easier to understand if we look at a similar situation related to the letters of the alphabet that we use in writing English. The letter of the alphabet in writing is a unit which corresponds fairly well to the unit of speech we have been talking about earlier in this chapter – the segment. In the alphabet we have five letters

that are called vowels: 'a', 'e', 'i', 'o', 'u'. If we choose the right context we can show how substituting one letter for another will change meaning. Thus with a letter 'p' before and a letter 't' after the vowel letter, we get the five words spelt 'pat', 'pet', 'pit', 'pot', 'put', each of which has a different meaning. We can do the same with sounds. If we look at the short vowels ɪ, e, æ, ʌ, ɒ, ʊ, for example, we can see how substituting one for another in between the plosives p and t gives us six different words as follows (given in spelling on the left):

'pit' pɪt
'pet' pet
'pat' pæt
'putt' pʌt*
'pot' pɒt
'put' pʊt

Let us return to the example of letters of the alphabet. If people who knew nothing about the alphabet saw these four characters:

A a ɑ u

they would not know that to users of the alphabet three of these characters all represent the same letter, while the fourth is a different letter. Of course, they would quickly discover, through noticing differences in meaning, that u is a different letter from the first three. What would our illiterate observers discover about these three? They would probably eventually come to the conclusion about the written characters a and ɑ that the former occurs most often in printed and typed writing while the latter is more common in handwriting, but that if you substitute one for the other it will not cause a difference in meaning. If our observers then examined a lot of typed and printed material they would eventually establish that a word that began with a when it occurred in the middle of a sentence would begin with A, and *never* with a, at the beginning of a sentence. They would also find that names could begin with A but *never* with a; they would conclude that A and a were different ways of writing the same letter and that a context in which one of them *could* occur was always a context in which the other could not. As will be explained below, we find similar situations in speech.

If you have not thought about such things before, you may find some difficulty in understanding the ideas that you have just read about. The principal difficulty lies in the fact that what is being talked about in our example of letters is at the same time something *abstract* (the alphabet, which you cannot see or touch) and something *real and concrete* (marks on paper). The alphabet is something that its users *know*; they also

* A rather uncommon word, except to those who play golf.

know that it has twenty-six letters. But when the alphabet is used to write with, these letters appear on the page in a practically infinite number of different shapes and sizes.

Now we will leave the discussion of letters and the alphabet; these have only been introduced in this chapter in order to help explain some important general principles. Let us now go back to the sounds of speech and see how these principles can be explained. As was said earlier in this chapter, we can divide speech up into segments, and we can find great variety in the way these segments are made. But just as there is an abstract alphabet as the basis of our writing, so there is an abstract set of units as the basis of our speech. These units are called **phonemes**, and the complete set of these units is called the **phonemic system** of the language. The phonemes themselves are abstract, but there are many slightly different ways in which we make the sounds that represent these phonemes, just as there are many ways in which we may make a mark on a piece of paper to represent a particular (abstract) letter of the alphabet.

We find cases where it makes little difference which of two possible ways we choose to pronounce a sound. For example, the **b** at the beginning of a word such as 'bad' will usually be pronounced with practically no voicing. Sometimes, though, a speaker may produce the **b** with full voicing, perhaps in speaking very emphatically. If this is done, the sound is still identified as the phoneme **b**, even though we can hear that it is different in some way. We have in this example two different ways of making **b** – two different **realisations** of the phoneme. One can be substituted for the other without changing the meaning; the two realisations are said to be in **free variation.**

We also find cases in speech similar to the writing example of capital A and little a (where one can only occur where the other cannot). For example, we find that the realisation of **t** in the word 'tea' is aspirated (as are all voiceless plosives when they occur before stressed vowels at the beginning of syllables). In the word 'eat', the realisation of **t** is unaspirated (as are all voiceless plosives when they occur at the end of a syllable and are not followed by a vowel). The aspirated and unaspirated realisations are both recognised as **t** by English speakers despite their differences. But the aspirated realisation will never be found in the place where the unaspirated realisation is appropriate, and vice versa. When we find this strict separation of places where particular realisations can occur, we say that the realisations are in **complementary distribution.** One more technical term needs to be introduced: when we talk about different realisations of phonemes, we sometimes call these realisations **allophones**. In the last example, we were studying the aspirated and unaspirated allophones of the phoneme **t**. Usually we do not indicate different allophones when we write symbols to represent sounds.

5.2 Symbols and transcription

You have now seen a number of symbols of several different sorts. Basically the symbols are for one of two purposes: either they are symbols for phonemes (**phonemic** or **phoneme symbols**) or they are **phonetic symbols** (which is what the symbols were first introduced as).

We will look first at phonemic symbols. The most important point to remember is the rather obvious-seeming fact that the number of phonemic symbols must be exactly the same as the number of phonemes we decide exist in the language. It is rather like writing with a typewriter – there is a fixed number of keys that you can press. However, some of our phoneme symbols consist of two characters; for example, we usually treat tʃ (as in 'chip' **tʃɪp**) as one phoneme, so tʃ is a phoneme *symbol* consisting of two *characters* (t and ʃ).

One of the traditional exercises in pronunciation teaching by phonetic methods is that of **phonemic transcription**, where every speech sound must be identified as one of the phonemes and written with the appropriate symbol. (There are two different kinds of transcription exercise: in one, **transcription from dictation**, the student must listen to a person – or a tape-recording – and write down what they hear; in the other, **transcription from a written text**, the student is given a passage of dialogue written in orthography and must use phonemic symbols to represent how he or she thinks it would be pronounced by a speaker of RP). In a phonemic transcription, then, only the phonemic symbols may be used; this has the advantage that it is comparatively quick and easy to learn to use it. The disadvantage is that as you continue to learn more about phonetics you become able to hear a lot of sound differences that you were not aware of before, and students at this stage find it frustrating not to be able to write down more detailed information.

The phonemic system described for RP contains forty-four phonemes. We can display the complete set of these phonemes by the usual classificatory methods used by most phoneticians; the vowels and diphthongs can be located in the vowel quadrilateral, as was done in Chapters 2 and 3, and the consonants can be placed in a chart or table according to place of articulation, manner of articulation and voicing. Obviously, human beings can make many more sounds than these, and phoneticians use a much larger set of symbols when they are trying to represent sounds more accurately. The best-known set of symbols is that of the International Phonetic Association's alphabet (the letters IPA are used to refer to the Association and also to its alphabet). The vowel symbols of the cardinal vowel system (plus a few others) are usually included on the chart of this alphabet, which is reproduced here (Table 1). It is important to note that in addition to the many symbols

Table 1. *The International Phonetic Alphabet (revised to 1989)*

CONSONANTS

	Bilabial	Labiodental	Dental	Alveolar	Postalveolar	Retroflex	Palatal	Velar	Uvular	Pharyngeal	Glottal
Plosive	p b			t d		ʈ ɖ	c ɟ	k g	q ɢ		ʔ
Nasal	m	ɱ		n		ɳ	ɲ	ŋ	ɴ		
Trill	ʙ			r					ʀ		
Tap or Flap				ɾ		ɽ					
Fricative	ɸ β	f v	θ ð	s z	ʃ ʒ	ʂ ʐ	ç ʝ	x ɣ	χ ʁ	ħ ʕ	h ɦ
Lateral fricative				ɬ ɮ							
Approximant		ʋ		ɹ		ɻ	j	ɰ			
Lateral approximant				l		ɭ	ʎ	ʟ			
Ejective stop	p'			t'		ʈ'	c'	k'	q'		
Implosive	ɓ ɓ			ɗ ɗ			ɟ ʃ	ɠ ɠ	ʛ ʛ		

Where symbols appear in pairs, the one to the right represents a voiced consonant. Shaded areas denote articulations judged impossible

VOWELS

	Front		Central		Back	
Close	i	y	ɨ	ʉ	ɯ	u
	ɪ	ʏ			ʊ	
Close-mid	e	ø			ɤ	o
			ə	ɵ		
Open-mid	ɛ	œ			ʌ	ɔ
	æ		ɐ			
Open	a	ɶ			ɑ	ɒ

Where symbols appear in pairs, the one to the right represents a rounded vowel.

OTHER SYMBOLS

- ʍ Voiceless labial-velar fricative
- w Voiced labial-velar approximant
- ɥ Voiced labial-palatal approximant
- ʜ Voiceless epiglottal fricative
- ʢ Voiced epiglottal fricative
- ʔ Epiglottal plosive
- ɕ ʑ Alveolo-palatal fricatives
- ʒ Additional mid central vowel

- ʘ Bilabial click
- ǀ Dental click
- ǃ (Postalveolar click
- ǂ Palatoalveolar click
- ǁ Alveolar lateral click
- ʗ Alveolar lateral flap
- ʃ͡ɧ Simultaneous ʃ and x

Affricates and double articulations can be represented by two symbols joined by a tie bar if necessary. k͡p t͡s

DIACRITICS

̥	Voiceless	n̥ d̥	̹	More rounded	ɔ̹	ʷ	Labialized	tʷ dʷ	̃	Nasalized	ẽ
̬	Voiced	s̬ t̬	̺	Less rounded	ɔ̺	ʲ	Palatalized	tʲ dʲ	ⁿ	Nasal release	dⁿ
ʰ	Aspirated	tʰ dʰ	̟	Advanced	u̟	ˠ	Velarized	tˠ dˠ	ˡ	Lateral release	dˡ
̤	Breathy voiced	b̤ a̤	̠	Retracted	i̠	ˤ	Pharyngealized	tˤ dˤ	̚	No audible release	d̚
̰	Creaky voiced	b̰ a̰	̈	Centralized	ë	̴	Velarized or pharyngealized	ɫ			
̪	Linguolabial	t̪ d̪	̽	Mid-centralized	e̽	̝	Raised	e̝	(ɹ̝	= voiced alveolar fricative)	
̪	Dental	t̪ d̪	̩	Syllabic	n̩	̞	Lowered	e̞	(β̞	= voiced bilabial approximant)	
̺	Apical	t̺ d̺	̯	Non-syllabic	e̯	̘	Advanced Tongue Root	e̘			
̻	Laminal	t̻ d̻	˞	Rhoticity	ə˞	̙	Retracted Tongue Root	e̙			

SUPRASEGMENTALS

ˈ	Primary stress	ˌfounəˈtɪʃən
ˌ	Secondary stress	
ː	Long	eː
ˑ	Half-long	eˑ
̆	Extra-short	ĕ
.	Syllable break	ɹi.ækt
|	Minor (foot) group	
‖	Major (intonation) group	
‿	Linking (absence of a break)	
↗	Global rise	
↘	Global fall	

TONES & WORD ACCENTS

LEVEL		CONTOUR	
ȅ or ˥	Extra high	ě or ˩˥	Rising
é ˧˥	High	ê ˥˩	Falling
ē ˧	Mid	e᪲ ˧˥˧	High rising
è ˧˩	Low	e᪳ ˩˩	Low rising
ȅ ˩	Extra low	ȅ ˩˧˩	Rising-falling etc.

↓ Downstep

↑ Upstep

on the chart there are a lot of **diacritics**, marks which modify the symbol in some way; for example, the symbol for cardinal vowel no. 4 [ɑ] may be modified by putting two dots above it. This **centralisation** diacritic then gives us the symbol [ɑ̈] for a vowel which is nearer to central than [ɑ]. It would not be possible in this course to teach you to use all these symbols and diacritics, but someone who did know them all could write a transcription that was much more accurate in phonetic detail, and contained much more information, than a phonemic transcription. Such a transcription would be called a **phonetic transcription**; a phonetic transcription containing a lot of information about the exact quality of the sounds would be called a **narrow** phonetic transcription, while one which only included a little more information than a phonemic transcription would be called a **broad** phonetic transcription. In this course, phonetic symbols are used occasionally when it is necessary to give an accurate label to an allophone of some English phoneme, but we do not do any phonetic transcription of continuous speech. That is a rather specialised exercise. When symbols are used to represent precise phonetic values, not just to represent phonemes, we enclose them in square brackets [ ], as we have done already with cardinal vowels. In many phonetics books, phoneme symbols are enclosed within slant brackets / /, but this seems unnecessary for our purposes.

It should now be clear that there is a difference between phonemic symbols and phonetic symbols. Since the phonemic symbols do not have to indicate precise phonetic quality, it is possible to choose among several possible symbols to represent a particular phoneme; this has had the unfortunate result that different books on RP have used different symbols, causing quite a lot of confusion to students. In this course we are using the symbols now most frequently used in English publishing. It would be too long a task to examine other writers' symbols in detail, but it is worth considering some of the reasons for the differences. One factor is the complication and expense of using special symbols which create problems in typing and printing; it could for example be argued that a is a symbol that is found in practically all type-faces whereas æ is unusual, and that the a symbol should be used for the vowel in 'cat' instead of æ. Some writers have concentrated on producing a set of phoneme symbols that need the minimum number of special or non-standard symbols. Other writers have thought it important that the symbols should be as close as possible to the symbols that a phonetician would choose to give a precise indication of sound quality. To use the same example again, referring to the vowel in 'cat', it would be argued that if the vowel is noticeably closer than cardinal vowel no. 4 [ɑ], it is more suitable to use the symbol æ, which is usually used to represent a vowel between open-mid and open. There can be disagreements about the most important characteristics of a sound that

a symbol should indicate; one example is the vowels of the words 'bit' and 'beat'. Some writers have claimed that the most important difference between them is that the former is short and the latter long, and transcribed the former with i and the latter with iː (the difference being entirely in the length mark); other writers have said that the length (or **quantity**) difference is less important than the **quality** difference, and transcribe the vowel of 'bit' with the symbol ɪ and that of 'beat' with i. Yet another point of view is that quality and quantity are both important and should both be indicated; this point of view results in a transcription using ɪ for 'bit' and iː, a symbol different from ɪ both in shape of symbol (suggesting quality difference) and in length mark (indicating quantity difference), for 'beat'. This is the approach taken in this course.

5.3 Phonology

Chapters 2, 3 and 4 were mainly concerned with matters of **phonetics** – the comparatively straightforward business of describing the sounds that we use in speaking. When we talk about how phonemes function in language, and the relationships among the different phonemes – when, in other words, we study the *abstract* side of the sounds of language – we are studying a related but different subject that we call **phonology**. Only by studying both the phonetics and the phonology of English is it possible to acquire a full understanding of the use of sounds in English speech. Let us look briefly at some areas that come within the subject of phonology; all these areas of study will be met frequently in the rest of the course.

Study of the phonemic system

It is sometimes helpful to think of the phonemic system as similar to the set of cards used in a card game, or the set of pieces used in a game of chess. In chess, for example, the exact shape and colour of the pieces are not important to the game as long as they can be reliably distinguished. But the number of pieces, the moves they can make and their relationship to all the other pieces are very important; we would say that if any of these were to be changed, the game would no longer be what we call chess. Similarly, playing-cards can be printed in many different styles and sizes; but while changing these things does not affect the game played with them, if we were to remove one card from the pack or add one card to it before the start of a game, nobody would

accept that we were playing the game correctly. In a similar way, we have a more or less fixed set of "pieces" (phonemes) with which to play the game of speaking English. There may be many slightly different realisations of the various phonemes, but the most important thing for communication is that we should be able to make use of the full set of phonemes.

Phoneme sequences and syllable structure

In every language we find that there are restrictions on the sequences of phonemes that are used. For example, no English word begins with the consonant sequence **zbf** and no words end with the sequence æh. In phonology we must try to analyse what the restrictions and regularities are in a particular language, and it is usually found helpful to do this by studying the **syllables** of the language.

Suprasegmental phonology

Many significant sound contrasts are not the result of differences between phonemes. For example, **stress** is important: when the word 'import' is pronounced with the first syllable sounding stronger than the second, English speakers hear it as a noun, whereas when the second syllable is stronger the word is heard as a verb. **Intonation** is also important: if the word 'right' is said with the pitch of the voice rising, it is likely to be heard as a question or as an invitation to a speaker to continue, while falling pitch is more likely to be heard as confirmation or agreement. These examples show sound contrasts that extend over several segments (phonemes), and such contrasts are called **suprasegmental**. We will look at many other aspects of suprasegmental phonology later in the course.

Notes on problems and further reading

This chapter is theoretical rather than practical. There is no shortage of material to read on the subject of the phoneme, but much of it is rather difficult and assumes a lot of background knowledge. For basic reading I would suggest Katamba (1989), chapter 2; Hawkins (1984), chapter 1, or Gimson (1989), chapter 5, section 3. There are many classic works: Jones (1976, first published in 1950) is widely regarded as such, though it is often criticised nowadays for being superficial or even naive. Another classic is Pike's *Phonemics* (1947), subtitled "A Technique for

Reducing Languages to Writing": this is essentially a practical handbook for people who need to analyse the phonemes of unknown languages, and contains many examples and exercises. A third classic work is Trubetzkoy (1939, English translation by Baltaxe, 1969), while Bloomfield (1933) is also a historic work – see especially chapter 5. A modern book for more advanced reading is Lass (1984).

The subject of symbols is a large one: there is a very good survey in Abercrombie (1967), chapter 7. For a very brief outline of the field, see Roach (1991). The International Phonetic Association has tried as far as possible to keep to Roman-style symbols, though it is inevitable that these symbols have to be supplemented with diacritics. In 1989 the IPA held a special conference in Kiel, Germany, and papers were produced both before the meeting (to raise issues for discussion) and after it (to present the decisions made). Most of the former appeared in the *Journal of the International Phonetic Association*, vol. 19 no. 2 (1989); see also Roach (1987). Those interested in the history of the IPA's way of classifying sounds should read Albright (1958). Some phoneticians working at the end of the last century tried to develop non-alphabetic sets of symbols whose shape would indicate all essential phonetic characteristics; if you are interested in this you could, in addition to reading the chapter of Abercrombie referred to above, read a little of Sweet's writing on the subject in Henderson (1971), section 4.

It is obvious that one must choose between, on the one hand, symbols that are very informative but slow to write and, on the other, symbols that are not very precise but are quick and convenient to use. Pike (1943) presents at the end of his book an "analphabetic notation" designed to permit the coding of sounds with great precision on the basis of their articulation; an indication of the complexity of the system is the fact that the full specification of the vowel [o] requires eighty-eight characters. On the opposite side, many American writers have avoided the IPA symbols as too complex and have tried to use as far as possible symbols and diacritics which are already in existence for various special alphabetic requirements of European languages and which are available on typewriters. For example where the IPA has ʃ and ʒ, symbols not usually found outside phonetics, Americans use š and ž, the mark above the symbols being widely used for those Slavonic languages that do not use the Cyrillic alphabet. This American approach has many practical advantages, but is not capable of as much detail as the IPA set; part 1 of Trager and Smith (1951) illustrates the problems that are encountered when trying to symbolise a lot of phonetic detail with these conventions. In recent years there has been an important change due to the introduction of computer printers: dot-matrix and laser printers allow users to design their own symbols and print them alongside normal alphabetic characters. For recommendations on computer printing of phonetic symbols, see Wells (1987).

Note for teachers

It should be made clear to students that the treatment of the phoneme in this chapter is only an introduction. It is difficult to go into detailed examples since very few symbols have been introduced at this stage, so further consideration of phonological issues is given in later chapters and it would not be advisable to go beyond the fundamental points at this stage.

Written exercises

The words in the following list should be transcribed first *phonemically*, then (in square brackets) *phonetically*. In your phonetic transcription you can use the following diacritics:

b, d, g pronounced without voicing are transcribed [ḇ, ḍ, ḡ]

p, t, k pronounced with aspiration are transcribed [p^h, t^h, k^h]

iː, aː, oː, ɜː, uː when shortened by a following fortis consonant should be trancribed iˑ, aˑ, oˑ, ɜˑ, uˑ

ɪ, e, æ, ʌ, ɒ, ʊ, ə when shortened by a following fortis consonant should be transcribed ī, ȅ, æ̆, ʌ̆, ɒ̆, ʊ̆, ə̆. Use the same mark for diphthongs.

Example spelling: 'peat' phonemic: piːt phonetic: [p^hiˑt]

Words for transcription

a) speed	*c)* book	*e)* car	*g)* appeared	*i)* stalk
b) partake	*d)* goat	*f)* bad	*h)* toast	

6 Fricatives and affricates

6.1 Production of fricatives and affricates

Fricatives are consonants with the characteristic that when they are produced, air escapes through a small passage and makes a hissing sound. All languages have fricatives, probably always including something like s. Fricatives are **continuant** consonants, which means that you can continue making them without interruption as long as you have enough air in your lungs. (Plosives, which were described in Chapter 4, are not continuants.) You can demonstrate the importance of the narrow passage for the air in the following ways:

i) Make a long, hissing s sound and gradually lower your tongue so that it is no longer close to the roof of the mouth. The hissing sound will stop as the air passage gets larger.
ii) Make a long f sound, and while you are producing this sound use your fingers to pull the lower lip away from the upper teeth. Notice how the hissing sound of the air escaping between teeth and lip suddenly stops.

Affricates are rather complex consonants. They begin as plosives and end as fricatives. A familiar example is the affricate heard at the beginning and end of the word 'church'. It begins with an articulation practically the same as the closure and hold phases of t, but instead of a rapid release with plosion and aspiration, as we would find in the word 'turn', the tongue moves to the position for the fricative ʃ that we find at the beginning of the word 'ship'. So the plosive is followed immediately by fricative noise. Since phonetically this affricate is composed of t and ʃ we represent it as tʃ, so that the word 'church' is transcribed as tʃɜːtʃ.

However, the definition of an affricate must be a little more restricted than what has been said so far. We would not class *all* sequences of plosive plus fricative as affricates; for example, we find in the middle of the word 'breakfast' the plosive k followed by the fricative f. English speakers would generally not accept that kf forms a consonantal unit in the way that tʃ seems to. It is usually said that the plosive and the following fricative must be made with the same articulators – to use a technical term, the plosive and fricative must be **homorganic**. k and f are not homorganic, but t and ʃ, both being made with the tongue blade

against the alveolar ridge, *are* homorganic. This still leaves the possibility of quite a large number of affricates, since for example t is homorganic not only with ʃ but also with s, so ts would also count as an affricate.

Although the affricates can be said to be composed of a plosive and a fricative, it is usual to regard them as being single, independent phonemes of English. In this way, t is one phoneme, ʃ is another and tʃ yet another. We would say that the pronunciation of the word 'church' tʃɜːtʃ is composed of three phonemes, tʃ, ɜː and tʃ. We will look at this question of "two sounds = one phoneme" from the theoretical point of view in a later chapter.

6.2 The fricatives of English

English has quite a complex system of fricative phonemes. They can be seen in the table below:

	PLACE OF ARTICULATION				
	labiodental	dental	alveolar	palato-alveolar	glottal
FORTIS ("voiceless")	f	θ	s	ʃ	h
LENIS ("voiced")	v	ð	z	ʒ	

With the exception of glottal, each place of articulation has a pair of phonemes, one fortis and one lenis. This is similar to what was seen with the plosives. The fortis fricatives are said to be articulated with greater force than the lenis, and their friction noise is louder. The lenis fricatives have very little or no voicing in initial and final positions, but may be voiced when they occur between voiced sounds. The fortis fricatives have the effect of shortening a preceding vowel, as do fortis plosives. Thus in a pair of words like 'ice' and 'eyes' (aɪs, aɪz), the aɪ diphthong in the first word is considerably shorter than in the second. Since there is only one fricative with glottal place of articulation, the fortis–lenis distinction does not apply in that case. It would be rather misleading to call it fortis or lenis (which is why there is a line on the chart above dividing h from the other fricatives).

TU 6, Exs 1–3

We will now look at the fricatives separately, according to their place of articulation.

f, v (example words: 'fan', 'van'; 'safer', 'saver'; 'half', 'halve')

These are labiodental, that is, the lower lip is in contact with the upper teeth as shown in Fig. 14a. The fricative noise is never very strong and is scarcely audible in the case of v.

θ, ð (example words: 'thumb', 'thus'; 'ether', 'father'; 'breath', 'breathe')

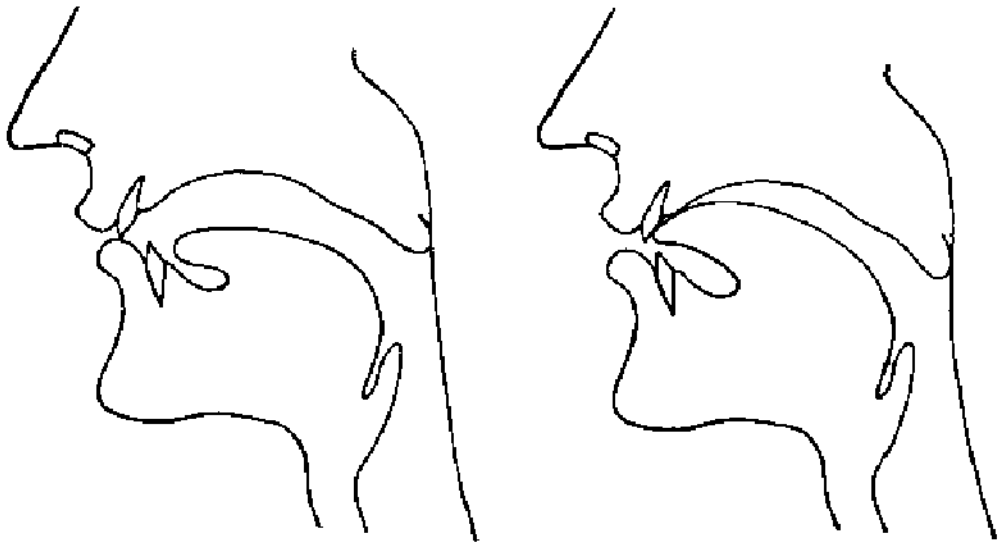


Fig. 14a Labiodental fricative b Dental fricative

The dental fricatives have sometimes been described as if the tongue was actually placed between the teeth, and it is common for teachers to make their students do this when they are trying to teach them to make this sound. In fact, however, the tongue is normally placed *inside* the teeth, as shown in Fig. 14b, with the tip touching the inside of the lower front teeth and the blade touching the inside of the upper teeth. The air escapes through the gaps between the tongue and the teeth. As with f and v, the fricative noise is weak.

s, z (example words: 'sip', 'zip'; 'facing', 'phasing'; 'rice', 'rise')
These are alveolar fricatives, with the same place of articulation as t and d. The air escapes through a narrow passage along the centre of the tongue, and the sound produced is comparatively intense. The tongue position is shown in Fig. 12 in Chapter 4.

ʃ, ʒ (example words: 'ship' (initial ʒ is very rare in English); 'Russia', 'measure'; 'Irish', 'garage')
These fricatives are called palato-alveolar, which can be taken to mean that their place of articulation is partly palatal, partly alveolar. The tongue is in contact with an area slightly further back than that for s, z (see Fig. 14c). If you make s, then ʃ, you should be able to feel your

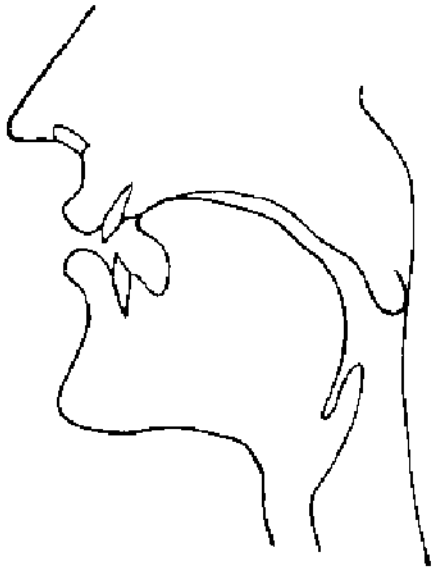


Fig. 14c Palato-alveolar fricative

tongue move backwards. The air escapes through a passage along the centre of the tongue, as in s and z, but the passage is a little wider. Most speakers of RP have rounded lips for ʃ and ʒ, and this is an important difference between these consonants and s and z.

ʃ is a common and widely-distributed phoneme, but ʒ is not. All the fricatives described so far (f, v, θ, ð, s, z) can be found in initial, medial and final positions, as shown in the example words. In the case of ʒ, however, the distribution is much more limited. Very few English words begin with ʒ (most of them have come into the language comparatively recently from French) and not many end with this consonant. Only medially, in words such as 'measure', 'usual' (meʒə, juːʒʊəl) is it found at all commonly.

h (example words: 'head', 'ahead', 'playhouse')
The place of articulation of this consonant is glottal. This means that the narrowing that produces the friction noise is between the vocal folds, as described in Chapter 4. If you breathe out silently, then produce h, you are moving your vocal folds from wide apart to close together. However, this is not producing speech. When we produce h in speaking English, many different things happen in different contexts. In the word 'hat', the h must be followed by an æ vowel. The tongue, jaw and lip positions for the vowel are all produced simultaneously with the h consonant, so that the glottal fricative has an æ quality. The same is found for all vowels following h; it always has the quality of the vowel it precedes, so that in theory if you could listen to a tape-recording of h-sounds cut off from the beginnings of different vowels in words like 'hit', 'hat', 'hot', 'hut', etc., you should be able to identify which vowel would have followed the h. One way of stating the above facts is to say

that *phonetically* h is a voiceless vowel with the quality of the voiced vowel that follows it.

Phonologically, h is a consonant. It is usually found before vowels. As well as being found in initial position it is found medially in words such as: 'ahead' **əhed**, 'greenhouse' **griːnhaʊs**, 'boathook' **bəʊthʊk**. It is noticeable that when h occurs between voiced sounds (as in the words 'ahead' and 'greenhouse'), it is pronounced with voicing – not the normal voicing of vowels but a weak, slightly fricative sound called **breathy voice**. It is not necessary for foreign learners to attempt to copy this voicing, though it *is* important to pronounce h where it should occur in RP. Many English speakers are surprisingly sensitive about this consonant; they tend to judge as sub-standard a pronunciation in which h is missing, though in fact practically all English speakers, however carefully they speak, omit the h in unstressed pronunciations of the words 'her', 'he', 'him', 'his' and the auxiliary 'have', 'has', 'had', though few of them are aware that they do this.

There are two rather uncommon sounds that need to be introduced; since they are said to have some association with h, they will be mentioned here. The first is the sound produced by some speakers in words which begin orthographically (that is, in their spelling form) with 'wh'; most RP speakers pronounce the initial sound in such words (e.g. 'which', 'why', 'whip', 'whale') as w, but there are some (particularly when they are speaking clearly or emphatically) who pronounce the sound used by most American and Scottish speakers, a *voiceless* fricative with the same lip, tongue and jaw position as w. The phonetic symbol for this voiceless fricative is ʍ. We can find pairs of words showing the difference between this sound and the voiced sound w (which is introduced in the next chapter):

'witch' **wɪtʃ**	'which' **ʍɪtʃ**
'wail' **weɪl**	'whale' **ʍeɪl**
'Wye' **waɪ**	'why' **ʍaɪ**
'wear' **weə**	'where' **ʍeə**

The obvious conclusion to draw from this is that, since substituting one sound for the other causes a difference in meaning, the two sounds are two different phonemes. It is therefore rather surprising to find that practically all writers on the subject of the phonemes of English decide that this answer is not correct, and that the sound ʍ in 'which', 'why', etc., is *not* a phoneme of English but is a realisation of a sequence of two phonemes, h and w. Fortunately we do not need to worry about this problem in RP; we can make the decision to exclude this sound altogether from the accent we are describing. However, it should be noted that in the analysis of the many accents of English that do have a "voiceless w" there is not much more theoretical justification in treating the sound as h plus w than there is for treating p as h plus b.

Whether the question of this sound is approached phonetically or phonologically, there is no h sound in the "voiceless w".

A very similar case is the sound found at the beginning of words such as 'huge', 'human', 'hue'. Phonetically this sound is a voiceless palatal fricative (for which the phonetic symbol is ç); there is no glottal fricative at the beginning of 'huge', etc. However, it is usual to treat this sound as h plus j (the latter is another consonant that is to be introduced in the next chapter – it is the sound at the beginning of 'yes', 'yet'). Again we can see that a phonemic analysis does not necessarily have to be exactly in line with phonetic facts. If we were to say that these two sounds ʍ and ç were phonemes of English, we would have two extra phonemes that do not occur very frequently. We will follow the usual practice of transcribing the sound at the beginning of 'huge', etc., as hj just because it is convenient and common practice.

6.3 The affricates

TU 6, Exs 4 & 5

tʃ, dʒ are the only two affricate phonemes in English. As with the plosives and most of the fricatives, we have a fortis/lenis pair, and the voicing characteristics are the same as for these other consonants. tʃ is slightly aspirated in the positions where p, t, k are aspirated, but not strongly enough for it to be necessary for foreign learners to give much attention to it. The place of articulation is the same as for ʃ, ʒ, that is, palato-alveolar. This means that the t component of tʃ has a place of articulation rather further back in the mouth than the t plosive usually has. When tʃ is final in the syllable it has the effect of shortening a preceding vowel, as do other fortis consonants. tʃ and dʒ often have rounded lips.

6.4 Fortis consonants

All the consonants described so far, with the exception of h, belong to pairs distinguished by the difference between fortis and lenis. Since the remaining consonants to be described are not paired in this way, a few points that still have to be made about fortis consonants are included in this chapter.

The first point concerns the shortening of a preceding vowel by a syllable-final fortis consonant. As was said in Chapter 4, the effect is

most noticeable in the case of long vowels and diphthongs, though it does also affect short vowels.

What happens if something other than a vowel precedes a fortis consonant? This arises in syllables ending with l, m, n or ŋ, followed by a fortis consonant such as p, t, k, as in 'belt' belt, 'bump' bʌmp, 'bent' bent, 'bank' bæŋk. The effect on those continuant consonants is the same as on a vowel – they are considerably shortened.

A similar question arises with *initial* fortis consonants. When p, t, k come at the beginning of a syllable and are followed by a vowel, they are aspirated, as was explained in Chapter 4. This means that the beginning of a vowel is voiceless in this context. However, p, t, k may be followed not by a vowel but by one of l, r, w, j. These voiced continuant consonants undergo a similar process – they lose their voicing. So words like 'play' pleɪ, 'tray' treɪ, 'quick' kwɪk contain *devoiced* l, r, w, whereas 'lay', 'ray', 'wick' contain *voiced* l, r, w. Consequently, if for example 'tray' were to be pronounced without devoicing of the r (i.e. with fully voiced r) English speakers would hear the word 'dray'

Voiceless consonants are usually articulated with open glottis, i.e. with the vocal folds separated. This is always the case with fricatives, where airflow is essential for successful production. However, with plosives an alternative possibility is to produce the consonant with completely *closed* glottis. This type of articulation is found quite widely in English pronunciation, including that of younger speakers of RP. This **glottalised** pronunciation, in which a glottal stop occurs just before p, t, k or tʃ, is only found in certain contexts, and foreign learners usually find the rules too difficult to learn, from the practical point of view; it is therefore simpler to keep to the more conservative pronunciation and not try to use glottalisation. However, it is worth pointing out the fact that this occurs, since many learners notice the glottal stops and want to know what it is that they are hearing. A few examples are given below.

The most widespread glottalisation is that of tʃ at the end of a stressed syllable (I leave defining what "stressed syllable" means until Chapter 8). If we use the symbol ʔ to represent a glottal closure, the phonetic transcription for various words containing tʃ can be given as follows:

	With glottalisation	*Without glottalisation*
'nature'	neɪʔtʃə	neɪtʃə
'catching'	kæʔtʃɪŋ	kætʃɪŋ
'riches'	rɪʔtʃɪz	rɪtʃɪz

There is similar glottalisation of p, t, k, though this is not found so regularly. It normally happens when the plosive is followed by another consonant or a pause; for example:

	With glottalisation	*Without glottalisation*
'actor'	æʔktə	æktə
'petrol'	peʔtrəl	petrəl
'mat'	mæʔt	mæt
'football'	fʊʔtbɔːl	fʊtbɔːl

Foreign learners do not need to learn this type of pronunciation, but many seem to acquire it unintentionally through speaking to English people. It is undoubtedly becoming more widely used within RP.

Notes on problems and further reading

The description of fricatives is in general quite straightforward. However, something that is mentioned only briefly in section 6.2 is the difference between fricatives in terms of the width and depth of the air passage. The terms **slit** and **groove** are sometimes used: the air passage in **s** and **z** is said to be grooved and that in **ʃ** and **ʒ** slit; see Gimson (1989), 8.4.4, and 8.4.5; O'Connor (1973), pp. 48 and 142.

The dental fricative **ð** is something of a problem: although there are not many English words in which this sound appears, those words are ones which occur very frequently – words like 'the', 'this', 'there', 'that', and so on. In my experience this consonant often shows so little friction noise that on purely phonetic grounds it seems incorrect to class it as a fricative. It is more like a weak (lenis) dental plosive. This matter is discussed again in Chapter 14, section 14.2.

On the phonological side, I have brought in a discussion of the phonemic analysis of two "marginal" fricatives which present a problem (though not a particularly important or fundamental one): I feel that this is worth discussing in that it gives a good idea of the sort of problem that can arise in analysing the phonemic system of a language. The other problem area is the glottalisation described at the end of the chapter. There is, I think, now a growing awareness of how frequently this is to be found in the speech of younger RP speakers; however, it is not at all easy to formulate rules stating the contexts in which this occurs. There is discussion in Brown (1990), pp. 28–30, in Gimson (1989), 8.2.3 (3) and 8.2.7 and in Wells (1982), 3.4.5. I have tried to analyse the very complex distribution of glottalisation myself (Roach, 1973)* and to measure the timing of articulatory events in glottalised consonants (Roach, 1979).

* If you do read this paper, please note that the two rules given on p. 13 were printed in the wrong order.

Notes for teachers

Although it is important to be aware of the ways in which fricatives differ from each other, I have never found it helpful to teach learners to aim consciously at slit and groove articulations – it is not something that most people feel they have control over, so simple imitation works better.

Although I do not recommend teaching learners to produce glottalisation of p, t, k, tʃ, I have sometimes found advanced learners have been able to "get the hang of it", and I find the increase in naturalness in their accent very striking.

Written exercises

1. Transcribe the following words phonemically:

a)	fishes	*e)*	achieves
b)	shaver	*f)*	others
c)	sixth	*g)*	measure
d)	these	*h)*	ahead

2. Following the style introduced in Exercise 1 for Chapter 4, describe the movements of the articulators in the first word of the above list.

7 Nasals and other consonants

So far we have studied two major groups of consonants, the plosives and fricatives, and also the affricates, tʃ and dʒ, a total of seventeen. There remain the nasals m, n, ŋ and four others, l, r, w and j, which are not easy to fit into groups. All of these consonants are continuants and usually have no friction noise, but in other ways they are very different from each other.

7.1 Nasals

The basic characteristic of a nasal consonant is that the air escapes through the nose. For this to happen, the soft palate must be lowered; in the case of all the other consonants and vowels, the soft palate is raised and air cannot pass through the nose. In nasal consonants, however, the air does not pass through the mouth; it is prevented by a complete closure in the mouth at some point. If you produce a long sequence dndndndndndndn without moving your tongue from the position for alveolar closure, you will feel your soft palate moving up and down. The three types of closure are: bilabial (lips), alveolar (tongue blade against alveolar ridge) and velar (back of tongue against the soft palate). This set of places produces three nasal consonants, m, n, ŋ, which correspond to the three places of articulation for the pairs of plosives p b, t d, k g.

m and n are simple, straightforward consonants with distributions like those of the plosives. There is in fact little to describe. However, ŋ is a different matter. It is a sound that gives considerable problems to foreign learners, and one that is so unusual in its phonological aspect that some people argue that it is not one of the phonemes of English at all. The place of articulation of ŋ is the same as that of k, g; it is a useful exercise to practise making a continuous ŋ sound. If you do this, it is very important not to produce a k or g at the end – pronounce the ŋ just like m or n.

TU 7, Exs 1 & 2

We will now look at some ways in which the distribution of ŋ is unusual.

i) In initial position we find m and n occurring freely, but ŋ never

occurs in this position. With the possible exception of ʒ, this makes ŋ the only English consonant that cannot occur initially.

ii) Medially, ŋ occurs quite frequently, but there is in RP a rather complex and quite interesting rule concerning the question of when ŋ may be pronounced without a following plosive. When we find the letters 'nk' in the middle of a word in its orthographic form, a k will always be pronounced; however, some words with orthographic 'ng' in the middle will have a pronunciation containing ŋg and others will have ŋ without g. For example, in RP we find the following:

A	B
'finger' fɪŋgə	'singer' sɪŋə
'anger' æŋgə	'hanger' hæŋə

In the words of column A the ŋ is followed by g, while the words of column B have no g. What is the difference between A and B? The important difference is in the way the words are constructed – their **morphology**. The words of column B can be divided into two grammatical pieces: 'sing' + '-er', 'hang' + '-er'. These pieces are called **morphemes**, and we say that column B words are **morphologically** different from column A words, since these can *not* be divided into two morphemes. 'Finger' and 'anger' consist of just one morpheme each.

We can summarise the position so far by saying that (within a word containing the letters 'ng' in the spelling) ŋ occurs without a following g if it occurs at the end of a morpheme; if it occurs in the middle of a morpheme it has a following g.

Let us now look at the ends of words *ending* orthographically with 'ng'. We find that these always end with ŋ; this ŋ is never followed by a g. Thus we find that the words 'sing' and 'hang' are pronounced as sɪŋ and hæŋ; to give a few more examples, 'song' is sɒŋ, 'bang' is bæŋ and 'long' is lɒŋ. We do not need a separate explanation for this: the rule given above, the g is not pronounced after ŋ at the end of a morpheme, works in these cases too, since the end of a word must also be the end of a morpheme. (If this point seems difficult, think of the comparable case of words and sentences: a sound that comes at the end of a sentence must necessarily also come at the end of a word, so that the final k of 'This is a book' is also the final k of the word 'book'.)

Unfortunately, rules tend to have exceptions. The main exception to the above morpheme-based rule concerns the comparative and superlative suffixes '-er' and '-est'. According to the rule given above, the adjective 'long' will be pronounced lɒŋ, which is correct. It would also predict correctly that if we add another morpheme to 'long', such as the suffix '-ish', the pronunciation of ŋ would again

be without a following g. However, it would additionally predict that the comparative and superlative forms 'longer' and 'longest' would be pronounced with no g following the ŋ, while in fact the correct pronunciation of the words is:

'longer' lɒŋgə 'longest' lɒŋgəst (or lɒŋgɪst)

As a result of this, the rule must be modified; it must state that comparative and superlative forms of adjectives are to be treated as single-morpheme words for the purposes of this rule. The resulting rule is, of course, difficult to understand. It is important to remember that English speakers in general (apart from those trained in phonetics) are quite ignorant of this rule, and yet if a foreigner uses the wrong pronunciation (that is, pronounces ŋg where ŋ should occur, or ŋ where ŋg should be used), they notice that a mispronunciation has occurred.

iii) A third way in which the distribution of ŋ is unusual is the small number of vowels it is found to follow. It never occurs after a diphthong or long vowel, and in fact there are only five vowels ever found preceding this consonant: ɪ, e, æ, ʌ and ɒ.

The velar nasal consonant ŋ is, in summary, phonetically simple (it is no more difficult to produce than m or n) but phonologically complex (it is, as we have shown, not easy to describe the contexts in which it occurs).

7.2 l

TU 7, Ex 3

A **lateral** consonant is one in which the passage of air through the mouth does not go in the usual way along the centre of the tongue; instead, there is complete closure between the centre of the tongue and the part of the roof of the mouth where contact is to be made (the alveolar ridge in the case of l). Because of this complete closure along the centre, the only way for the air to escape is along the sides of the tongue. If you make a long l sound you may be able to feel that the sides of your tongue are pulled in and down while the centre is raised, but it is not easy to become consciously aware of this; what is more revealing (if you can do it) is to produce a long sequence of alternations between d and l without any intervening vowel. If you produce dldldldldldl *without moving the middle of the tongue*, you will be able to feel the movement of the sides of the tongue that is necessary for the production of a lateral. It is also possible to *see* this movement in a mirror if you open your lips wide as you produce it. Finally, it is also helpful to see if

you can *feel* the movement of air past the sides of the tongue; this is not really possible in a voiced sound (the obstruction caused by the vibrating vocal folds reduces the airflow), but if you try to make a very loud *whispered* l, you should be able to feel the air rushing along the sides of your tongue.

We find l initially, medially and finally, and its distribution is therefore not particularly limited. In RP, the consonant has one unusual characteristic: the realisation of l found before vowels sounds quite different from that found in other contexts. For example, the realisation of l in the word 'lea' li: is quite different from that in 'eel' i:l. The sound in i:l is what we call a "dark l"; it has a quality rather similar to an [u] vowel, with the back of the tongue raised. The sound in li: is what is called a "clear l"; it resembles an [i] vowel, with the front of the tongue raised. The "dark l" is also found when it precedes a consonant, as in 'eels' i:lz. We can therefore predict which realisation of l (clear or dark) will occur in a particular context: clear l will never occur before consonants or before a pause, but only before vowels; dark l never occurs before vowels. We can say, using terminology introduced in Chapter 5, that clear l and dark l are allophones of the phoneme l in complementary distribution. Most English speakers do not consciously know about the difference between clear and dark l, yet they are quick to detect the difference when they hear English speakers with different accents or foreign learners who have not learned the correct pronunciation.

Another allophone of l is found when it follows p or k at the beginning of a stressed syllable. The l is then **devoiced**, i.e. produced without the voicing found in most realisations of this phoneme. The situation is (as explained in Chapter 4) similar to aspiration when a vowel follows p, t or k in a stressed syllable; the first part of the vowel is devoiced.

7.3 r

TU 7, Ex 4

This consonant is important in that considerable differences in its articulation and its distribution are found in different accents of English. As far as the articulation of the sound is concerned, there is really only one pronunciation that can be recommended to the foreign learner of RP, and that is what is called a **post-alveolar approximant**. An **approximant**, as a type of consonant, is rather difficult to describe; informally, we can say that it is an articulation in which the articulators approach each other but do not get sufficiently close to each other to produce a "complete" consonant such as a plosive, nasal or fricative.

The difficulty with this is that articulators are always in *some* positional relationship with each other, and any vowel articulation could also be classed as an approximant – but the term "approximant" is usually used only for consonants.

The important thing about the articulation of r is that the tip of the tongue approaches the alveolar area in approximately the way it would for a t or d, but never actually makes contact with any part of the roof of the mouth. You should be able to make a long r sound and feel that no part of the tongue is in contact with the roof of the mouth at any time. (This is, of course, very different from the "r-sounds" of many other languages where some kind of tongue–palate contact is made.) The tongue is in fact usually slightly curled backwards with the tip raised; consonants with this tongue shape are usually called **retroflex**. If you pronounce an alternating sequence of d and r (drdrdrdrdrdr) while looking in a mirror you should be able to see more of the underside of the tongue in the r than in the d, where the tongue tip is not raised and the tongue is not curled back. The "curling-back" process usually carries the tip of the tongue to a position slightly further back in the mouth than that for alveolar consonants such as t and d, which is why this approximant is called "post-alveolar". A rather different r sound is found at the beginning of a syllable if it is preceded by p, t or k; it is then voiceless and slightly fricative. This pronunciation is found in words such as 'press', 'tress', 'cress'.

One final characteristic of the articulation of r is that it is usual for the lips to be slightly rounded; foreign learners should do this but should be careful not to exaggerate it. If the lip-rounding is too strong the consonant will sound too much like w, which is the sound that most English children produce until they have learned to pronounce r in the adult way.

The distributional peculiarity of r in RP is very easy to state: this phoneme only occurs before vowels. No one has any difficulty in remembering this rule, but foreign learners (most of whom, quite reasonably, expect that if there is a letter 'r' in the spelling then a r should be pronounced) find it difficult to apply the rule to their own pronunciation. There is no problem with words like the following:

i) 'red' red 'arrive' əraɪv 'hearing' hɪərɪŋ

In these words r is followed by a vowel. But in the following words there is no r in the pronunciation:

ii) 'car' kɑː 'ever' evə 'here' hɪə
iii) 'hard' hɑːd 'verse' vɜːs 'cares' keəz

Many accents of English *do* pronounce r in words like those of (ii) and (iii) (for example, most American, Scots and West of England accents); accents which have r in final position (before a pause) and before a

consonant are called **rhotic** accents, while accents in which r only occurs before vowels (such as RP) are called **non-rhotic**.

7.4 j and w

TU 7, Ex 5

These are the consonants found at the beginning of words such as 'yet' and 'wet'. They have been called **semivowels** by many writers, but we will use the more modern term "approximant" (introduced in 7.3 above). The most important thing to remember about these phonemes is that they are *phonetically* like vowels but *phonologically* like consonants. From the phonetic point of view the articulation of j is practically the same as that of a front close vowel such as iː, but is very short. In the same way w is closely similar to uː. If you make the initial sound of 'wet' or 'yet' very long, you will be able to hear this. But despite this vowel-like character, we use them like consonants. For example, they only occur before vowel phonemes; this is a typically consonantal distribution. We can show that a word beginning with w or j is regarded as beginning with a consonant in the following way: the indefinite article is 'a' before a consonant (as in 'a cat', 'a dog'), and 'an' before a vowel (as in 'an apple', 'an orange'). If a word beginning with w or j is preceded by the indefinite article, it is the 'a' form that is found (as in 'a way', 'a year'). Another example is that of the definite article. Here the rule is that 'the' is pronounced as ðə before consonants (as in ðə kæt, ðə dɒg) and as ðɪ before vowels (as in ðɪ æpl, ðɪ ɒrɪndʒ). This evidence illustrates why it is said that j and w are phonologically consonants. However, it is important to remember that to pronounce them as fricatives (as many foreign learners do), or even affricates, is a mispronunciation. Only in special contexts do we hear friction noise in j or w; this is when they are preceded by p, t or k at the beginning of a syllable, as in these words:

'pure' pjʊə	(no words begin with pw)
'tune' tjuːn	'twin' twɪn
'queue' kjuː	'quin' kwɪn

The j and w sounds are devoiced (that is, become voiceless) and are slightly fricative in these contexts. For place of articulation, we regard j as palatal and w as bilabial.

This completes our examination of the consonant phonemes of English. It is useful to place them on a consonant chart, and this is done in Table 2. On this chart, the different places of articulation are arranged from left to right and the manners of articulation are arranged from top to bottom. When there is a pair of phonemes with the same

Table 2. *Chart of English consonant phonemes*

Manner of articulation	*Place of articulation* Bilabial	Labiodental	Dental	Alveolar	Palato-alveolar (Post-alveolar)	Palatal	Velar	Glottal
Plosive	p b			t d			k g	
Fricative		f v	θ ð	s z	ʃ ʒ			h
Affricate					tʃ dʒ			
Nasal	m			n			ŋ	
Lateral				l				
Approximant	w				r	j		

place and manner of articulation but differing in whether they are fortis or lenis (voiceless or voiced), the symbol for the fortis consonant is placed to the left of the symbol for the lenis consonant.

Notes on problems and further reading

The notes for this chapter are devoted to giving further detail on a particularly difficult theoretical problem. The argument that ŋ is an allophone of n, not a phoneme in its own right, is so widely accepted by contemporary phonological theorists that few seem to feel it worthwhile to explain it fully. Since the velar nasal is introduced in this chapter, I have chosen to attempt this here. However, it is a rather complex theoretical matter, and you may prefer to leave consideration of it until after the discussion of problems of phonemic analysis in Chapter 13.

A quite interesting examination of the question was written by Vachek (1964). There are brief discussions of the phonemic status of ŋ in Chomsky and Halle (1968), p. 85, Hyman (1975), pp. 74–6 and Ladefoged (1982), p. 60; the fullest treatment in recent years is Wells (1982), pp. 60–4.

Everyone agrees that English has at least two contrasting nasal phonemes, m and n. However, there is disagreement about whether there is a third nasal phoneme in RP. In favour of accepting ŋ as a phoneme is the fact that traditional phoneme theory more or less demands its acceptance despite the general tendency to make phoneme inventories as small as possible. Consider minimal pairs like these: 'sin' sɪn – 'sing' sɪŋ; 'sinner' sɪnə – 'singer' sɪŋə.

There are three main arguments *against* accepting ŋ as a phoneme:

i) In some English accents it can easily be shown that ŋ is an allophone of n, which suggests that something similar might be true of RP too.
ii) If ŋ is a phoneme, its distribution is very different from that of m and n, being restricted to syllable-final position (phonologically) and to morpheme-final position (morphologically) unless it is followed by k or g.
iii) English speakers with no phonetic training are said to feel that ŋ is not a 'single sound' like m and n. Sapir (1925) said that 'no native speaker of English could be made to feel in his bones' that ŋ formed part of a series with m and n. This is, of course, very hard to establish, if not impossible.

We need to look at point (i) in more detail and go on to see how this

leads to the argument against having ŋ as a phoneme. Please note that I am not trying to argue that this proposal is correct; my aim is just to explain the argument. The whole question may seem of little or no practical consequence, but we ought to be interested in any phonological problem if it appears that conventional phoneme theory is not able to deal satisfactorily with it.

In some English accents, particularly those of the Midlands, ŋ is only found in front of k and g. For example:

'sink'	sɪŋk	'singer'	sɪŋgə
'sing'	sɪŋg	'singing'	sɪŋgɪŋg

(This was my own pronunciation as a boy, living in the West Midlands, but I now usually have RP sɪŋk, sɪŋ, sɪŋə, sɪŋɪŋ.)

In the case of an accent like this, it can be shown that within the morpheme the only nasal that occurs before k and g is ŋ. Neither m nor n can occur in this environment. Thus within the morpheme ŋ is in complementary distribution with m and n. Since m and n are already established as distinct English phonemes in other contexts (mæp, næp, etc.), it is clear that for such non-RP accents ŋ must be an allophone of one of the other nasal consonant phonemes. We choose n because when a morpheme-final n is followed by a morpheme-initial k or g it is usual for that n to change to ŋ; however, a morpheme-final m followed by a morpheme-initial k or g usually *doesn't* change to ŋ. Thus:

'rain-coat' reɪŋkəʊt BUT 'tram-car' træmkɑː

So in an analysis which contains no ŋ phoneme, we would transcribe 'rain-coat' phonemically as reɪnkəʊt and 'sing', 'singer', 'singing' as sɪng, sɪngə, sɪngɪng. The phonetic realisation of the n phoneme as a velar nasal will be accounted for by a general rule that we will call Rule 1:

> *Rule 1:* n is realised as [ŋ] when it occurs in an environment in which it precedes either k or g.

Let us now look at RP. When we see words like sɪŋ, sɪŋə, sɪŋɪŋ, we can see no k or g that could have caused the above rule to apply. However, we must look at one important fact: the word 'finger' is pronounced in RP as fɪŋgə. What is the reason for the difference between 'singer' sɪŋə and 'finger' fɪŋgə? The crucial difference is that 'finger' is a single, indivisible morpheme whereas 'singer' is composed of two morphemes, 'sing' and '-er'. When ŋ occurs without a following k or g it is *always* immediately before a morpheme boundary. Consequently, the sound ŋ and the sequence ŋg are in complementary distribution in RP. But within the morpheme there is no contrast between the sequence ŋg and the sequence ng, which makes it possible to say that ŋ is also in complementary distribution with the sequence ng.

After establishing these 'background facts', we can go on to state the argument as follows:

i) English has only m and n as nasal phonemes.
ii) The sound ŋ is an allophone of the phoneme n.
iii) The words 'finger', 'sing', 'singer', 'singing' should be represented phonemically as fingə, sɪng, sɪngə, sɪngɪng.
iv) Rule 1 (see above) applies to all these phonemic representations to give these phonetic forms: fɪŋgə, sɪŋg, sɪŋgə, sɪŋgɪŋg.
v) A further rule (Rule 2) must now be introduced:

Rule 2: g is deleted when it occurs after ŋ and before a morpheme boundary.

It should be clear that Rule 2 will not apply to 'finger' because the ŋ is not immediately followed by a morpheme boundary, but the rule does apply to all the others, hence the final phonetic forms: fɪŋgə, sɪŋ, sɪŋə, sɪŋɪŋ.

vi) Now we have to deal with an exception: comparative and superlative forms of adjectives ending in ŋ contain the sequence ŋg, e.g. 'long' lɒŋ, 'longer' (comparative) lɒŋgə, 'longest' (superlative) lɒŋgɪst. In fact there is a minimal pair in RP comprising 'longer' (= a person who longs) lɒŋə and 'longer' (comparative of 'long') lɒŋgə. Most generative phonologists would 'solve' this problem by saying that there is a *different* morpheme boundary found in the comparative and superlative forms, and that Rule 2 would have to be altered so as to exclude this particular type of morpheme boundary from its influence. An alternative is to say that the words 'longer', 'longest', 'stronger', 'strongest', etc. are specifically exempted from Rule 2. Both solutions are, of course, very '*ad hoc*' – that is, thought up just to explain away one particular problem.

The argument against treating ŋ as a phoneme may not appeal to you very much. The important point, however, is that if one is prepared to use the kind of complexity and abstractness illustrated above, one can produce quite far-reaching changes in the phonemic analysis of a language.

The other consonants, l, r, w and j do not, I think, need further explanation, except to mention that the question of whether j, w are consonants or vowels is discussed in O'Connor and Trim (1953).

Written exercises

1. List all the consonant phonemes of RP, grouped according to manner of articulation.
2. Transcribe the following words phonemically:

a)	sofa	*e)*	square
b)	verse	*f)*	anger
c)	steering	*g)*	bought
d)	breadcrumb	*h)*	nineteen

3. When the vocal tract is in its resting position for normal breathing, the soft palate is usually lowered. Describe what movements are carried out by the soft palate in the pronunciation of the following items:

a) banner *b)* mid *c)* angle

8 The syllable

The syllable is a very important unit. Most people seem to believe that, even if they cannot define what a syllable *is*, they can count how many syllables there are in a given word or sentence. If they are asked to do this they often tap their finger as they count, which illustrates the syllable's importance in the rhythm of speech. As a matter of fact, if one tries the experiment of asking English speakers to count the syllables in, say, a tape-recorded sentence, there is often a considerable amount of disagreement.

The nature of the syllable

When we looked at the nature of vowels and consonants in Chapter 1 it was shown that one could decide whether a particular sound was a vowel or a consonant on phonetic grounds (in relation to how much they obstructed the airflow) or on phonological grounds (vowels and consonants having different distributions). We find a similar situation with the syllable, in that it may be defined both phonetically and phonologically. Phonetically (that is, in relation to the way we produce them and the way they sound), syllables are usually described as consisting of a centre which has little or no obstruction to airflow and which sounds comparatively loud; before and after this centre (that is, at the beginning and end of the syllable), there will be greater obstruction to airflow and/or less loud sound. We will now look at some examples:

i) What we might call a **minimum syllable** would be a single vowel in isolation, e.g. the words 'are' ɑː, 'or' ɔː, 'err' ɜː. These are preceded and followed by silence. Isolated sounds such as m, which we sometimes produce to indicate agreement, or ʃ, to ask for silence, must also be regarded as syllables.

ii) Some syllables have an **onset** (that is, they have more than just silence preceding the centre of the syllable):
   'bar' bɑː 'key' kiː 'more' mɔː

iii) Syllables may have no onset but have a **coda**:
   'am' æm 'ought' ɔːt 'ease' iːz

iv) Some syllables have onset and coda:
   'run' rʌn 'sat' sæt 'fill' fɪl

There are still problems with this phonetic description of the syllable, particularly in the matter of deciding on the division between syllables. We will look at two words that are good examples of this difficulty. Most English speakers feel that the word 'going' gəʊɪŋ consists of two syllables; presumably we can decide that the ʊ in the middle is the dividing point between the two syllables, since the articulation is slightly closer to obstructing airflow than the vowels next to it. This still leaves unanswered the question of whether the ʊ belongs to the first or to the second syllable; of course, we know that the ʊ is part of the əʊ diphthong phoneme, but this is a fact of phonology, not of the phonetic structure of the syllable. Another difficult case is the word 'extra' ekstrə. One problem is that by some definitions the s in the middle, between k and t, would be counted as a syllable, which most English speakers would reject. They feel that the word has two syllables. However, opinions usually differ as to where the two syllables are to be divided; the possibilities are (using the symbol + to signify a syllable boundary):

e + kstrə ek + strə eks + trə ekst + rə ekstr + ə

Usually the second or third possibilities are chosen; it is not possible to say which of these is the correct choice.

Looking at syllables in this way, which at first seems the obvious thing to do, turns out not to be very useful. Looking at them from the phonological point of view is quite different. What this involves is looking at the possible combinations of English phonemes. It is simplest to start by looking at what can occur in initial position – in other words, what can occur at the beginning of the first word when we begin to speak after a pause. We find that the word can begin with a vowel, or with one, two or three consonants. No word begins with more than three consonants. In the same way, we can look at how a word ends when it is the last word spoken before a pause; it can end with a vowel, or with one, two, three or (in a small number of cases) four consonants. No word ends with more than four consonants.

The structure of the English syllable

Let us now look in more detail at syllable onsets. If the first syllable of the word in question begins with a vowel (any vowel may occur, though ʊ is rare) we say that this initial syllable has a **zero onset.** If the syllable begins with one consonant, that **initial** consonant may be any consonant phoneme except ŋ; ʒ is rare. We now look at syllables beginning with two consonants. When we have two or more consonants together we call them a **consonant cluster.**

Table 3. *Two-consonant clusters with pre-initial* s

PRE-	INITIAL																	
s+	p	t	k	b	d	g	f	θ	s	ʃ	h	v	ð	z	ʒ	m	n	ŋ
	spɪn	stɪk	skɪn	—	—	—	sfɪə	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	smel	snəʊ	—

Note: *Two-consonant clusters of* s plus l, w, j are also possible (e.g. slɪp, swɪŋ, sjuː), and even perhaps sr in 'syringe' srɪndʒ for some speakers. These clusters can be analysed *either* as pre-initial s plus initial l, w, j, r *or* as initial s plus post-initial l, w, j, r. There is no clear answer to the question of which analysis is better; here they are treated in the latter way, and appear on Table 4.

Table 4. *Two-consonant clusters with post-initial* l, r, w, j

POST-INITIAL \ INITIAL	p	t	k	b	d	g	f	θ	s	ʃ	h	v	ð	z	ʒ	m	n	ŋ	l	r	w	j
l	plei	—	klei	blæk	—	glu:	flai	—	slɪp	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
r	prei	trei	krai	brɪŋ	drɒp	grɪn	frai	θrəʊ	?[1]	ʃru:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
w	—	twɪn	kwɪk	—	dwel	?[2]	—	θwɔ:t	swɪm	?[3]	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
j	pjʊə	tju:n	kju:	bju:ti	dju:	?[4]	fju:	?[5]	sju:	—	hju:dʒ	vju:	—	—	—	mju:z	nju:z	—	lju:d	—	—	—

Notes on doubtful cases:

1 Some people pronounce the word 'syringe' as srɪndʒ; there are no other cases of sr, unless one counts foreign place names (Sri Lanka).

2 Many Welsh names (including some well-known outside Wales), such as girls' names like Gwen and place names like the county of Gwent, have initial gw and English speakers seem to find them perfectly easy to pronounce.

3 Two cases make ʃw seem familiar: the vowel name 'schwa', and the name of the soft drinks firm Schweppes. This is, however, a very infrequent consonant cluster for English.

4 The only possible occurrence of gj would be in the archaic (heraldic) word 'gules', which is in very few people's vocabulary.

5 θj occurs in the archaic word 'thew' only.

TU 8, Exs 1 & 2

Initial two-consonant clusters are of two sorts in English. One sort is composed of s followed by one of a small set of consonants; examples of such clusters are found in words such as 'string' strɪŋ, 'sway' swei, 'smoke' smauk. The s in these clusters is called the **pre-initial** consonant and the other consonant (t, w, m in the above examples) the **initial** consonant. These clusters are shown in Table 3. The other sort begins with one of a set of about fifteen consonants, followed by one of the set l, r, w, j, as in, for example, 'play' plei, 'try' trai, 'quick' kwɪk, 'few' fju:. We call the first consonant of these clusters the **initial** consonant and the second the **post-initial**.

There are some restrictions on which consonants can occur together. This can best be shown in table form (see Table 4).

TU 8, Ex 2

When we look at three-consonant clusters we can recognise a clear relationship between them and the two sorts of two-consonant cluster described above; examples of three-consonant initial clusters are: 'split' splɪt, 'stream' stri:m, 'square' skweə. The s is the pre-initial consonant, the p, t and k that follow s in the three example words are the initial consonant and the l, r and w are post-initial. In fact, the number of possible initial three-consonant clusters is quite small and they can be set out in full (words given in spelling form):

		POST-INITIAL			
		l	r	w	j
	p	'splay'	'spray'	—	'spew'
S PLUS INITIAL	t	—	'string'	—	'stew'
	k	'sclerosis'	'screen'	'squeak'	'skewer'

TU 8, Exs 3 & 4

We now have a similar task to do in studying **final** consonant clusters. Here we find the possibility of up to four consonants at the end of a word. If there is no final consonant we say that there is a **zero coda**. When there is one consonant only, this is called the **final** consonant. Any consonant may be a final consonant except h, r, w, j. There are two sorts of two-consonant final cluster, one being a final consonant preceded by a **pre-final** consonant and the other a final consonant followed by a **post-final** consonant. The pre-final consonants form a small set: m, n, ŋ, l, s. We can see these in 'bump' bʌmp, 'bent' bent, 'bank' bæŋk, 'belt' belt, 'ask' a:sk. The post-final consonants also form a small set: s, z, t, d, θ; example words are: 'bets' bets, 'beds' bedz, 'backed' bækt, 'bagged' bægd, 'eighth' eɪtθ. These post-final consonants can often be identified as separate morphemes (though not always, e.g. 'axe' æks is a single morpheme and its final s has no separate meaning). A point of pronunciation can be pointed out here: the release of the first plosive of a plosive-plus-plosive cluster such as the g (of gd) in bægd or the k (of kt) in bækt is usually without plosion and is therefore practically inaudible.

TU 8, Ex 5

There are two types of final three-consonant cluster; the first is pre-final plus final plus post-final, as set out in the following table:

		PRE-FINAL	FINAL	POST-FINAL
'helped'	he	l	p	t
'banks'	bæ	ŋ	k	s
'bonds'	bɒ	n	d	z
'twelfth'	twe	l	f	θ

The second type shows that more than one post-final consonant can occur in a final cluster: final plus post-final 1 plus post-final 2. Post-final 2 is again one of s, z, t, d, θ.

		PRE-FINAL	FINAL	POST-FINAL 1	POST-FINAL 2
'fifths'	fɪ	—	f	θ	s
'next'	ne	—	k	s	t
'lapsed'	læ	—	p	s	t

Most four-consonant clusters can be analysed as consisting of a final consonant preceded by a pre-final and followed by post-final 1 and post-final 2, as shown below:

		PRE-FINAL	FINAL	POST-FINAL 1	POST-FINAL 2
'twelfths'	twe	l	f	θ	s
'prompts'	prɒ	m	p	t	s

A small number of cases seem to require different analysis, as consisting of a final consonant with no pre-final but *three* post-finals:

		PRE-FINAL	FINAL	POST-FINAL 1	POST-FINAL 2	POST-FINAL 3
'sixths'	sɪ	—	k	s	θ	s
'texts'	te	—	k	s	t	s

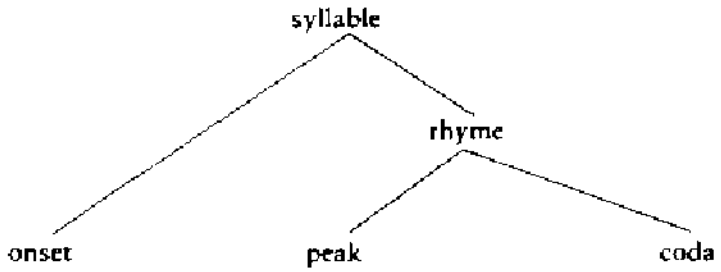
To sum up, we may describe the English syllable as having the following maximum phonological structure:

pre-initial	initial	post-initial	VOWEL	pre-final	final	post-final 1	post-final 2	post-final 3
ONSET				CODA				

It will be noticed that there must be a vowel in the centre of the syllable. There is a special case, that of **syllabic consonants** (which are introduced in the next chapter); we do *not*, for example, analyse the word 'students' stju:dn̩ts as consisting of one syllable with the three-consonant cluster stj for its onset and ending with a four-consonant cluster dnts. To fit in with what English speakers feel, we say that the word contains two syllables, with the consonant d dividing them and the second syllable ending with the cluster n̩ts; in other words, we treat the word as though there was a vowel between d and n, though a vowel only occurs here in

very slow, careful pronunciation. This phonological problem of interpretation will be discussed in Chapter 13.

Recent work in phonology makes use of a rather more refined analysis of the syllable in which the vowel and the coda (if there is one) are known as the **rhyme**; if you think of rhyming English verse you will see that this works by matching just that part of the last syllable of a line. The rhyme is divided into the **peak** (normally the vowel) and the coda (but note that this is *optional* – the rhyme may have no coda, as in a word like 'me'). As we have seen, the syllable may also have an onset, but this is not obligatory. The structure is thus the following:



Analysing syllable structure, as we have been doing in this chapter, can be useful to foreign learners of English. Obviously there are many more limitations on possible combinations of vowels and consonants, but an understanding of the basic structures described above will help learners to become aware of precisely what type of consonant cluster presents pronunciation problems – most learners find *some* English clusters difficult, but few find *all* of them difficult.

Notes on problems and further reading

After rather a long period of neglect, the study of syllable structure has become a subject of considerable interest to phonologists. A paper that had a lot of influence on more recent work was Fudge (1969): this is not easy to read. Gimson (1989), section 9.8, gives a thorough coverage without much difficult theory, and presents useful tables of combinations of onsets with vowels and vowels with codas. Among more theoretical works, Kahn (1976) is an important monograph; you could read Hogg and McCully (1987), chapter 2, Katamba (1989), chapter 9, or Goldsmith (1990), chapter 3, for a modern review of the field.

The paper by Fudge brings up two ideas first discussed by earlier writers. The first is that **sp**, **st**, **sk** could be treated as individual phonemes, removing the pre-initial position from the syllable onset altogether and removing **s** from the pre-final set of consonants; the

second is that since post-initial j only occurs before ʊ, uː and ʊə (which in his analysis all begin with the same vowel), one could postulate a diphthong juː and remove j from post-initial position. These are interesting proposals, but there is not enough space here to examine the arguments in full.

Note for teachers

The last paragraph of Chapter 8 explains why the study of syllable structure is relevant to the learner of English. English has a more complex syllable structure than most languages, and it follows from what is said in this chapter that it is advisable to discover exactly which types of consonant cluster are difficult for learners of a particular native-language background and construct exercises to give practice in them. There is practice material on consonant clusters in Mortimer (1984).

Written exercises

Using the analysis of the word 'cramped' given below as a model, analyse the structure of the following one-syllable English words:

	INITIAL	POST-INITIAL		PRE-FINAL	FINAL	POST-FINAL
'cramped'	k	r	æ	m	p	t
	ONSET		PEAK	CODA		

a) squealed
b) eighths
c) splash
d) texts

9 Strong and weak syllables

9.1 Strong and weak

One of the most noticeable features of English is that many syllables are **weak**; this is true of many other languages, but it is necessary to study how these weak syllables are pronounced and where they occur in English. The distribution of strong and weak syllables is a subject that will be met in several later chapters. For example, we will look later at **stress**, which is a major factor in determining whether a syllable will be strong or weak. **Elision** is a closely related subject, and in considering **intonation** the difference between strong and weak syllables is also important. Finally, words with "strong" and "weak" forms are clearly a related matter. In this chapter we look at the general nature of weak syllables.

What do we mean by "strong" and "weak"? In the present context, we are using these terms to refer to phonetic characteristics of syllables. We could describe them partly in terms of stress (by saying, for example, that strong syllables are stressed and weak syllables unstressed), but until we describe what "stress" *means* such a description would not be very useful. The most important thing to note at present is that any strong syllable will have as its peak one of the vowel phonemes (or possibly a triphthong) listed in Chapter 3, but not ə. Weak syllables, on the other hand, as they are being defined here, can only have four types of peak:

i) the vowel ə ("schwa")
ii) a close front unrounded vowel in the general area of iː and ɪ
iii) a close back rounded vowel in the general area of uː and ʊ
iv) a syllabic consonant.

When we compare weak syllables containing vowels with strong syllables, we find the vowel in a weak syllable tends to be shorter, of lower intensity and different in quality. For example, in the word 'father' fɑːðə the second syllable, which is weak, is shorter than the first, is less loud and has a vowel that cannot occur in strong syllables. In a word like 'bottle' bɒtl̩ the weak second syllable contains no vowel at all, but consists entirely of the consonant l̩. We call this a **syllabic consonant**. In the rest of this chapter we will look at the different types of weak syllable in more detail.

9.2 The ə vowel ("schwa")

TU 9, Ex 1

The most frequently occurring vowel in English is ə, which is always associated with weak syllables. In quality it is mid (that is, half-way between close and open) and central (that is, half-way between front and back). It is generally described as lax, that is, not articulated with much energy. Of course, the quality of this vowel is not always the same, but the variation is not important.

Not all weak syllables contain ə, though many do. Learners of English need to learn where ə is appropriate and where it is not. To do this we often have to use information that traditional phonemic theory would not accept as relevant – we must consider spelling. The question to ask is: if the speaker were to pronounce a particular weak syllable as strong instead, which vowel would it be most likely to have, according to the usual rules of English spelling? Of course, knowing this will not tell us which syllables in a word or utterance should be weak – that is something we look at in later chapters – but it will give us a rough guide to the correct pronunciation of weak syllables. Let us look at some examples:

i) Spelt with 'a'; strong pronunciation would have æ
'*a*ttend' ətend 'char*a*cter' kærəktə
'barr*a*cks' bærəks

ii) Spelt with 'ar'; strong pronunciation would have ɑ:
'p*ar*ticul*ar*' pətɪkjələ 'mol*ar*' məʊlə
'mon*ar*chy' mɒnəkɪ

iii) Adjectival endings spelt '*ate*'; strong pronunciation would have eɪ
'intim*ate*' ɪntɪmət 'accur*ate*' ækjərət
'desol*ate*' desələt (though there are exceptions to this: 'priv*ate*' is usually praɪvɪt)

iv) Spelt with 'o'; strong pronunciation would have ɒ
'tomorrow' təmɒrəʊ 'potato' pətetəʊ
'carrot' kærət

v) Spelt with 'or'; strong pronunciation would have ɔ:
'f*or*get' fəget 'ambassad*or*' æmbæsədə
'opp*or*tunity' ɒpətju:nɪtɪ

vi) Spelt with 'e'; strong pronunciation would have e
'settlem*e*nt' set|mənt 'viol*e*t' vaɪələt
'postm*e*n' pəʊstmən

vii) Spelt with 'er'; strong pronunciation would have ɜ:
'p*er*haps' pəhæps 'strong*er*' strɒŋgə
'sup*er*man' su:pəmæn

viii) Spelt with 'u'; strong pronunciation would have ʌ
'Autumn' ɔ:təm '*su*pport' səpɔ:t
'halib*u*t' hælɪbət

ix) Spelt with 'ough' (there are, of course, many other pronunciations for the letter-sequence '*ough*')
'thor*ough*' θʌrə 'bor*ough*' bʌrə

x) Spelt with 'ous'
'graci*ous*' greɪʃəs 'cal*lous*' kæləs

9.3 Close front and close back vowels

Two other vowels are commonly found in weak syllables, one close front (in the general region of iː and ɪ) and the other close back rounded (in the general region of uː and ʊ). In strong syllables it is comparatively easy to distinguish iː from ɪ, uː from ʊ, but in weak syllables the difference is not so clear. For example, although it is easy enough to decide which vowel one hears in 'beat' or 'bit', it is much less easy to decide which vowel one hears in the second syllable of words such as, for example, 'easy' or 'busy'. There are accents of English (for example Welsh accents) in which the second syllable sounds most like the iː in the first syllable of 'easy', and others (for example Yorkshire accents) in which it sounds more like the ɪ in the first syllable of 'busy'. In present-day RP, however, the matter is not so clear. There is uncertainty, too, about the corresponding close back rounded vowels. If we look at the words 'good to eat' and 'food to eat', we must ask if the word 'to' is pronounced with the ʊ vowel phoneme of 'good' or the uː phoneme of 'food'. Again, which vowel comes in 'to' in 'I want to'?

One common feature is that the vowels in question are more like iː or uː when they precede another vowel, less so when they precede a consonant or pause. You should notice one further thing: with the exception of one or two very artificial examples, there is really no possibility in these contexts of contrast between iː and ɪ, or between uː and ʊ. Effectively, then, the two distinctions, which undoubtedly exist within strong syllables, are neutralised in RP. How should we transcribe the words 'easy' and 'busy' as pronounced in RP? We will use the close front unrounded case as an example, since it is more straightforward. The possibilities, using our phoneme symbols, are the following:

	'easy'	'busy'
i)	iːziː	bɪziː
ii)	iːzɪ	bɪzɪ

Few speakers of RP seem to feel satisfied with any of these transcriptions. There is a possible solution to this problem, but it goes against standard phoneme theory. We can symbolise this weak vowel as i, that is, using the symbol for the vowel in 'beat' but without the length-mark. Thus:

i:zi bɪzi

The i vowel is neither the i: of 'beat' nor the ɪ of 'bit', and is not in contrast with them. We can set up a corresponding vowel u that is neither the u: of 'shoe' nor the ʊ of 'book' but a weak vowel that shares the characteristics of both. If we use i and u in our transcription as well as i:, ɪ, u: and ʊ, it is no longer a true phonemic transcription in the traditional sense. However, this need not be too serious an objection, and the fact that native speakers seem to think that this transcription fits better with their feelings about the language is a good argument in its favour.

TU 9, Ex 2

Let us now look at where these vowels are found, beginning with close front unrounded ones. We find i occurring:

i) In word-final position in words spelt with final 'y' or 'ey' (after one or more consonant letters), e.g. 'happy' hæpi, 'valley' væli, and in morpheme-final position when such words have suffixes beginning with vowels, e.g. 'happier' hæpiə, 'easiest' i:ziəst, 'hurrying' hʌriɪŋ.
ii) In a prefix such as those spelt 're', 'pre', 'de' if it precedes a vowel and is unstressed, for example in 'react' riækt, 'preoccupied' priɒkjʊpaɪd, 'deactivate' diæktɪveɪt.
iii) In the suffixes spelt 'iate', 'ious' when they have two syllables, for example in 'appreciate' əpri:ʃieɪt, 'hilarious' hɪleəriəs.
iv) In the following words when unstressed: 'he', 'she', 'we', 'me', 'be' and the word 'the' when it precedes a vowel.

In most other cases of weak syllables containing a close front unrounded vowel we can assign the vowel to the ɪ phoneme, as in the first syllable of 'resist' rɪzɪst, 'inane' ɪneɪn, 'enough' ɪnʌf, the middle syllable of 'incident' ɪnsɪdn̩t, 'orchestra' ɔ:kɪstrə, 'artichoke' ɑ:tɪtʃəʊk, and the final syllable of 'swimming' swɪmɪŋ, 'liquid' lɪkwɪd, 'optic' ɒptɪk. It can be seen that this vowel is most often represented in spelling by the letters 'i' and 'e'.

Weak syllables with close back rounded vowels are not so commonly found. We find u most frequently in the words 'you', 'to', 'into', 'do', when they are unstressed and are not immediately preceding a consonant, and 'through' and 'who' in all positions when they are unstressed. This vowel is also found before another vowel within a word, as in 'evacuation' ɪvækjueɪʃn̩, 'influenza' ɪnfluenzə.

9.4 Syllabic consonants

In the above sections we have looked at vowels in weak syllables. We must also consider syllables in which no vowel is found. In this case, a consonant, either l, r or a nasal, stands as the centre of the syllable instead

of the vowel. It is usual to indicate that a consonant is syllabic by means of a small vertical mark ,, for example 'cattle' kætl̩.

l

TU 9, Ex 3

Syllabic l̩ is perhaps the most noticeable example of the English syllabic consonant, though it would be wrong to expect to find it in all accents. It occurs after another consonant, and the way it is produced depends to some extent on the nature of that consonant. If the preceding consonant is alveolar, as in 'bottle' bɒtl̩, 'muddle' mʌdl̩, 'tunnel' tʌnl̩, the articulatory movement from the preceding consonant to the syllabic l is quite simple. The sides of the tongue, which are raised for the preceding consonant, are lowered to allow air to escape over them (this is called lateral release). The tip and blade of the tongue do not move until the articulatory contact for the l̩ is released. The l̩ is a "dark l" (as explained in Chapter 7). In some accents – particularly London ones – we often find a close back rounded vowel instead.

Where do we find syllabic l̩ in RP? It is useful to look at the spelling as a guide. The most obvious case is where we have a word ending with one or more consonant letters followed by 'le' (or, in the case of noun plurals or third person singular verb forms, 'les'). Examples are:

i) with alveolar consonant preceding
'cattle' kætl̩ 'bottle' bɒtl̩
'wrestle' resl̩ 'muddle' mʌdl̩
ii) with non-alveolar consonant preceding
'couple' kʌpl̩ 'trouble' trʌbl̩
'struggle' strʌgl̩ 'knuckle' nʌkl̩

Such words usually lose their final letter 'e' when a suffix beginning with a vowel is attached, but the l usually remains syllabic. Thus:

'bottle' – 'bottling'	bɒtl̩ – bɒtl̩ɪŋ
'muddle' – 'muddling'	mʌdl̩ – mʌdl̩ɪŋ
'struggle' – 'struggling'	strʌgl̩ – strʌgl̩ɪŋ

Similar words not derived in this way do not have the syllabic l̩ – it has been pointed out that the two words 'coddling' (derived from the verb 'coddle') and 'codling' (meaning "small cod", derived by adding the diminutive suffix '-ling' to 'cod') show a contrast between syllabic and non-syllabic l: 'coddling' kɒdl̩ɪŋ and 'codling' kɒdlɪŋ. In the case of words such as 'bottle', 'muddle', 'struggle', which are quite common, it would be a mispronunciation to insert a vowel between the l and the preceding consonant. There are a few accents of English which may do this, so that, for example, 'cattle' is pronounced kætəl, but this is not the case in RP.

We also find syllabic l̩ in words spelt with, at the end, one or more consonant letters followed by 'al' or 'el', for example:

'panel' pænl̩	'papal' peɪpl̩
'petal' petl̩	'parcel' pɑ:sl̩
'kernel' kɜ:nl̩	'Babel' beɪbl̩
'pedal' pedl̩	'ducal' dju:kl̩

In some less common or more technical words, it is not obligatory to pronounce syllabic l̩ and the sequence əl may be used instead, though it is less likely: 'missal' mɪsl̩ or mɪsəl; 'acquittal' əkwɪtl̩ or əkwɪtəl.

n̩

TU 9, Ex 4

Of the syllabic nasals, the most frequently found and the most important is n̩. When should it be pronounced? A general rule could be made that weak syllables which are phonologically composed of a plosive or fricative consonant plus ən are uncommon except in initial position in the words. So we can find words like 'tonight' tənaɪt, 'canary' kəneərɪ with an ə before n, but medially and finally, as in words like 'threaten', 'threatening', we find much more commonly a syllabic n̩: θretn̩, θretn̩ɪŋ. To pronounce a vowel before the nasal consonant would sound strange (or at best overcareful) in RP. Syllabic n̩ is most common after alveolar plosives and fricatives; in the case of t and d followed by n̩ the plosive is nasally released by lowering the soft palate, so that in the word 'eaten' i:tn̩, for example, the tongue does not move in the tn̩ sequence but the soft palate is lowered at the end of t so that compressed air escapes through the nose. We do not find n̩ after l or tʃ, dʒ, so that for example 'sullen' must be pronounced sʌlən, 'Christian' as krɪstʃən (though this word may be pronounced with t plus i or j instead of tʃ) and 'pigeon' as pɪdʒən.

Syllabic n̩ after non-alveolar consonants is not so widespread. In words where the syllable following a velar consonant is spelt 'an' or 'on' (for example, 'toboggan', 'wagon') it is rarely heard, the more usual pronunciation being təbɒgən, wægən. After bilabial consonants, in words like 'happen', 'happening', 'ribbon' we can consider it equally acceptable to pronounce them with syllabic n̩ (hæpn̩, hæpn̩ɪŋ, rɪbn̩) or with ən (hæpən, hæpənɪŋ, rɪbən). As we will see, syllabic m̩ is also possible in this context. In a similar way, after velar consonants in words like 'thicken', 'waken', syllabic n̩ is possible but ən is also acceptable. Syllabic velar nasal ŋ̩ is also possible in this context.

After f or v, syllabic n̩ is more common than ən (except, as with the other cases described, in word-initial syllables). Thus 'seven', 'heaven', 'often' are more usually sevn̩, hevn̩, ɒfn̩ than seven, heven, ɒfən.

In all the examples given so far the syllabic n̩ has been following

another consonant; sometimes it is possible for another consonant to precede that consonant, but in this case a syllabic consonant is less likely to occur. If l is followed by a plosive, as in 'Wilton', the pronunciation wɪlt̩n is possible, but wɪltən is also found regularly. If s precedes, as in 'Boston', a final syllabic nasal is less frequent, while clusters formed by nasal + plosive + syllabic nasal are very unusual: thus 'Minton', 'lantern', 'London', 'abandon' will normally have ə in the last syllable and be pronounced mɪntən, læntən, lʌndən, əbændən. Other nasals also discourage a following plosive plus syllabic nasal, so that for example 'Camden' is normally pronounced kæmdən.

m, ŋ

We will not spend much time on the syllabic pronunciation of these consonants. Both can occur as syllabic, but only as a result of processes such as assimilation and elision that I have not yet described. We find them sometimes in words like 'happen', which can be pronounced hæpm̩, though hæpn̩ and hæpən are equally acceptable, and 'uppermost', which could be pronounced as ʌpm̩əʊst though ʌpəməʊst would be more usual. Examples of possible syllabic velar nasals would be 'thicken' θɪkŋ̩ (where θɪkən and θɪkn̩ are also possible), and 'broken key' brəʊkŋ̩ ki:, where the nasal consonant occurs between velar consonants (again, n̩ or ən could be substituted for ŋ̩).

A note about symbols: the usual convention for the syllabic mark is that it should be placed below symbols that do not come below the line, for example m̩, n̩ but above a symbol that does come below the line, for example ŋ̩. In this course, however, it is felt preferable to put the mark underneath the symbol in all cases of syllabic consonants.

r

In many accents of the type called "rhotic" (as explained in Chapter 7), such as most American accents, syllabic ɹ̩ is very common. The word 'particular', for example, would probably be pronounced pɹ̩tɪkjəlɹ̩ by most Americans, while RP speakers would pronounce this word pətɪkjələ. Syllabic ɹ̩ is less common in RP and in most cases where it occurs there are perfectly acceptable alternative pronunciations without the syllabic consonant. Here are some examples:

a) where non-syllabic r is also acceptable
   'history' hɪstɹ̩i or hɪstri (not usually hɪstəri)
   'wanderer' wɒndɹ̩ə or wɒndrə (not usually wɒndərə)

b) where ər is also acceptable

'buttering' bʌtṛɪŋ or bʌtərɪŋ (not usually bʌtrɪŋ)
'flattery' flætṛi or flætəri (not usually flætri)

It seems that type (a) concerns cases where more than one consonant precedes the weak syllable in question, and type (b) where there is only one consonant preceding. There are a few pairs of words (**minimal pairs**) in which a difference in meaning appears to depend on whether a particular r is syllabic or not, for example:

'Hungary' hʌŋgṛi 'hungry' hʌŋgri
'adulterous' ədʌltṛəs 'adultress' ədʌltrəs

But we find no case of syllabic ṛ where it would not be possible to substitute either non-syllabic r (type a) or ər (type b); in the examples above, 'Hungary' could equally well be pronounced hʌŋgəri and 'adulterous' as ədʌltərəs.

Combinations of syllabic consonants

It is not unusual to find two syllabic consonants together. Examples are: 'national' næʃṇḷ 'literal' lɪtṛḷ 'visionary' vɪʒṇṛi 'veteran' vetṛṇ. It is important to remember that it is often not possible to say with certainty whether a speaker has pronounced a syllabic consonant, a non-syllabic consonant or a non-syllabic consonant plus ə. For example, the word 'veteran' given above could be pronounced in other ways than vetṛṇ. An RP speaker might instead say vetrən, vetərṇ or vetərən. The transcription makes it look as if the difference between these words was clear; it is not. In examining colloquial English it is often more or less a matter of arbitrary choice how one transcribes such a word. Transcription has the unfortunate tendency to make things seem simpler and more clear-cut than they really are.

Notes on problems and further reading

9.1 I have at this point tried to bring in some preliminary notions of stress and prominence without giving a full explanation; by this stage in the course it is important to be getting familiar with the difference between stressed and unstressed syllables, and the nature of "schwa", but the subject of stress is such a large one that I have felt it best to leave its main treatment until later.

9.2 On the subject of schwa, see Jones (1975), sections 355–72; Gimson (1989), 7.9.12.

9.3 The introduction of i and u is an idea that not everyone agrees with, but its acceptance as a convention in two influential dictionaries (the *Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English* and the *Longman Pronunciation Dictionary*) gives substantial support. Since I mention native speakers' feelings in this connection, and since I am elsewhere rather sceptical about appeals to native speakers' feelings, I had better explain that in this case my evidence comes from the native speakers of English I have taught in practical classes on transcription over many years. A substantial number of these students have either been speakers of RP or had accents only slightly different from it, and their usual reaction to being told to use ɪ for the vowel at the end of 'easy', 'busy' has been one of puzzlement and frustration; like them, I cannot equate this vowel with the vowel of 'bit'. I am, however, reluctant to use iː, which suggests a stronger vowel than should be pronounced (like the final vowel in 'evacuee', 'Tennessee'). For some time, I told students that since ɪ and iː were equally unsuitable for this vowel in the context in question, I would accept either in a transcription. This, not unnaturally, led to further confusion on the students' part, and the treatment suggested here was adopted as the solution that fitted best with what the students felt they wanted to write. I must emphasise that the vowels i and u are *not* included in the set of English phonemes but are simply additional symbols to make the writing and reading of transcription easier.

9.4 I feel that the subject of syllabic consonants is an area that we need to know more about, and that there has not yet been enough discussion of the problems found in their analysis. See Wells (1965).

Notes for teachers

Introduction of the "schwa" vowel has been deliberately delayed until this chapter, since I wanted it to be presented in the context of weak syllables in general. Since students should by now be comparatively well-informed about basic segmental phonetics, it is very important that their production and recognition of this vowel should be good before moving on to the following chapters.

This chapter is in a sense a crucial point in the course: although the segmental material of the preceding chapters is important as a foundation, the relationship between strong and weak syllables and the overall prosodic characteristics of words and sentences are essential to intelligibility, and most of the remaining chapters of the course are concerned with such matters.

Written exercises

The following sentences have been partially transcribed, but the vowels have been left blank. Fill in the vowels, taking care to identify which vowels are weak; put no vowel at all if you think a syllabic consonant is appropriate, but put a syllabic mark beneath the syllabic consonant.

1. A particular problem of the boat was a leak
   p t kjl pr bl m v ð b t wz l k
2. Opening the bottle presented no difficulty
   p n ŋ ð b t l pr z nt d n d f kl̩t
3. There is no alternative to the Government's proposal
   ð r z n lt n t v t ð g v nm nt s pr p zl̩
4. We ought to make a collection to cover the expenses
   w t t m k l kʃ n t k v ð ksp ns z
5. Finally they arrived at a harbour at the edge of the mountains
   f n l ð r vd t h b r t ð dʒ v m nt nz

10 Stress in simple words

10.1 The nature of stress

TU 10, Ex 1

Stress has been mentioned several times already in this course without any attempt to define what the word means. The nature of stress is simple enough – practically everyone would agree that the first syllable of words like 'father', 'open', 'camera' is stressed, that the middle syllable is stressed in 'potato', 'apartment', 'relation' and that the final syllable is stressed in 'about', 'receive', 'perhaps', and most people feel they have some sort of idea of what the difference is between stressed and unstressed syllables, though they might explain it in many different ways. We will mark a stressed syllable in transcription by placing a small vertical line ˈ high up, just before the syllable it relates to; the words quoted above will thus be transcribed as follows:

ˈfɑːðə	pəˈteɪtəʊ	əˈbaʊt
ˈəʊpən	əˈpɑːtmənt	rɪˈsiːv
ˈkæmr̩ə	rɪˈleɪʃn̩	pəˈhæps

What are the characteristics of stressed syllables that enable us to identify them? It is important to understand that there are two different ways of approaching this question, one being to consider what the speaker does in producing stressed syllables and the other being to consider what characteristics of sound make a syllable seem to a listener to be stressed. In other words we can study stress from the point of view of **production** and of **perception**; the two are obviously closely related, but are not identical. The production of stress is generally believed to depend on the speaker using more muscular energy than is used for unstressed syllables. Measuring muscular effort is difficult, but it seems possible, according to experimental studies, that when we produce stressed syllables, the muscles that we use to expel air from the lungs are more active, producing higher subglottal pressure. It seems probable that similar things happen with muscles in other parts of our speech apparatus.

Many experiments have been carried out on the perception of stress, and it is clear that many different sound characteristics are important in making a syllable recognisably stressed. From the perceptual point of view, all stressed syllables have one characteristic in common, and that is

prominence; stressed syllables are recognised as stressed because they are more **prominent** than unstressed syllables. What makes a syllable prominent? At least four different factors are important.

i) Most people seem to feel that stressed syllables are **louder** than unstressed; in other words, loudness is a component of prominence. In a sequence of identical syllables (e.g. ba:ba:ba:ba:), if one syllable is made louder than the others, it will be heard as stressed. However, it is important to realise that it is very difficult for a speaker to make a syllable louder without changing other characteristics of the syllable such as those explained below (ii–iv); if one literally changes *only* the loudness, the perceptual effect is not very strong.
ii) **The length** of syllables has an important part to play in prominence. If one of the syllables in our "nonsense word" ba:ba:ba:ba: is made longer than the others, there is quite a strong tendency for that syllable to be heard as stressed.
iii) Every syllable is said on some **pitch**; pitch in speech is closely related to the frequency of vibration of the vocal folds and to the musical notion of low- and high-pitched notes. It is essentially a *perceptual* characteristic of speech. If one syllable of our "nonsense word" is said with a pitch that is noticeably different from that of the others, this will have a strong tendency to produce the effect of prominence. For example, if all syllables are said with low pitch except for one said with high pitch, then the high-pitched syllable will be heard as stressed and the others as unstressed. To place some *movement* of pitch (e.g. rising or falling) on a syllable is even more effective.
iv) A syllable will tend to be prominent if it contains a vowel that is different in **quality** from neighbouring vowels. If we change one of the vowels in our "nonsense word" (e.g. ba:bi:ba:ba:) the "odd" syllable bi: will tend to be heard as stressed. This effect is not very powerful nor very important, but there is one particular way in which it is relevant in English: the previous chapter explained how the most frequently encountered vowels in weak syllables are ɪ, ʊ and ə (syllabic consonants are also quite common). We can look on stressed syllables as occurring against a "background" of these weak syllables, so that their prominence is increased by contrast with these background qualities.

Prominence, then, is produced by four main factors: (i) loudness, (ii) length, (iii) pitch and (iv) quality. Generally these four factors work together in combination, though syllables may sometimes be made prominent by means of only one or two of them. Experimental work has shown that these factors are not equally important; the strongest effect is produced by pitch, and length is also a powerful factor. Loudness and quality have much less effect.

10.2 Levels of stress

Up to this point we have talked about stress as though there was a simple distinction between "stressed" and "unstressed" syllables with no intermediate levels; such a treatment would be a two-level analysis of stress. Usually, however, we have to recognise one or more intermediate levels. It should be remembered that in this chapter we are dealing only with stress *within the word*; this means that we are looking at words as they are said in isolation, which is a rather artificial situation – we do not often say words in isolation, except for a few such as 'yes', 'no', 'possibly', 'please' and interrogative words such as 'what', 'who', etc., but looking at words in isolation does help us to see stress placement and stress levels more clearly than studying them in the context of continuous speech.

Let us begin by looking at the word 'around' ə'raʊnd, where the stress always falls clearly on the last syllable and the first syllable is weak. From the point of view of stress, the most important fact about the way we pronounce this word is that on the second syllable the pitch of the voice does not remain level, but usually falls from a higher to a lower pitch. We might diagram the pitch movement as shown below, where the two parallel lines represent the speaker's high and low pitch level:

The prominence that results from this pitch movement, or tone, gives the strongest type of stress; this is called **primary stress**.

In some words, we can observe a type of stress that is weaker than primary stress but stronger than that of the first syllable of 'around', for example in the first syllables of the words 'photographic' fəʊtəgræfɪk, 'anthropology' ænθrəpɒlədʒi. The stress in these words is called **secondary stress**. It is sometimes represented in transcription with a low mark ˌ so that the examples could be transcribed as ˌfəʊtə'græfɪk, ˌænθrə'pɒlədʒi. This convention will only be used where necessary in this course.

We have now identified two levels of stress: primary and secondary, as well as a third level which can be called **unstressed** and regarded as being the absence of any recognisable amount of prominence. These are the three levels that we will use in describing English stress. However, it is worth noting that unstressed syllables containing ə, ɪ, ʊ or a syllabic

consonant will sound less prominent than an unstressed syllable containing some other vowel. For example, the first syllable of 'poetic' pəʊˈetɪk is more prominent than the first syllable of 'pathetic' pəˈθetɪk. This *could* be used as a basis for a further division of stress levels, giving us a third and fourth level, but it seems unnecessarily complex to do so.

10.3 Placement of stress within the word

We now come to a question that causes a great deal of difficulty, particularly to foreign learners (who cannot simply dismiss it as an academic question): how can one select the correct syllable or syllables to stress in an English word? As is well known, English is not one of those languages where word stress can be decided simply in relation to the syllables of the word, as can be done in French (where the last syllable is usually stressed), Polish (where the syllable before the last – the penultimate syllable – is stressed) or Czech (where the first syllable is stressed). Many writers have said that English word stress is so difficult to predict that it is best to treat stress placement as a property of the individual word, to be learned when the word itself is learned. Certainly anyone who tries to analyse English stress placement has to recognise that it is a highly complex matter. However, it must also be recognised that in most cases when English speakers come across an unfamiliar word, they can pronounce it with the correct stress (there are exceptions to this, of course); in principle, it should be possible to discover what it is that the English speaker knows and to write in the form of rules. The following summary of ideas on stress placement in nouns, verbs and adjectives is an attempt to present a few rules in the simplest possible form. Nevertheless, practically all the rules have exceptions and readers may feel that the rules are so complex that it would be easier to go back to the idea of learning the stress for each word individually.

In order to decide on stress placement, it is necessary to make use of some or all of the following information:

i) Whether the word is morphologically **simple**, or whether it is **complex** as a result either of containing one or more affixes (that is, prefixes or suffixes) or of being a compound word.
ii) The grammatical category to which the word belongs (noun, verb, adjective, etc.).
iii) The number of syllables in the word.
iv) The phonological structure of those syllables.

It is sometimes difficult to make the decision referred to in (i). The rules

for complex words are different from those for simple words and these will be dealt with in Chapter 11. Obviously, single-syllable words present no problems – if they are pronounced in isolation they are said with primary stress.

Two-syllable words

TU 10, Ex 3

Here the *choice* is still simple: either the first or the second syllable will be stressed – not both. We will look first at verbs. The basic rule is that if the second syllable of the verb contains a long vowel or diphthong, or if it ends with more than one consonant, that second syllable is stressed. Thus:

'apply' ə'plaɪ	'attract' ə'trækt
'arrive' ə'raɪv	'assist' ə'sɪst

If the final syllable contains a short vowel and one (or no) final consonant, the first syllable is stressed. Thus:

'enter' 'entə	'open' 'əʊpən
'envy' 'envi	'equal' 'iːkwəl

A final syllable is also unstressed if it contains əʊ (e.g. 'follow' 'fɒləʊ, 'borrow' 'bɒrəʊ). Most two-syllable verbs that seem to be exceptions to the above might be interpreted as being morphologically complex (e.g. 'permit' pə'mɪt = 'per' + 'mit'), or we could simply list all such verbs as exceptions.

TU 10, Ex 3

Two-syllable simple adjectives are stressed according to the same rule, giving:

'lovely' 'lʌvli	'divine' dɪ'vaɪn
'even' 'iːvn̩	'correct' kə'rekt
'hollow' 'hɒləʊ	'alive' ə'laɪv

As with most stress rules, there are exceptions, for example 'honest' 'ɒnɪst, 'perfect' 'pɜːfɪkt or 'pɜːfekt, both of which end with two consonants but are stressed on the first syllable.

Nouns require a different rule: if the second syllable contains a short vowel the stress will usually come on the first syllable. Otherwise it will be on the second syllable.

'money' 'mʌni	'estate' ɪ'steɪt
'product' 'prɒdʌkt	'balloon' bə'luːn
'larynx' 'læriŋks	'design' dɪ'zaɪn

Other two-syllable words such as adverbs and prepositions seem to behave like verbs and adjectives.

Three-syllable words

Here we find a more complicated picture. In verbs, if the last syllable contains a short vowel and ends with not more than one consonant, that syllable will be unstressed, and stress will be placed on the preceding (penultimate) syllable. Thus:

'encounter' ɪŋ'kaʊntə 'determine' dɪ'tɜ:mɪn

If the final syllable contains a long vowel or diphthong, or ends with more than one consonant, that final syllable will be stressed. Thus:

'entertain' entə'teɪn 'resurrect' rezə'rekt

Nouns require a different rule. Here, if the final syllable contains a short vowel or əʊ, it is unstressed; if the syllable preceding this final syllable contains a long vowel or diphthong, or if it ends with more than one consonant, that middle syllable will be stressed. Thus:

'mimosa' mɪ'məʊzə 'disaster' dɪ'zɑ:stə
'potato' pə'teɪtəʊ 'synopsis' sɪ'nɒpsɪs

If the final syllable contains a short vowel and the middle syllable contains a short vowel and ends with not more than one consonant, both final and middle syllables are unstressed and the first syllable is stressed:

'quantity' 'kwɒntɪti 'emperor' 'emprə
'cinema' 'sɪnəmə 'custody' 'kʌstədi

Most of the above rules show stress tending to go on syllables containing a long vowel or diphthong and/or ending with more than one consonant. However, three-syllable simple nouns are different. If the final syllable is of this type, the stress will usually be placed on the *first* syllable. The last syllable is usually quite prominent so that in some cases it could be said to have secondary stress.

'intellect' 'ɪntəlekt 'marigold' 'mærɪgəʊld
'alkali' 'ælkəlaɪ (or 'ælkl̩aɪ) 'stalactite' 'stæləktaɪt

Adjectives seem to need the same rule, to produce stress patterns such as:

'opportune' 'ɒpətju:n 'insolent' 'ɪnsl̩ənt
'derelict' 'derəlɪkt 'anthropoid' 'ænθrəpɔɪd

The above rules do not, of course, cover all English words. They apply only to major categories of **lexical** words (nouns, verbs and adjectives in this chapter), not to **function** words such as articles and prepositions. There is not enough space in this course to deal with simple words of more than three syllables, nor with special cases of **loan words** (words

brought into the language from other languages comparatively recently). Complex and compound words are dealt with in the next chapter. One problem that we must also leave until the next chapter is the fact that there are many cases of English words with alternative possible stress patterns (e.g. 'controversy', either 'kɒntrəvɜ:si or kən'trɒvəsi). Other words, which we will look at in studying connected speech, change their stress pattern according to the context they occur in. Above all, there is not space to discuss the many exceptions to the above rules. Despite the exceptions, it seems better in many ways to attempt to produce some stress rules (even if they are rather crude and inaccurate) than to claim that there is no rule or regularity in English word stress.

Notes on problems and further reading

The subject of English stress has received a large amount of attention, and the references given here are only a small selection from an enormous number. As I implied in the notes on the previous chapter, incorrect stress placement is the major cause of intelligibility problems for foreign learners, and is therefore a subject that needs to be treated very seriously.

10.1 I have deliberately avoided using the term accent, which is found widely in the literature on stress. This is for three main reasons:

(i) it increases the complexity of the description without, in my view, contributing much to its value.
(ii) different writers do not agree with each other about the way the term should be used.
(iii) the word 'accent' is used elsewhere to refer to different varieties of pronunciation (e.g. "a foreign accent"); it is confusing to use it for a quite different purpose – to a lesser extent we also have this problem with 'stress', which can be used to refer to psychological tension.

There is a good discussion of the confusing nature of the terms 'stress' and 'accent' in Clark and Yallop (1990), pp. 288–9; see also Kreidler (1989), pp. 75–6 and Gimson (1989), sections, 9.1–9.7, 10.1–10.4.

An important study of muscular effort and air-pressure in stressed syllables is that reported in Ladefoged (1967), pp. 1–49. Although many experimental studies have been carried out since then, this remains the clearest and best-known work. On the perception of stress, the pioneering work is by Fry (e.g. 1958).

10.2 Many studies of stress have tried to deal with the question of the numbers of different levels. Arnold (1957) presents a well-reasoned approach; most writers conclude that three levels (primary, secondary and unstressed) are required, as outlined in this chapter.

10.3 It is said above that one must take one of two positions: one is that stress is *not* predictable by rule and must be learned word by word (see for example Jones (1975), sections 920–1). The second (which I prefer) is to say that, difficult though the task is, one must try to find a way of writing rules that express what native speakers naturally tend to do in placing stress (while acknowledging that there will always be a substantial residue of cases which appear to follow no regular rules). Kingdon (1958b) produced a detailed survey of stress tendencies in a corpus of many thousands of words; the analysis is based not only on phonological structure but also on etymology and morphology. The result is that it is very complex; in addition, I must note that quite a few words are given stress patterns that I do not feel are acceptable in present-day English. A more modern, and very thorough treatment is Fudge (1984), which is an extremely valuable work on the subject and in many ways takes over the place of Kingdon's earlier work.

The other well-known approach to English stress rules is radically different, being based on **generative phonology**. This is the analysis which was presented in Chomsky and Halle (1968) and has been followed by an enormous number of works exploring the same field. To anyone not familiar with this type of treatment, the presentation will seem difficult or even unintelligible; within the generative approach, many different theories, all with different names, tend to come and go with changes in fashion, which is very confusing. The following paragraph is an attempt to summarise the main characteristics of basic generative phonology, and recommends some further reading for those interested in learning about it properly.

The level of phonology is very abstract in this theory. An old-fashioned view of speech communication would be that what the speaker intends to say is coded, or *represented*, as a string of phonemes just like a phonemic transcription, and what a hearer hears is also converted by the brain from sound waves into a similar string of phonemes. But a generative phonologist would say that this phonemic representation is irrelevant; the representation in the brain of the speaker or hearer is much more complex and is often quite different from the 'real' sounds recognisable in the sound wave. You may *hear* the word 'football' pronounced as **fʊpbɔːl**, but your brain recognises the word as made up of 'foot' and 'ball' and interprets it phonologically as **fʊtbɔːl**. You may hear **ə** in the first syllable of 'photography', in the second syllable of 'photograph' and in the third syllable of 'photographer', but the brain recognises links between these **ə** vowels and **əʊ**, **ɒ** and **æ** respectively, and supplies *underlying* vowels which change

into the appropriate sound as the stress pattern changes. These vowel changes are brought about by *rules* – not the sort of rules that one might teach to language learners, but more like the instructions that one might build into a machine or write into a computer program. According to Chomsky and Halle, at the abstract phonological level there is no stress; stress (of many different levels) is the result of the application of phonological rules, which are simple enough in theory but highly complex in practice. The principles of these rules are explained first in pp. 15–43 of their book, and in greater detail in pp. 69–162.

There is a clear and thorough introductory account of generative phonology in Clark and Yallop (1990), chapter 6, and they present a brief account of the generative treatment of stress on pp. 300–3. A brief review that covers more modern forms of generative treatment is in Katamba (1989), chapter 11, section 1.

Notes for teachers

It should be clear from what is said above that from the purely practical classroom point of view, generative phonology has little to offer and could well create confusion. Producing practice and testing material for word stress is very simple: any modern English dictionary will show word stress patterns as part of word entries, and lists of these can be made either with stress marks for student to read from (as in Exercise 2 of Tape Unit 10), or without stress marks for students to put their own marks on (as in Exercise 1 of the same Tape Unit).

Written exercises (mainly for foreign learners)

Mark the stress on the following words:

1. verbs

a)	protect	*e)*	bellow
b)	clamber	*f)*	menace
c)	festoon	*g)*	disconnect
d)	detest	*h)*	entering

2. nouns

a)	language	*e)*	event
b)	captain	*f)*	jonquil
e)	career	*g)*	injury
d)	paper	*h)*	connection

(Native speakers of English should transcribe the words phonemically as well as marking stress.)

11 Complex word stress

11.1 Complex words

In the last chapter the nature of stress was explained and some broad general rules were given for deciding which syllable in a word should receive primary stress. The words that were described were called "simple" words; "simple" in this context means "not composed of more than one grammatical unit", so that, for example, the word 'care' is simple while 'careful' and 'careless' (being composed of two grammatical units each) are complex; 'carefully' and 'carelessness' are also complex, and are composed of three grammatical units each. Unfortunately, as was suggested in the last chapter, it is often difficult to decide on whether a word should be treated as complex or simple. The majority of English words of more than one syllable (**polysyllabic words**) have come from other languages whose way of constructing words is easily recognisable; for example, we can see how combining 'mit' with the prefixes 'per-', 'sub-', 'com-' produced 'permit', 'submit', 'commit', words which have come into English from Latin. Similarly, Greek has given us 'catalogue', 'analogue', 'dialogue', 'monologue', in which the prefixes 'cata-', 'ana-', 'dia-', 'mono-' are recognisable. But we cannot automatically treat the separate grammatical units of other languages as separate grammatical units of English; if we did, we would not be able to study English morphology without first studying the morphology of five or six other languages, and we would be forced into ridiculous analyses such as that the English word 'parallelepiped' was composed of four or five grammatical units (which is the case in Ancient Greek). We must accept, then, that the distinction between "simple" and "complex" words is difficult to draw, and is therefore not always useful.

Complex words are of two major types: words made from a basic **stem** word with the addition of an **affix**, and **compound words**, which are made of two (or occasionally more) independent English words (e.g. 'ice-cream', 'armchair'). We will look first at the words made with affixes; these will be called **affix words**. Affixes are of two sorts in English: **prefixes**, which come before the stem (e.g. prefix 'un-' + stem 'pleasant' → 'unpleasant') and **suffixes**, which come after the stem (e.g. stem 'good' + suffix '-ness' → 'goodness').

Affixes will have one of three possible effects on word stress:

i) The affix itself receives the primary stress (e.g. 'semi-' + 'circle' ˈsɜːkl̩ → 'semicircle' ˈsemɪsɜːkl̩; '-ality' + 'person' ˈpɜːsn̩ → 'personality' pɜːsn̩ˈælɪti).
ii) The word is stressed just as if the affix was not there (e.g. 'pleasant' ˈplezn̩t, 'unpleasant' ʌnˈplezn̩t; 'market' ˈmɑːkɪt, 'marketing' ˈmɑːkɪtɪŋ).
iii) The stress remains on the stem, not the affix, but is shifted to a different syllable (e.g. 'magnet' ˈmægnət, 'magnetic' mægˈnetɪk).

11.2 Suffixes

There are so many suffixes that it will only be possible here to examine a small proportion of them; we will concentrate on those which are common and **productive** (that is, are applied to a considerable number of stems and could be applied to more to make new English words). In the case of the others, foreign learners would probably be better advised to learn the stem + affix combination as an individual item.

One of the problems that will be encountered is that we may find words which are obviously complex but which, when we divide them into stem + affix, turn out to have a stem that it is difficult to imagine is an English word. For example, the word 'audacity' seems to be a complex word – but what is its stem? Another problem is that it is difficult in some cases to know whether a word has one, or more than one, suffix (e.g. should we analyse 'personality', from the point of view of stress assignment, as pɜːsn̩ + ælɪti or as pɜːsn̩ + æl + ɪti?). We will not spend more time here on looking at the problems, but go on to look at some generalisations about suffixes and stress. The suffixes are referred to in their spelling form.

Suffixes carrying primary stress themselves

TU 11, Ex 1

In the examples given, which seem to be the most common, the primary stress is on the first syllable of the suffix. If the stem consists of more than one syllable there will be a secondary stress on one of the syllables of the stem. This cannot fall on the last syllable of the stem, and is, if necessary, moved to an earlier syllable. For example, in 'Japan' dʒəˈpæn the primary stress is on the last syllable, but when we add the stress-carrying suffix '-ese' the primary stress is on the suffix and the secondary stress is placed not on the second syllable but on the first: 'Japanese' ˌdʒæpəˈniːz.

'-ain' (for verbs only)
'entertain' ˌentə'teɪn 'ascertain' ˌæsə'teɪn
'-ee'
'refugee' ˌrefjʊ'dʒiː 'evacuee' ɪˌvækjʊ'iː
'-eer'
'mountaineer' ˌmaʊntɪ'nɪə 'volunteer' ˌvɒlən'tɪə
'-ese'
'Portuguese' ˌpɔːtʃə'giːz 'journalese' ˌdʒɜːnl̩'iːz
'-ette'
'cigarette' sɪgr̩et 'launderette' ˌlɔːndr̩et
'-esque', '-ique'
'picturesque' ˌpɪktʃə'resk 'unique' ˌjuː'niːk

Suffixes that do not affect stress placement

TU 11, Ex 2

'-able': 'comfort' 'kʌmfət; 'comfortable' 'kʌmftəbl̩
'-age': 'anchor' 'æŋkə; 'anchorage' 'æŋkr̩ɪdʒ
'-al': 'refuse' (verb) rɪ'fjuːz; 'refusal' rɪ'fjuːzl̩
'-en': 'wide' 'waɪd; 'widen' 'waɪdn̩
'-ful': 'wonder' 'wʌndə; 'wonderful' 'wʌndəfl̩
'-ing': 'amaze' ə'meɪz; 'amazing' ə'meɪzɪŋ
'-ish': 'devil' 'devl̩; 'devilish' 'devl̩ɪʃ

(This is the rule for adjectives; verbs with stems of more than one syllable always have the stress on the syllable immediately preceding 'ish', e.g. 'replenish' rɪ'plenɪʃ, 'demolish' dɪ'mɒlɪʃ.)

'-like': 'bird' 'bɜːd; 'birdlike' 'bɜːdlaɪk
'-less': 'power' 'paʊə; 'powerless' 'paʊələs
'-ly': 'hurried' 'hʌrɪd; 'hurriedly' 'hʌrɪdli
'-ment' (noun): 'punish' 'pʌnɪʃ; 'punishment' 'pʌnɪʃmənt
'-ness': 'yellow' 'jeləʊ; 'yellowness' 'jeləʊnəs
'-ous': 'poison' 'pɔɪzn̩; 'poisonous' 'pɔɪzn̩əs
'-fy': 'glory' 'glɔːri; 'glorify' 'glɔːrɪfaɪ
'-wise': 'other' 'ʌðə; 'otherwise' 'ʌðəwaɪz
'-y' (adjective or noun): 'fun' 'fʌn; 'funny' 'fʌni

Suffixes that influence stress in the stem

PRIMARY STRESS ON THE LAST SYLLABLE OF THE STEM

TU 11, Ex 3

'-eous': 'advantage' ədˈvɑːntɪdʒ; 'advantageous' ˌædvənˈteɪdʒəs
'-graphy': 'photo' 'fəʊtəʊ; 'photography' fəˈtɒgrəfi

'-ial': 'proverb' 'prɒvɜ:b; 'proverbial' prə'vɜ:biəl
'-ic': 'climate' 'klaɪmɪt; 'climatic' klaɪ'mætɪk
'-ion': 'perfect' 'pɜ:fɪkt; 'perfection' pə'fekʃn̩
'-ious': 'injure' 'ɪndʒə; 'injurious' ɪn'dʒʊərɪəs
'-ty': 'tranquil' 'træŋkwɪl; 'tranquillity' træŋ'kwɪlɪti
'-ive': 'reflex' 'ri:fleks; 'reflexive' rɪ'fleksɪv

THE SUFFIXES '-ANCE', '-ANT' AND '-ARY'

When these suffixes are attached to single-syllable stems, the stress is almost always placed on the stem. When the stem has two syllables the stress is sometimes on the first, sometimes on the second syllable of the stem. To explain this we need to use a rule based on syllable-structure, as was done for simple words in the previous chapter. If the final syllable of the stem contains a long vowel or diphthong, or if it ends with more than one consonant, that syllable receives the stress. For example: 'importance' ɪm'pɔ:tn̩s; 'centenary' sen'ti:nɪri. Otherwise the syllable *before* the last one receives the stress: 'consonant' 'kɒnsn̩ənt; 'military' 'mɪlɪtri. We will not consider words with stems of more than two syllables. Such words are, from the point of view of this course, too complex and uncommon for it to be worth attempting to write rules.

11.3 Prefixes

We will only deal briefly with prefixes. Their effect on stress does not have the comparative regularity, independence and predictability of suffixes, and there is no prefix of one or two syllables that always carries primary stress. Consequently, the best treatment seems to be to say that stress in words with prefixes is governed by the same rules as those for words without prefixes.

11.4 Compound words

TU 11, Ex 4

The words discussed so far in this chapter have all consisted of a stem plus an affix. We now pass on to another type of word. This will be called **compound**, and its main characteristic is that it can be analysed into two words, both of which can exist independently as English words. (Some compounds are made of more than two words, but we will not consider these.) As with many of the distinctions being made in connection with stress, there are areas of uncertainty. For example, it

could be argued that 'photograph' may be divided into two independent words, 'photo' and 'graph'; yet we usually do not regard it as a compound, but as an affix word. (If someone drew a graph displaying numerical information about photos, this would perhaps be called a 'photo-graph' and the word *would* be regarded as a compound). Compounds are written in different ways; sometimes they are written as one word, e.g. 'armchair', 'sunflower', sometimes with the words separated by a hyphen, e.g. 'gear-change', 'fruit-cake', and sometimes with two words separated by a space, e.g. 'desk lamp', 'battery charger'. In this last case there would, of course be no indication to the foreign learner that the pair of words was to be treated as a compound. There is no clear dividing line between two-word compounds and pairs of words that simply happen to occur together quite frequently.

As far as stress is concerned, the question is quite simple. When is primary stress placed on the first word of the compound and when on the second? Both patterns are found. A few rules can be given, though these are not completely reliable. Words which do not receive primary stress normally have secondary stress, though for the sake of simplicity this is not marked here. Perhaps the most familiar type of compound is the one which combines two nouns, and normally has the stress on the first element, as in:

'typewriter' 'taɪprаɪtə	'suitcase' 'sjuːtkeɪs
'car-ferry' 'kɑːferi	'tea-cup' 'tiːkʌp
'sunrise' 'sʌnraɪz	

It is probably safest for foreign learners to assume that stress will normally fall in this way on other compounds; however, a variety of compounds receive stress instead on the second element. For example, compounds with an adjectival first element and the *-ed* morpheme at the end have this pattern (given in spelling only):

bad-'tempered
half-'timbered
heavy-'handed

Compounds in which the first element is a number in some form also tend to have final stress:

three-'wheeler
second-'class
five-'finger

Compounds functioning as adverbs are usually final-stressed:

head-'first
North-'East
down'stream

Finally, compounds which function as verbs and have an adverbial first element take final stress:

down-'grade
back-'pedal
ill-'treat

11.5 Variable stress

It would be wrong to imagine that the stress pattern is always fixed and unchanging in English words. Stress position may vary for one of two reasons: either as a result of the stress on other words occurring next to the word in question, or because not all speakers of RP agree on the placement of stress in some words. The former case is an aspect of connected speech that will be encountered again in Chapter 14: the main effect is that the stress on a final-stressed compound tends to move to the preceding syllable if the following word begins with a strongly stressed syllable. Thus (using some examples from the previous section):

bad-'tempered	*but*	a 'bad-tempered 'teacher
half-'timbered	*but*	a 'half-timbered 'house
heavy-'handed	*but*	a 'heavy-handed 'sentence

The second is not a serious problem, but one that foreign learners should be aware of. A well-known example is 'controversy', which is pronounced by some speakers as 'kɒntrəvɜ:si and by others as kən'trɒvəsi; it would be quite wrong to say that one version was correct and one incorrect. Other examples of different possibilities are 'ice-cream', 'kilometer' (either 'kɪləmi:tə or kɪ'lɒmɪtə) and 'formidable' ('fɔ:mɪdəbḷ or fə'mɪdəbḷ).

11.6 Word-class pairs

TU 11, Ex 5

One aspect of word stress is best treated as a separate issue. There are several dozen pairs of two-syllable words with identical spelling which differ from each other in stress placement, apparently according to word class (noun, verb or adjective). All appear to consist of prefix + stem. We shall treat them as a special type of word and give them the following rule: when a pair of prefix-plus-stem words exists, both members of which are spelt identically, one of which is a verb and

the other is either a noun or an adjective, the stress will be placed on the second syllable of the verb but on the first syllable of the noun or adjective. Some common examples are given below (V = verb, A = adjective, N = noun):

'abstract' 'æbstrækt (A), æb'strækt (V)
'conduct' 'kɒndʌkt (N), kən'dʌkt (V)
'contract' 'kɒntrækt (N), kən'trækt (V)
'contrast' 'kɒntrɑ:st (N), kən'trɑ:st (V)
'desert' 'dezət (N), dɪ'zɜ:t (V)
'escort' 'eskɔ:t (N), ɪ'skɔ:t (V)
'export' 'ekspɔ:t (N), ɪk'spɔ:t (V)
'import' 'ɪmpɔ:t (N), ɪm'pɔ:t (V)
'insult' 'ɪnsʌlt (N), ɪn'sʌlt (V)
'object' 'ɒbdʒɪkt (N), əb'dʒekt (V)
'perfect' 'pɜ:fɪkt (A), pə'fekt (V)
'permit' 'pɜ:mɪt (N), pə'mɪt (V)
'present' 'prezn̩t (N, A), prɪ'zent (V)
'produce' 'prɒdju:s (N), prə'dju:s (V)
'protest' 'prəʊtest (N), prə'test (V)
'rebel' 'rebl̩ (N), rɪ'bel (V)
'record' 'rekɔ:d (N), rɪ'kɔ:d (V)
'subject' 'sʌbdʒɪkt (N), səb'dʒekt (V)

Notes on problems and further reading

Most of the reading recommended in the notes for the previous chapter is relevant for this one too. Looking specifically at compounds, it is worth reading Fudge (1984), chapter 5.

If you wish to go more deeply into compound word stress, you should first study English word formation. Recommended reading for this is Bauer (1983).

Written exercises

1 Put stress marks on the following words (try to put secondary stress marks on as well).

a)	shop-fitter	*b)*	open-ended	*c)*	Javanese
d)	birth-mark	*e)*	anti-clockwise	*f)*	confirmation
g)	eight-sided	*h)*	fruit-cake	*i)*	defective
j)	roof-timber				

2 Write the words in phonemic transcription, including the stress marks.

12 Weak forms

Chapter 9 discussed the difference between strong and weak syllables in English. We have now moved on from looking at syllables to looking at words, and we will consider certain well-known English words that can be pronounced in two different ways, which are called **strong forms** and **weak forms**. As an example, the word 'that' can be pronounced ðæt (strong form) or ðət (weak form). The sentence 'I like that' is pronounced aɪ laɪk ðæt (strong form); the sentence 'I hope that she will' is pronounced aɪ həʊp ðət ʃi wɪl (weak form). There are roughly forty such words in English. It *is* possible to use only strong forms in speaking, and some foreigners do this. Usually they can still be understood by other speakers of English, so why is it important to learn how weak forms are used? There are two main reasons; firstly, most native speakers of English find an "all-strong-form" pronunciation unnatural and foreign-sounding, something that most learners would wish to avoid. Secondly, and more importantly, speakers who are not familiar with the use of weak forms are likely to have difficulty understanding speakers who do use weak forms; since practically all native speakers of British English use them, learners of the language need to learn about these weak forms to help them to understand what they hear.

We must distinguish between **weak forms** and **contracted forms**. Certain English words are shortened so severely (usually to a single phoneme) and so consistently that they are represented differently in informal writing, e.g. 'it is' – 'it's'; 'we have' – 'we've'; 'do not' – 'don't'. These contracted forms are discussed in a later chapter, and are not included here.

Almost all the words which have both a strong and weak form belong to a category that may be called **function words** – words that do not have a dictionary meaning in the way that we normally expect nouns, verbs, adjectives and adverbs to have. These function words are words such as auxiliary verbs, prepositions, conjunctions, etc., all of which are in certain circumstances pronounced in their strong forms but which are more frequently pronounced in their weak forms. It is important to remember that there are certain contexts where only the strong form is acceptable, and others where the weak form is the

normal pronunciation. There are some fairly simple rules; we can say that the strong form is used in the following cases:

i) For many weak-form words, when they occur at the end of a sentence. For example, the word 'of' has the weak form əv in the following sentence:

'I'm fond of chips' aɪm 'fɒnd əv 'tʃɪps

but when it comes at the end of the sentence, as in the following example, it has the strong form ɒv:

'Chips are what I'm fond of' 'tʃɪps ə 'wɒt aɪm 'fɒnd ɒv

Many of the words given below (particularly the first nine) never occur at the end of a sentence, e.g. 'the', 'your'. Some words (particularly the pronouns numbered 10–14 below) *do* occur in their weak forms in final position.

ii) When a weak-form word is being *contrasted* with another word, e.g.:

'The letter's *from* him, not *to* him' ðə 'letəz 'frɒm ɪm nɒt 'tu: ɪm

A similar case is what we might call a co-ordinated use of prepositions:

'I travel to and from London a lot' aɪ 'træv| 'tu: ən 'frɒm 'lʌndən ə 'lɒt

'A work of and about literature' ə 'wɜ:k 'ɒv ən ə'baʊt 'lɪtrɪtʃə

iii) When a weak-form word is given stress for the purpose of emphasis, e.g.:

'You *must* give me more money' ju 'mʌst 'gɪv mi 'mɔ: 'mʌni

iv) When a weak-form word is being "cited" or "quoted", e.g.:

'You shouldn't put "and" at the end of a sentence'
ju 'ʃʊdn̩t pʊt 'ænd ət ði 'end əv ə 'sentəns

Another point to remember is that when weak-form words whose spelling begins with 'h' (e.g. 'her', 'have') occur at the beginning of a sentence, the pronunciation is with initial h, even though this is usually omitted in other contexts.

TU 12, Exs 1–4

In the rest of this chapter, the most common weak-form words will be introduced.

1. 'THE'

Weak forms: ðə (before consonants)
'Shut the door' 'ʃʌt ðə 'dɔ:
ði (before vowels)
'Wait for the end' 'weɪt fə ði 'end

2. 'A', 'AN'

Weak forms: ə (before consonants)
'Read a book' 'ri:d ə 'bʊk
ən (before vowels)
'Eat an apple' 'i:t ən 'æp|

3. 'AND'
Weak form: ən (sometimes n̩ after t, d, s, z, ʃ)
'Come and see' 'kʌm ən 'siː
'Fish and chips' 'fɪʃ n̩ 'tʃɪps

4. 'BUT'
Weak form: bət 'It's good but expensive' ɪts 'gʊd bət ɪkˈspensɪv

5. 'THAT' (This word only has a weak form when used in a relative clause; when used with a demonstrative sense it is always pronounced in its strong form.)
Weak form: ðət 'The price is the thing that annoys me' ðə 'praɪs ɪz ðə 'θɪŋ ðət əˈnɔɪz mi

6. 'THAN'
Weak form: ðən 'Better than ever' 'betə ðən 'evə

7. 'HIS' (when it occurs before a noun)
Weak form: ɪz (hɪz at the beginning of a sentence)
'Take his name' 'teɪk ɪz 'neɪm
(Another sense of 'his', as in 'it was his', or 'his was late', always has the strong form.)

8. 'HER' (When used with possessive sense, preceding a noun; as an object pronoun, this can also occur at the end of a sentence.)
Weak forms: ə (before consonants)
'Take her home' 'teɪk ə 'həʊm
ər (before vowels)
'Take her out' 'teɪk ər 'aʊt

9. 'YOUR'
Weak forms: jə (before consonants)
'Take your time' 'teɪk jə 'taɪm
jər (before vowels)
'On your own' 'ɒn jər 'əʊn

10. 'SHE', 'HE', 'WE', 'YOU'
This group of pronouns has weak forms pronounced with weaker vowels than the iː and uː of their strong forms. I will use the symbols i and u (in preference to ɪ and ʊ) to represent them. There is little difference in the pronunciation in different places in the sentence, except in the case of 'he'.
Weak forms:
'SHE' ʃi
'Why did she read it?' 'waɪ dɪd ʃi 'riːd ɪt
'Who *is* she?' 'huː 'ɪz ʃi
'HE' i (the weak form is usually pronounced without h except at the beginning of a sentence)
'Which did he choose?' 'wɪtʃ dɪd i 'tʃuːz
'He was late, wasn't he?' hi wəz 'leɪt 'wɒzn̩t i

'WE' wi

'How can we get there?' 'haʊ kən wi 'get ðeə

'We need that, don't we?' wi 'ni:d ðæt 'dəʊnt wi

'YOU' ju

'What do you think?' 'wɒt də ju 'θɪŋk

'You like it, do you?' ju 'laɪk ɪt 'du: ju

11. 'HIM'

Weak form: ɪm

'Leave him alone' 'li:v ɪm ə'ləʊn

'I've seen him' aɪv 'si:n ɪm

12. 'HER'

Weak form: ə (hə when sentence-initial)

'Ask her to come' 'ɑ:sk ə tə 'kʌm

'I've met her' aɪv 'met ə

13. 'THEM'

Weak form: ðəm

'Leave them here' 'li:v ðəm 'hɪə

'Eat them' 'i:t ðəm

14. 'US'

Weak form: əs

'Write us a letter' 'raɪt əs ə 'letə

'They invited all of us' ðeɪ ɪn'vaɪtɪd 'ɔ:l əv əs

The next group of words (some prepositions and other function words) occur in their strong forms when they are final in a sentence; examples of this are given. (19 is a partial exception.)

15. 'AT'

Weak form: ət

'I'll see you at lunch' aɪl 'si: ju ət 'lʌnʃ

In final position: æt

'What's he shooting at?' 'wɒts i 'ʃu:tɪŋ æt

16. 'FOR'

Weak form: fə (before consonants)

'Tea for two' 'ti: fə 'tu:

fər (before vowels)

'Thanks for asking' 'θæŋks fər 'ɑ:skɪŋ

In final position: fɔ:

'What's that for?' 'wɒts 'ðæt fɔ:

17. 'FROM'

Weak form: frəm

'I'm home from work' aɪm 'həʊm frəm 'wɜ:k

In final position: from

'Here's where it came from' 'hɪəz weər ɪt 'keɪm from

18. 'OF'

Weak form: əv

'Most of all' 'məʊst əv 'ɔ:l

In final position: ɒv

'Someone I've heard of' 'sʌmwʌn aɪv 'hɜ:d ɒv

19. 'TO'

Weak forms: tə (before consonants)

'Try to stop' 'traɪ tə 'stɒp

tu (before vowels)

'Time to eat' 'taɪm tu 'i:t

In final position: tu (It is not usual to use the strong form tu:, and the pre-consonantal weak form tə is never used.)

'I don't want to' aɪ 'dəʊnt 'wɒnt tu

20. 'AS'

Weak form: əz

'As much as possible' əz 'mʌtʃ əz 'pɒsɪbl̩

In final position: æz

'That's what it was sold as' 'ðæts 'wɒt ɪt wəz 'səʊld æz

21. 'SOME'

This word is used in two different ways. In one sense (typically, when it occurs before a countable noun, meaning "an unknown individual") it has the strong form:

'I think some animal broke it' aɪ 'θɪŋk sʌm 'ænɪml̩ 'brəʊk ɪt

It is also used before uncountable nouns (meaning "an unspecified amount of") and before other nouns in the plural (meaning "an unspecified number of"), in such uses it has the weak form səm.

'Have some more tea' 'hæv səm 'mɔ: 'ti:

In final position: sʌm

'I've got some' aɪv 'gɒt sʌm

22. 'THERE'

When this word has a demonstrative function, it always occurs in its strong form ðeə (ðeər before vowels), e.g.

'There it is' 'ðeər ɪt 'ɪz

'Put it there' 'pʊt ɪt 'ðeə

Weak forms: ðə (before consonants)

'There should be a rule' ðə 'ʃʊd bi ə 'ru:l

ðər (before vowels)
'There is' ðər 'ɪz

In final position the pronunciation may be ðə or ðəə.
'There isn't any, is there?' ðər 'ɪzn̩t eni 'ɪz ðə
or ðər 'ɪzn̩t eni 'ɪz ðəə

The remaining weak-form words are all auxiliary verbs, which are always used in conjunction with (or at least implying) another ("full") verb. It is important to remember that in their negative form (i.e. combined with 'not') they never have the weak pronunciation, and some (e.g. 'don't', 'can't') have different vowels from their non-negative strong forms.

23. 'CAN', 'COULD'

Weak forms: kən, kəd
'They can wait' 'ðeɪ kən 'weɪt
'He could do it' 'hi: kəd 'du: ɪt

In final position: kæn, kʊd
'I think we can' aɪ 'θɪŋk wi kæn
'Most of them could' 'məʊst əv ðəm kʊd

24. 'HAVE', 'HAS', 'HAD'

Weak forms: əv, əz, əd (with initial h in initial position)
'Which have you seen?' 'wɪtʃ əv ju 'si:n
'Which has been best?' 'wɪtʃ əz 'bi:n 'best
'Most had gone home' 'məʊst əd 'gɒn 'həʊm

In final position: hæv, hæz, hæd
'Yes, we have' 'jes wi 'hæv
'I think she has' aɪ 'θɪŋk ʃi 'hæz
'I thought we had' aɪ 'θɔ:t wi 'hæd

25. 'SHALL', 'SHOULD'

Weak forms: ʃəl or ʃl̩; ʃəd
'We shall need to hurry' wi ʃl̩ 'ni:d tə 'hʌri
'I should forget it' 'aɪ ʃəd fə'get ɪt

In final position: ʃæl, ʃʊd
'I think we shall' aɪ 'θɪŋk wi 'ʃæl
'So you should' 'səʊ ju 'ʃʊd

26. 'MUST'

This word is sometimes used with the sense of forming a conclusion or deduction, e.g. 'she left at 8 o'clock, so she must have arrived by now'; when 'must' is used in this way, it is rather less

likely to occur in its weak form than when it is being used in its more familiar sense of "obligation".

Weak forms: məs (before consonants)

'You must try harder' ju məs 'traɪ 'hɑːdə

məst (before vowels)

'He must eat more' hi məst 'iːt 'mɔː

In final position: mʌst

'She certainly must' ʃi 'sɜːtn̩li 'mʌst

27. 'DO', 'DOES'

Weak forms:

'DO' də (before consonants)

'Why do they like it?' 'wɑɪ də ðeɪ 'laɪk ɪt

du (before vowels)

'Why do all the cars stop?' 'wɑɪ du ɔːl ðə 'kɑːz 'stɒp

'DOES' dəz

'When does it arrive?' 'wen dəz ɪt ə'raɪv

In final position: duː, dʌz

'We don't smoke, but some people do' 'wiː dəʊnt 'sməʊk bət 'sʌm 'piːpl̩ 'duː

'I think John does' aɪ 'θɪŋk 'dʒɒn dʌz

28. 'AM', 'ARE', 'WAS', 'WERE'

Weak forms: əm

'Why am I here?' 'wɑɪ əm aɪ 'hɪə

ə (before consonants)

'Here are the plates' 'hɪər ə ðə 'pleɪts

ər (before vowels)

'The coats are in there' ðə 'kəʊts ər ɪn 'ðeə

wəz 'He was here a minute ago' hi wəz 'hɪər ə 'mɪnɪt ə'gəʊ

wə (before consonants)

'The papers were late' ðə 'peɪpəz wə 'leɪt

wər (before vowels)

'The questions were easy' ðə 'kwestʃənz wər 'iːzi

In final position: æm, ɑː, wɒz, wɜː

'She's not as old as I am' ʃiz 'nɒt əz 'əʊld əz 'aɪ æm

'I know the Smiths are' aɪ 'nəʊ ðə 'smɪθs ɑː

'The last record was' ðə 'lɑ:st
'rekɔ:d wɒz
'They weren't as cold as we were'
ðeɪ 'wɜ:nt əz 'kəʊld əz 'wi: wɜ:

Notes on problems and further reading

This chapter is almost entirely practical. All books about English pronunciation devote a lot of attention to these words. Some of them give a great deal of importance to using weak forms, but do not stress the importance of also knowing when to use the strong forms, something which I feel is very important. See Mortimer (1984).

Written exercises

In the following sentences, the transcription for the weak-form words is left blank. Fill in the blanks, taking care to use the appropriate form.

1. I want her to park that car over there.
   aɪ wɒnt pɑ:k kɑ:r əʊvə
2. Of all the proposals, the one that you made is the silliest.
   ɔ:l prəpəʊzl̩z wʌn meɪd sɪliəst
3. Jane and Bill could have driven them to and from the party.
   dʒeɪn bɪl drɪvən pɑ:ti
4. To come to the point, what shall we do for the rest of the week?
   kʌm pɔɪnt wɒt rest wi:k
5. Has anyone got an idea where it came from?
   enɪwʌn gɒt aɪdɪə weər ɪt keɪm
6. Pedestrians must always use the crossings provided for them.
   pədestrɪənz ɔ:lwɪz ju:z krɒsɪŋz prəvaɪdɪd
7. Each one was a perfect example of the art that had been developed there
   i:tʃ wʌn pɜ:fɪkt ɪgzɑ:mpl̩ ɑ:t bi:n dɪveləpt

13 Problems in phonemic analysis

The concept of the phoneme was introduced in Chapter 5, and a few theoretical problems connected with phonemic analysis have been mentioned in other chapters. The general assumption (as in most phonetics books) has been that speech is composed of phonemes and that usually whenever a speech sound is produced by a speaker it is possible to identify which phoneme that sound belongs to. While this is often true, we must recognise that there are several quite serious theoretical problems that should be considered. From the comparatively simple point of view of learning pronunciation, these problems are not particularly important; however, from the point of view of learning about the phonology of English they are too important to ignore.

There are two main areas of difficulty. The first will be called the problem of **analysis**: we may accept the principle of the phoneme as a fundamental unit in language, but we find difficulty in deciding what *are* the phonemes of a language (in our case, of English). The result of this is that different writers produce different analyses of the phonemic system of English; it is clear that phonemic analysis is not as clear and simple as studying the letters of the alphabet.

The second area of difficulty will be called the problem of **assignment**. As an example of what is meant by "assignment", we might say that a botanist who discovers an unusual plant will try to assign it to a known species; if this is found impossible, it will be decided that a new species has been discovered, and that future examples of this plant will be assigned to this new species. We find many cases where it is difficult to assign a particular speech sound to a particular phoneme.

13.1 Problems of analysis

The affricates tʃ and dʒ are, phonetically, composed of a plosive followed by a fricative, as explained in Chapter 6. It is possible to treat each of the pair tʃ, dʒ as a single consonant phoneme (we will call this the one-phoneme analysis of tʃ, dʒ), and it is also possible to say that

they are composed of two phonemes each – either t plus ʃ or d plus ʒ – all of which are already established as independent phonemes of English; this will be called the **two-phoneme analysis** of tʃ and dʒ. If we adopted the two-phoneme analysis, the words 'church' and 'judge' would be composed of five phonemes each, like this:

t·ʃ·ɜː·t·ʃ d·ʒ·ʌ·d·ʒ

instead of the three phonemes, resulting from the one-phoneme analysis:

tʃ·ɜː·tʃ dʒ·ʌ·dʒ

and there would be no separate tʃ and dʒ phonemes. But how can we decide which analysis is preferable? The two-phoneme analysis has one main advantage: if there are no separate tʃ and dʒ phonemes, then our total set of English consonants is smaller. Many phonologists have claimed that one should prefer the analysis which is the most "economical" in the number of phonemes it results in. The argument for this might be based on the claim that when we speak to someone we are using a "code", and the most efficient codes do not use unnecessary symbols. Further, it could be claimed that a phonological analysis is a type of scientific theory, and a scientific theory should be stated as economically as possible. Both of these points of view have serious weaknesses, but in fact the one-phoneme analysis is generally chosen by phonologists. Why is this? There are several arguments; no single one of them is conclusive, but added together they are felt to make the one-phoneme analysis seem preferable. We will look briefly at some of these arguments.

i) One argument could be called "phonetic" or "allophonic": if it could be shown that the phonetic quality of the t and ʃ (or d and ʒ) in tʃ, dʒ was clearly different from realisations of t, ʃ, d, ʒ found elsewhere in similar contexts, this would support the analysis of tʃ, dʒ as separate phonemes. As an example, it might be claimed that ʃ in 'hutch' hʌtʃ was different (perhaps in having shorter duration) from ʃ in 'hush' or 'Welsh' hʌʃ, welʃ; or it might be claimed that the place of articulation of t in 'watch apes' wɒtʃ eɪps is different from that of t in 'what shapes' wɒt ʃeɪps. This argument is a weak one: there is no clear evidence that such phonetic differences exist, and even if there *were* such evidence, it would be easy to produce explanations for the differences that did not depend on phonemic analyses (e.g. the position of the word boundary in 'watch apes', 'what shapes'). In fact there is some allophonic evidence that supports the two-phoneme analysis: we find this in the occurrence of glottalisation (which was described at the end of Chapter 6). If we look at glottalisation of p, t, k and then tʃ in RP we find the

following pattern of occurrence: (phonetic transcription showing glottalisation is given in square brackets).

– One-consonant phoneme occurring medially; no glottalisation is found:

  'upper' ʌpə 'better' betə 'backer' bækə

– Two-consonant phonemes occurring medially; glottalisation is normal:

  'optic' ɒptɪk [ɒʔptɪk] 'Betsy' betsi [beʔtsi]
  'boxer' bɒksə [bɒʔksə]

– tʃ occurring medially; glottalisation is normal after a stressed syllable:

  'butcher' 'bʊtʃə ['bʊʔtʃə]
  'matches' 'mætʃɪz ['mæʔtʃɪz]
  'watching' 'wɒtʃɪŋ ['wɒʔtʃɪŋ]

This makes the medial occurrence of tʃ look more similar to a medial two-consonant-phoneme cluster.

The phonetic argument is therefore inconclusive.

ii) It could be argued that the proposed phonemes tʃ and dʒ (if one were arguing for the one-phoneme analysis) have distributions similar to other consonants, while other combinations of plosive plus fricative do not. It can easily be shown that tʃ and dʒ are found initially, medially and finally, and that no other combination (e.g. pf, dz, tθ) has such a wide distribution. However, several consonants *are* generally accepted as phonemes of RP despite not being free to occur in all positions (e.g. r, w, j, h, ŋ, ʒ), so this argument, though supporting the one-phoneme analysis, does not actually *prove* that tʃ, dʒ must be classed with other single-consonant phonemes.

iii) If tʃ and dʒ were able to combine quite freely with other consonants to form consonant clusters, this would support the one-phoneme analysis. Initially, however, tʃ and dʒ never occur in clusters with other consonants. In final position in the syllable, we find that tʃ can be followed by t (e.g. 'watched' wɒtʃt) and dʒ by d (e.g. 'wedged' wedʒd). tʃ and dʒ can be preceded by l (e.g. 'squelch' skweltʃ, 'bulge' bʌldʒ); ʒ is never preceded by l, and ʃ is preceded by l only in a few words and names, e.g. 'Welsh', 'Walsh' welʃ, wɒlʃ. A fairly similar situation is found if we ask if n can precede tʃ and dʒ; some RP speakers have ntʃ in 'lunch', 'French', etc., and never pronounce the sequence nʃ within a syllable, while other speakers always have nʃ in these contexts and never ntʃ. It seems, then, that no contrast between syllable-final lʃ and ltʃ exists in RP, and the same appears to be true in relation to nʃ and ntʃ and to nʒ and ndʒ. There are no other possibilities for final consonant clusters containing tʃ and dʒ, except that the pre-initial l or n may occur in combination with post-final t, d as in 'squelched' skweltʃt, 'hinged' hɪndʒd. It could

not, then, be said that tʃ and dʒ combine freely with other consonants in forming consonant clusters; this is particularly noticeable in initial position.

How would the two-phoneme analysis affect the syllable-structure framework that was introduced in Chapter 8? Initial tʃ, dʒ would have to be interpreted as initial t, d plus post-initial ʃ, ʒ, with the result that the post-initial set of consonants would have to contain l, r, w, j and also ʃ, ʒ – consonants which are rather different from the other four and which could only combine with t, d. (The only alternative would be to put t, d with s in the pre-initial category, again with very limited possibilities of combining with another consonant.)

iv) Finally, it has been suggested that if native speakers of English who have not been taught phonetics feel that tʃ and dʒ are each "one sound", we should be guided by their "intuitions" and prefer the one-phoneme analysis. The problem with this is that discovering what untrained (or "naive") speakers feel about their own language is not as easy as it might sound. Presumably it would be necessary to ask questions like this: "Would you say that the word 'chip' begins with *one* sound, like 'tip' and 'sip', or with *two* sounds, like 'trip' and 'skip'?" But the results would be distorted by the fact that two consonant letters are used in the spelling; to do the test properly one should use illiterate subjects, which raises many further problems.

This rather long discussion of the phonemic status of tʃ and ʒ shows how difficult it can be to reach a conclusion in phonemic analysis. For the rest of this chapter a number of different problems will be discussed comparatively briefly. I have already mentioned (in Chapter 6) problems of analysis in connection with the sounds usually transcribed hw and hj. The velar nasal ŋ, described in Chapter 7, also raises a lot of analysis problems; some writers have suggested that the correct analysis is one in which there is no ŋ phoneme, and this sound is treated as an allophone of the phoneme n that occurs when it precedes the phoneme g. It was explained in Chapter 7 that in certain contexts no g is pronounced, but the theory mentioned in the last sentence would claim that at an abstract level there *is* a g phoneme, though in certain contexts the g is not actually pronounced. ŋ is therefore, according to this theory, an allophone of n.

The analysis of the English vowel system presented in Chapters 2 and 3 contains a large number of phonemes, and it is not surprising that some phonologists (who believed in the importance of keeping the total number of phonemes small) proposed different analyses which contain less than ten vowel phonemes and treat all long vowels and diphthongs as composed of two phonemes each. There are different ways of doing

this: one way is to treat long vowels and diphthongs as composed of two vowel phonemes. If we start with a set of basic or "simple" vowel phonemes ɪ, e, æ, ʌ, ɒ, ʊ, ə it would then be possible to make up long vowels by using vowels twice. Our usual transcription is given in brackets:

ɪɪ (iː) ææ (ɑː) ɒɒ (ɔː) ʊʊ (uː) əə (ɜː)

This can be made to look less unusual by choosing different symbols for the basic vowels. Diphthongs are made from a simple vowel phoneme followed by one of ɪ, ʊ, ə. Triphthongs are made from a basic vowel plus one of ɪ, ʊ followed by ə, and are therefore composed of three phonemes.

Another way of doing this kind of analysis is to treat long vowels and diphthongs as composed of a vowel plus a consonant; this may seem a less obvious way of proceeding, but it was for many years the choice of most American phonologists. The idea is that long vowels and diphthongs are composed of a basic vowel phoneme followed by one of j, w, h (in the case of RP). Thus the diphthongs could be made up like this (our usual transcription is given in brackets):

ej (eɪ)	əw (əʊ)	ɪh (ɪə)
æj (aɪ)	æw (aʊ)	eh (eə)
ɒj (ɔɪ)		ʊh (ʊə)

Long vowels:

ɪj (iː) æh (ɑː) ɒh (ɔː) əh (ɜː) ʊw (uː)

Diphthongs and long vowels are now of exactly the same phonological composition. An important point about this analysis is that j, w, h do not otherwise occur finally in the syllable. In this analysis, the inequality of distribution is corrected. There are many other ways of analysing the very complex vowel system of English, some of which are extremely ingenious. Each has its own advantages and disadvantages.

A final analysis problem that we will consider is that mentioned at the end of Chapter 8 – how to deal with syllabic consonants. It has to be recognised that syllabic consonants are a problem – they *are* phonologically different from their non-syllabic counterparts. How do we account for the minimal pairs given in Chapter 9?

syllabic	*non-syllabic*
'coddling' kɒdl̩ɪŋ	'codling' kɒdlɪŋ
'Hungary' hʌŋgr̩i	'hungry' hʌŋgri

One possibility is to add new consonant phonemes to our list. We could invent the phonemes l̩, r̩, n̩ etc. The distribution of these consonants would be rather limited, but the main problem would be fitting them into the pattern of syllable structure. For a word like 'button' bʌtn̩ or

'bottle' bɒtl̩, it would be necessary to add n̩ and l̩ to the first post-final set; the argument would be extended to include the r̩ in 'Hungary'. But if these consonants now form part of a syllable-final consonant cluster, how do we account for the fact that English speakers hear the consonants as extra syllables? The question might be answered by saying that the new phonemes are to be classed as vowels. Another possibility is to set up a phoneme that we might name **syllabicity**, symbolised with the mark ̩. Then the word 'codling' would consist of the following six phonemes: k·ɒ·d·l·ɪ·ŋ, while the word 'coddling' would consist of the following *seven* phonemes: k·ɒ·d· (l and simultaneously ̩) ·ɪ·ŋ. This is a superficially attractive theory, but the proposed phoneme is nothing like the other phonemes we have identified up to this point – putting it simply, it doesn't have any sound.

Some phonologists maintain that a syllabic consonant is really a case of a vowel and a consonant that have become combined. Let us suppose that the vowel is ə. We could then say that, for example, 'Hungary' is phonemically hʌngəri while 'hungry' is hʌŋgri; it would then be necessary to say that the vowel phoneme in the phonemic representation is not pronounced as a vowel, but instead causes the following consonant to become syllabic. This is an example of the abstract view of phonology where the way a word is represented phonemically may be significantly different from the actual sequence of sounds heard, so that the phonetic and the phonemic levels are quite widely separated.

13.2 Problems of assignment

One problem of assignment has already been encountered: in Chapter 9 we saw how, although ɪ and iː are clearly distinct in most contexts, there are other contexts where we find a sound which cannot clearly be said to belong to one or other of these two phonemes. The suggested solution to this problem was to use the symbol ɨ, which does not represent any single phoneme; a similar proposal was made for ʉ. We use the term **neutralisation** for cases where contrasts between phonemes which exist in other places in the language disappear in particular contexts. A clearer case of neutralisation can be found in the case of plosives following s in syllable-initial position. Words like 'spill', 'still', 'skill' are usually represented with the phonemes p, t, k following the s. But, as many writers have pointed out, it would be quite reasonable to transcribe them with b, d, g instead. For example,

b, d, g are unaspirated while p, t, k in syllable-initial position are usually aspirated; but in sp, st, sk we find an unaspirated plosive – there could be a strong argument for transcribing them as sb, sd, sg. We do not do this, perhaps because of the spelling, but it is important to remember that the contrasts between p and b, between t and d and between k and g are neutralised in this context.

There are some other cases which are not so clear. It has been suggested that there is not really a contrast between ə and ʌ, since ə only occurs in weak syllables and no minimal pairs can be found to show a clear contrast between ə and ʌ in unstressed syllables (though there have been some ingenious attempts). This has resulted in a proposal that one phoneme symbol (e.g. ə) be used for representing any occurrence of ə or ʌ, so that 'cup' would be transcribed 'kəp and 'upper' as 'əpə. This new ə phoneme would have two allophones, one being [ə] and the other [ʌ]; the stress mark would indicate the [ʌ] allophone and in syllables not marked for stress it would be unimportant whether [ə] or [ʌ] was used.

Other phonologists have suggested that ə is an allophone of several other vowels; for example, compare the middle two syllables in the words 'economy' ɪ'kɒnəmi and 'economic' 'iːkə'nɒmɪk – it appears that when the stress moves away from the syllable containing ɒ the vowel becomes ə. Similarly, compare 'Germanic' dʒɜːmænɪk with 'German' 'dʒɜːmən – when the stress is taken away from the syllable mæn, the vowel weakens to ə. Many similar examples could be constructed with other vowels; some possibilities may be suggested by the list of words given in 9.2 to show the different spellings that can be pronounced with ə. The conclusion that could be drawn from this argument is that ə is not a phoneme of English, but is an allophone of several different vowel phonemes when those phonemes occur in an unstressed syllable. The argument is in some ways quite an attractive one, but since it leads to a rather complex and abstract phonemic analysis it is not adopted for this course.

This chapter was intended to show that there are many ways of analysing the English phonemic system, each with its own advantages and disadvantages. We need to consider the practical goal of teaching or learning about English pronunciation, and for this purpose a very abstract analysis would be unsuitable. This is one criterion for judging the value of an analysis; unless one believes in carrying out phonological analysis for purely aesthetic reasons, the only other important criterion is whether the analysis corresponds to the representation of sounds in the human brain. We do not yet know much about this but the brain is so powerful and complex that it is very unlikely that any of the analyses proposed so far bear much resemblance to this reality; they are too heavily influenced by the theoretician's preoccupation with economy, elegance and simplicity.

Notes on problems and further reading

13.1 The analysis of tʃ and dʒ is one of the most intractable problems. The general principles in traditional phoneme theory have been set out by Trubetzkoy (1939); the German original has been translated into English (1969), and the relevant section of this translation was reprinted in Fudge (1973), pp. 65–70. The problem is also discussed in Gimson (1980), pp. 172–4. The phonemic analysis of the velar nasal has already been discussed above (notes on Chapter 7).

The 'double vowel' interpretation of English long vowels was put forward by MacCarthy (1952) and is used by Kreidler (1989).

The 'vowel-plus-semivowel' interpretation of long vowels and diphthongs was almost universally accepted by American (and some British) writers from the 1940s to the 1960s, and still pervades contemporary descriptions. It has the advantage of being economical on phonemes and very 'neat and tidy'. The analysis in this form is presented in Trager and Smith (1951). This work was claimed to provide an analysis that could produce a phonologically distinct representation for all English short vowels, long vowels and diphthongs. An early attack on this view was made by Sledd (1955), pp. 316–24. Kreidler (1989) reviews this approach and others (pp. 293–304), but his treatment of Gimson's vowel analysis is inaccurate.

In generative phonology, the claim is that, at the abstract level, vowels are simply tense or lax. If they are lax they are realised as short vowels, if tense as diphthongs (this category including what I have been calling long vowels). The quality of the first element of the diphthongs/long vowels is modified by some phonological rules, while other rules supply the second element automatically. This is set out in Chomsky and Halle (1968), pp. 178–87.

13.2 The 'problems of assignment' have all been mentioned briefly in earlier chapters. On the interpretation of sp, st, sk, see Davidsen-Nielsen (1969). There is an interesting discussion of the ə – ʌ contrast in Wells (1970), pp. 233–5. The idea that ə is an allophone of many English vowels is not a new one – for example, it was discussed in Bloomfield (1933), though unfortunately this is left out of the edition sold in Britain. In generative phonology, ə results from *vowel reduction* in vowels which have never received stress in the process of the application of stress rules. This is explained – in rather difficult terms – in Chomsky and Halle (1968), pp. 110–26.

Note for teachers

Since this is a theoretical chapter it is difficult to come up with practical work. I do not feel that it is helpful for students to do exercises on using different ways of transcribing phonemes – just learning one set of conventions is difficult enough. Some books on phonology give exercises on the phonemic analysis of other languages (e.g. Katamba, 1989; Hawkins, 1984), but though these are useful, I do not feel that it would be appropriate in this book to divert attention from English. The exercises given below therefore concentrate on bits of *phonetically* transcribed English which involve problems when a phonemic representation is required.

Written exercises

The following are all exercises in which you must look at phonetically transcribed material from different English accents, and decide on the best way to transcribe them phonemically. Information is given where necessary about the meaning of the phonetic symbols.

1. *a)* 'thing' [θɪŋg]
   b) 'think' [θɪŋk]
   c) 'thinking' [θɪŋkɪŋg]
   d) 'finger' [fɪŋgə]
   e) 'singer' [sɪŋgə]
   f) 'singing' [sɪŋgɪŋg]
2. It often happens in rapid speech that a nasal consonant disappears when it comes between a vowel and another consonant (for example, this may happen to the n in 'front': when this happens the preceding vowel becomes nasalised (some of the air escapes through the nose). We symbolise a nasalised vowel in phonetic transcription by putting the ˜ diacritic above it; for example, the word 'front' may be pronounced [frʌ̃t]. Nasalised vowels are found in the words given in phonetic transcription below. Transcribe them phonemically.
   a) [sa̰ʊ̈d]
   b) [æ̃gə]
   c) [kɔ̃ːt]
   d) [kæ̃pə]
   e) [bɔ̃d]
3. When the t phoneme occurs between vowels it is sometimes pronounced as a "tap" (the tongue blade strikes the alveolar ridge sharply,

producing a very brief voiced plosive: the phonetic symbol is ɾ); this is very common in American English, and is also found in a number of accents in England: think of a typical American pronunciation of "getting better" [gɛɾɪŋ bɛɾə].

Look at the transcriptions of a number of words given below and see if you can work out (for the accent in question) the environment in which [ɾ] is found.

a)	'betting'	[bɛɾɪŋ]	*d)*	'attitude'	[æɾɪtʃuːd]
b)	'bedding'	[bɛdɪŋ]	*e)*	'time'	[tʰaɪm]
c)	'attend'	[ətʰɛnd]	*f)*	'tight'	[tʰaɪt]

14 Aspects of connected speech

Many years ago scientists tried to develop machines that produced speech from a vocabulary of pre-recorded words; the machines were designed to join these words together to form sentences. For very limited messages, such as those of a "talking clock", this technique was usable, but for other purposes the quality of the speech was so unnatural that it was practically unintelligible. The failure of this "mechanical speech" approach (which eventually led to the development of **speech synthesis by rule**) has many lessons to teach us about pronunciation teaching and learning, and it will be useful, in looking at connected speech, to bear in mind the difference between the way humans speak and what would be found in "mechanical speech".

14.1 Rhythm

The notion of **rhythm** involves some noticeable event happening at regular intervals of time; one can detect the rhythm of a heart-beat, of a flashing light or of a piece of music. It has often been claimed that English speech is rhythmical, and that the rhythm is detectable in the regular occurrence of stressed syllables; of course, it is not suggested that the timing is as regular as a clock – the regularity of occurrence is only relative. The theory that English has **stress-timed rhythm** implies that stressed syllables will tend to occur at relatively regular intervals whether they are separated by unstressed syllables or not; this would not be the case in "mechanical speech". An example is given below. In this sentence, the stressed syllables are given numbers: syllables 1 and 2 are not separated by any unstressed syllables, 2 and 3 are separated by one unstressed syllable, 3 and 4 by two and 4 and 5 by three.

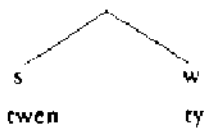
```
 1     2          3          4              5
'Walk 'down the 'path to the 'end of the ca'nal
```

The stress-timed rhythm theory states that the times from each stressed syllable to the next will tend to be the same, irrespective of the number of intervening unstressed syllables. The theory also claims that while

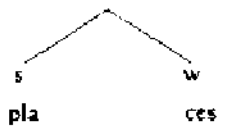
some languages (e.g. Russian and Arabic) have stress-timed rhythm similar to that of English, others (such as French, Telugu and Yoruba) have a different rhythmical structure called **syllable-timed rhythm**; in these languages, all syllables, whether stressed or unstressed, tend to occur at regular time-intervals and the time between stressed syllables will be shorter or longer in proportion to the number of unstressed syllables. Some writers have developed theories of English rhythm in which a unit of rhythm, the **foot**, is used (with an obvious parallel in the metrical analysis of verse); the foot begins with a stressed syllable and includes all following unstressed syllables up to (but not including) the following stressed syllable. The example sentence given above would be divided into feet as follows:

1	2	3	4	5
'Walk	'down the	'path to the	'end of the ca	'nal

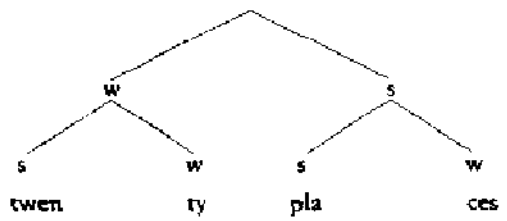
Some theories of rhythm go further than this, and point to the fact that some feet are stronger than others, producing strong-weak patterns in larger pieces of speech above the level of the foot. To understand how this could be done, let's start with a simple example: the word 'twenty' has one strong and one weak syllable, forming one foot. A diagram of its rhythmical structure can be made, where **s** stands for "strong" and **w** stands for "weak".



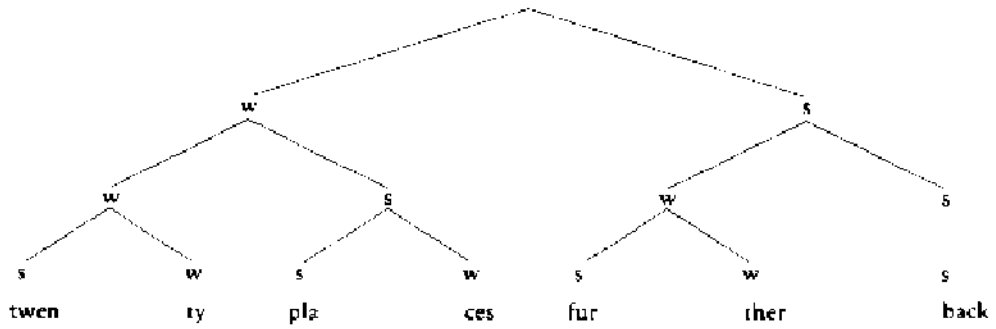
The word 'places' has the same form:



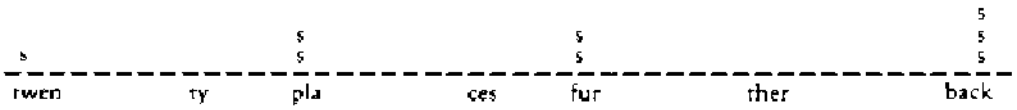
Now consider the phrase 'twenty places', where 'places' will normally carry stronger stress than 'twenty', i.e. will be rhythmically stronger. We can make our "tree diagram" grow to look like this:



If we then look at this phrase in the context of a longer phrase 'twenty places further back', and build up the 'further back' part in a similar way, we would end up with an even more elaborate structure:



By analysing speech in this way we are able to show the relationships between strong and weak elements, and the different levels of stress that we find. The strength of any particular syllable can be measured by counting up the number of times an s symbol occurs above it; the levels in the sentence shown above can be diagrammed like this (leaving out syllables that have never received stress at any level):



The above pattern may be correct for very slow speech, but we must now look at what happens to the rhythm in normal speech: many English speakers would feel that, although in 'twenty places' the right-hand foot is the stronger, the word 'twenty' is stronger than 'places' in 'twenty places further back' when spoken in conversational style. It is widely claimed that English speech tends towards a regular alternation between stronger and weaker, and tends to adjust stress levels to bring this about. The effect is particularly noticeable in cases such as the following:

> compact (adjective) **kəm'pækt** *but* compact disc **'kɒmpækt 'dɪsk**
> thirteen θɜː'tiːn *but* thirteenth place **'θɜːtiːnθ 'pleɪs** Westminster **west'mɪnstə** *but* Westminster Abbey **'westmɪnstər 'æbi**

In brief, it seems that stresses are altered according to context: we need to be able to explain how and why this happens, but this is a difficult question and one for which we have only partial answers.

An additional factor is that in speaking English we vary in how rhythmically we speak: sometimes we speak very rhythmically (this is typical of some styles of public speaking) while at other times we speak

arhythmically (that is, without rhythm) – for example, when we are hesitant or nervous. Stress-timed rhythm is thus perhaps characteristic of one *style* of speaking, not of English speech as a whole; one always speaks with *some* degree of rhythmicality, but the degree will vary between a minimum value (arhythmical) and a maximum (completely stress-timed rhythm).

It follows from what was said earlier that in a stress-timed language all the feet are supposed to be of roughly the same duration. Many foreign learners of English are made to practise speaking English with a regular rhythm, often with the teacher beating time or clapping hands on the stressed syllables. It must be pointed out, however, that the evidence for the existence of stress-timed rhythm is not strong. There are many laboratory techniques for measuring time in speech, and measurement of the time intervals between stressed syllables in connected English speech has not shown the expected regularity; moreover, using the same measuring techniques on different languages, it has not been possible to show a real difference between "stress-timed" and "syllable-timed" languages. Experiments have shown that we tend to hear speech as more rhythmical than it actually is, and one suspects that this is what the proponents of the stress-timed rhythm theory have been led to do in their auditory analysis of English rhythm. However, one ought to keep an open mind on the subject, remembering that the large-scale, objective study of suprasegmental aspects of real speech is only just beginning, and there is much research that needs to be done.

What, then, is the practical value of the traditional "rhythm exercise" for foreign learners? The argument about rhythm should not make us forget the very important difference in English between strong and weak syllables; some languages do not have such a noticeable difference (which may, perhaps, explain the subjective impression of "syllable-timing"), and for native speakers of such languages learning English it can be helpful to practise repeating strongly rhythmical utterances since this forces the speaker to concentrate on making unstressed syllables weak. Speakers of languages like Japanese, Hungarian and Spanish, which do not have weak syllables to anything like the same extent as English does, may well find such exercises of some value (as long as they are not overdone to the point where learners feel they have to speak English as though they were reciting verse).

14.2 Assimilation

The device mentioned earlier that produces "mechanical speech" would contain all the words of English, each having been recorded in

isolation. A significant difference in natural connected speech is the way that sounds belonging to one word can cause changes in sounds belonging to neighbouring words. Assuming that we know how the phonemes of a particular word would be realised when the word was pronounced in isolation, when we find a phoneme realised differently as a result of being near some other phoneme belonging to a neighbouring word we call this an instance of **assimilation**. Assimilation is something which varies in extent according to speaking rate and style; it is more likely to be found in rapid, casual speech and less likely in slow, careful speech. Sometimes the difference caused by assimilation is very noticeable, and sometimes it is very slight. Generally speaking, the cases that have most often been described are assimilations affecting consonants.

As an example, consider a case where two words are combined, the first of which ends with a single final consonant (which we will call C^f) and the second of which starts with a single initial consonant (which we will call C^i); we can construct a diagram like this:

$$- - - - C^f \;\Big|\; C^i - - - -$$

word boundary

If C^f changes to become like C^i in some way, the assimilation is called **regressive** (the phoneme that comes first is affected by the one that comes after it); if C^i changes to become like C^f in some way, the assimilation is called **progressive**. In what ways can a consonant change? We have seen that the main differences between consonants are of three types:

i) differences in place of articulation
ii) differences in manner of articulation
iii) differences in voicing.

In parallel with this, we can identify assimilation of place, of manner and of voicing in consonants. Assimilation of place is most clearly observable in some cases where a final consonant (C^f) with alveolar place of articulation is followed by an initial consonant (C^i) with a place of articulation that is *not* alveolar. For example, the final consonant in 'that' **ðæt** is alveolar **t**. In rapid, casual speech the **t** will become **p** before a bilabial consonant, as in: 'that person' **ðæp pɜːsn̩**; 'light blue' **laɪp bluː**; 'meat pie' **miːp paɪ**. Before a dental consonant, t will change to a dental plosive, for which the symbol is **t̪**, as in: 'that thing' **ðæt̪ θɪŋ**; 'get those' **get̪ ðəʊz**; 'cut through' **kʌt̪ θruː**. Before a velar consonant, the **t** will become **k**, as in: 'that case' **ðæk keɪs**; 'bright colour' **braɪk kʌlə**; 'quite good' **kwaɪk gʊd**. In similar contexts **d** would

become b, d̪ and g, respectively, and n would become m, n̪ and ŋ. However, the same is not true of the other alveolar consonants: s and z behave differently, the only noticeable change being that s becomes ʃ, and z becomes ʒ when followed by ʃ or j, as in: 'this shoe' ðɪʃ ʃuː; 'those years' ðəʊʒ jɪəz. It is important to note that the consonants that have undergone assimilation have *not* disappeared; in the above examples, the duration of the consonants remains more or less what one would expect for a two-consonant cluster. Assimilation of place is only noticeable in this regressive assimilation of alveolar consonants; it is not something that foreign learners need to learn to do.

Assimilation of manner is much less noticeable, and is only found in the most rapid and casual speech; generally speaking, the tendency is again for regressive assimilation and the change in manner is most likely to be towards an "easier" consonant – one which makes less obstruction to the airflow. It is thus possible to find cases where a final plosive becomes a fricative or nasal (e.g. 'that side' ðæs saɪd, 'good night' gʊn naɪt), but most unlikely that a final fricative or nasal would become a plosive. In one particular case we find progressive assimilation of manner, when a word-initial ð follows a plosive or nasal at the end of a preceding word: it is very common to find that the C^i becomes identical in manner to the C^f but with dental place of articulation. For example (the arrow symbol means "becomes"):

'in the'	ɪn ðə → ɪn̪n̪ə
'get them'	get ðəm → get̪t̪əm
'read these'	riːd ðiːz → riːd̪d̪iːz

It seems that the ð phoneme frequently occurs with no discernible friction noise.

Assimilation of voice is also found, but again only in a limited way. Only *regressive* assimilation of voice is found across word boundaries, and then only of one type; since this matter is important for foreign learners we will look at it in some detail. If C^f is a lenis (i.e. "voiced") consonant and C^i is fortis ("voiceless") we often find that the lenis consonant has no voicing; this is not a very noticeable case of assimilation, since, as was explained in Chapter 4, initial and final lenis consonants usually have little or no voicing anyway. When C^f is fortis ("voiceless") and C^i lenis ("voiced"), a context in which in many languages C^f would become voiced, assimilation of voice *never* takes place; consider the following example: 'I like that black dog' aɪ laɪk ðæt blæk dɒg. It is typical of many foreign learners of English to allow regressive assimilation of voicing to change the final k of 'like' to g, the final t of 'that' to d and the final k of 'black' to g. This creates a very strong impression of a foreign accent, and is something that should obviously be avoided.

Up to this point we have been looking at some fairly clear cases of assimilation across word boundaries. However, similar effects are also observable across morpheme boundaries and to some extent also within the morpheme. Sometimes in the latter case it seems that the assimilation is rather different from the word-boundary examples; for example, if in a syllable-final consonant cluster a nasal consonant precedes a plosive or a fricative in the same morpheme, the place of articulation of the nasal is always determined by the place of articulation of the other consonant; thus: 'bump' bʌmp; 'tenth' teṉθ; 'hunt' hʌnt; 'bank' bæŋk. It could be said that this assimilation had become "fixed" as part of the phonological structure of English syllables, since exceptions are almost non-existent. A similar example of a type of assimilation that has become fixed is the *progressive* assimilation of voice with the suffixes s and z; when a verb carries a third person singular '-s' suffix, or a noun carries an '-s' plural suffix or an '-'s' possessive suffix, that suffix will be pronounced as s if the preceding consonant is fortis ("voiceless") and as z if the preceding consonant is lenis ("voiced"), thus:

'cats' kæts	'dogs' dɒgz
'jumps' dʒʌmps	'runs' rʌnz
'Pat's' pæts	'Pam's' pæmz

Much more could be said about assimilation, but from the point of view of learning or teaching English pronunciation, to do so would not be very useful. It is essentially a natural phenomenon that can be seen in any sort of complex physical activity, and the only important matter is to remember the restriction, specific to English, on voicing assimilation mentioned above.

Assimilation creates something of a problem for phoneme theory; when, for example, d in 'good' gʊd becomes g in the context '...girl' (gʊg gɜ:l) or b in the context '...boy' (gʊb bɔɪ), should we say that one phoneme has been substituted for another? If we do this, how do we describe the assimilation in 'good thing', where d becomes dental d̪ before the θ of 'thing', or in 'good food', where d becomes a labiodental plosive before the f in 'food'? English has no dental or labiodental plosive phonemes, so in these cases, although there is clearly assimilation, there could not be said to be a substitution of one phoneme for another. The alternative is to say that assimilation causes a phoneme to be realised by a different allophone; this would mean that, in the case of gʊg gɜ:l and gʊb bɔɪ, the phoneme d of 'good' has velar and bilabial allophones. Traditionally, phonemes were supposed not to overlap in their allophones, so that the only plosives that could have allophones with bilabial place of articulation were p and b; this restriction is no longer looked on as so important.

14.3 Elision

TU 14

The nature of **elision** may be stated quite simply: under certain circumstances sounds disappear; one might express this in more technical language by saying that in certain circumstances a phoneme may be realised as **zero**, or have **zero realisation** or be **deleted**. As with assimilation, elision is typical of rapid, casual speech; the process of change in phoneme realisations produced by changing the speed and casualness of speech is sometimes called **gradation**. Producing elisions is something which foreign learners do not need to learn to do, but it is important for them to be aware that when native speakers of English talk to each other, quite a number of phonemes that the foreigner might expect to hear are not actually pronounced. We will look at some examples, though only a small number of the many possibilities can be given here.

i) Loss of weak vowel after p, t, k.
In words like 'potato', 'tomato', 'canary', 'perhaps', 'today', the vowel in the first syllable may disappear; the aspiration of the initial plosive takes up the whole of the middle portion of the syllable, resulting in these pronunciations (where ^{h} indicates aspiration): p^h'teɪtəʊ; t^h'mɑːtəʊ; k^h'neəri; p^h'hæps; t^h'deɪ

ii) Weak vowel + n, l or r becomes syllabic consonant. (Syllabic consonants were introduced in Chapter 9.)
Examples: 'tonight' tn̩aɪt; 'police' pl̩iːs; 'correct' kr̩ekt.

iii) Avoidance of complex consonant clusters.
It has been said that no normal English speaker would ever pronounce all the consonants between the last two words of the following:
'George the Sixth's throne' dʒɔːdʒ ðə sɪksθs θrəʊn
Though this is not impossible to pronounce, something like ... sɪksθrəʊn is more likely. In clusters of three plosives or two plosives plus a fricative, the middle plosive may disappear, so that the following pronunciations result: 'acts' æks; 'looked back' lʊk bæk; 'scripts' skrɪps.

iv) Loss of final v in 'of' before consonants.
Examples: 'lots of them' lɒts ə ðəm; 'waste of money' weɪst ə mʌni.

v) It is difficult to know whether contractions of grammatical words should be regarded as examples of elision or not. The fact that they are regularly represented with special spelling forms makes them seem rather different from the above examples. The best-known cases are:

– 'Had', 'would': spelt 'd, pronounced d (after vowels), əd (after consonants).
– 'Is', 'has': spelt 's, pronounced s (after fortis consonants), z (after lenis consonants), except that after s, z, ʃ, ʒ, tʃ, dʒ 'is' is pronounced ɪz and 'has' is pronounced əz in contracted form.
– 'Will': spelt 'll, pronounced l (after vowels', ḷ (after consonants).
– 'Have': spelt 've, pronounced v (after vowels), əv (after consonants).
– 'Not': spelt n't, pronounced nt (after vowels), ṇt (after consonants).
(There are also vowel changes associated with n't, e.g. 'can' kæn – 'can't' kɑ:nt, 'do' du: – 'don't' dəʊnt.)
– 'Are': spelt 're, pronounced ə after vowels, usually with some change in the preceding vowel, e.g. 'you' ju: – 'you're' juə, 'we' wi: – 'we're' wɪə, 'they' ðeɪ – 'they're' ðeə; linking r is used when a vowel follows, as explained in the next section. Contracted 'are' is also pronounced as ə or ər when following a consonant.

14.4 Linking

In our hypothetical "mechanical speech" all words would be separate units placed next to each other in sequence; in real connected speech, however, we sometimes link words together. The most familiar case is the use of **linking r**; the phoneme r cannot occur in syllable-final position in RP, but when a word's spelling *suggests* a final r, and a word beginning with a vowel follows, the usual pronunciation for RP speakers is to pronounce with r. For example:

'here' hɪə	*but*	'here are' hɪər ə
'four' fɔ:	*but*	'four eggs' fɔ:r egz

Many RP speakers use r in a similar way to link words ending with a vowel even when there is no "justification" from the spelling, as in:

'Formula A' fɔ:mjələr eɪ
'Australia all out' ɒstreɪlɪər ɔ:l aʊt
'media event' mi:dɪər ɪvent

This has been called **intrusive r**; some English speakers and teachers still regard this as incorrect or sub-standard pronunciation, but it is undoubtedly widespread.

"Linking r" and "intrusive r" are special cases of **juncture**; this name refers to the relationship between one sound and the sounds that

immediately precede and follow it, and has been given some importance in phonological theory. If we take the two words 'my turn' maɪ tɜːn, the relationship between m and aɪ, between t and ɜː and between ɜː and n is said to be one of **close juncture**. m is preceded by silence and n is followed by silence, and so m and n are said to be in a position of **external open juncture**. The problem lies in deciding what the relationship is between aɪ and t; since we do not usually pause between words, there is no silence (or external open juncture) to indicate word division and to justify the space left in the transcription. But if English speakers hear maɪ tɜːn they can usually recognise this as 'my turn' and not 'might earn'. This is where the problem of **internal open juncture** (usually just called "juncture" for short) becomes apparent. What *is* it that makes perceptible the difference between maɪ tɜːn and maɪt ɜːn? The answer is that in the one case the t is aspirated (initial in 'turn'), and in the other case it is not (being final in 'might'). In addition to this, the aɪ diphthong is shorter in 'might', but we will ignore this for the sake of a simpler argument. If a difference in meaning is caused by the difference between aspirated and unaspirated t, how can we avoid the conclusion that English has a phonemic contrast between aspirated and unaspirated t? The answer is, of course, that the position of a word boundary has some effect on the realisation of the t phoneme; this is one of the many cases in which the occurrence of different allophones can only be properly explained by making reference to units of grammar (something which was for a long time disapproved of by many phonologists).

Many ingenious minimal pairs have been invented to show the significance of juncture, a few of which are given below:

a) 'might rain' maɪt reɪn (r voiced when initial in 'rain', aɪ short)
b) 'my train' maɪ treɪn (r voiceless following t in 'train')

a) 'all that I'm after today' ɔːl ðət aɪm ɑːftə tədeɪ (t unaspirated when final in 'that')
b) 'all the time after today' ɔːl ðə taɪm ɑːftə tədeɪ (t aspirated when initial in 'time')

a) 'he lies' hiː laɪz ("clear l" initial in 'lies')
b) 'heal eyes 'hiːl aɪz ("dark l" final in 'heal')

a) 'keep sticking' kiːp stɪkɪŋ (t unaspirated after s; iː short)
b) 'keeps ticking' kiːps tɪkɪŋ (t aspirated in 'ticking')

Of course, the context in which the words occur almost always makes it clear where the boundary comes, and the juncture information is then redundant.

It should by now be clear that there is a great deal of difference between the way words are pronounced in isolation and in the context

of connected speech. It would not be practical or useful to teach all learners of English to produce assimilations; practice in making elisions is more useful, and it is clearly valuable to do exercises related to rhythm and linking. Perhaps the most important consequence of what has been described in this chapter is that learners of English must be made very clearly aware of the problems that they will meet in listening to colloquial, connected speech.

Notes on problems and further reading

14.1 English rhythm is a controversial subject on which widely differing views have been expressed. On one side there are writers such as Abercrombie (1964) and Halliday (1967) who have set out an elaborate theory of the rhythmical structure of English speech (including foot theory). On the other side there are sceptics like Crystal (1969) who reject the idea of an inherent rhythmical pattern. The distinction between physically measurable time-intervals and subjective impressions of rhythmicality is discussed in Roach (1982) (in which figures are presented from a laboratory study of six different languages) and Lehiste (1977); see also Dauer (1983). Adams (1979) presents a review and experimental study of the subject, and concludes that despite the theoretical problems, there is practical value in teaching rhythm to learners of English. The treatment of rhythmicality as a matter of degree, or a characteristic which may or may not be present, is presented in Crystal (1969), pp. 161–5. For some writers concerned with English language teaching, the notion of rhythm is a more practical matter of making a sufficiently clear difference between strong and weak syllables, rather than concentrating on a rigid timing pattern, as I suggest at the end of 14.1. See, for example, Taylor (1981); Mortimer (1984) contains practice material on rhythm.

The treatment of rhythmical hierarchy is based on the comparatively recent theory of **metrical phonology**. Hogg and McCully (1987) give a full explanation of this, but it is difficult material. Goldsmith (1990), chapter 4, and Katamba (1989), chapter 11.1, are briefer and somewhat simpler. James (1988) explores the relevance of metrical phonology to language learning.

14.2 Assimilation of place with specific reference to alveolar consonants is described in Gimson (1960). I think it is important to realise that the traditional view of assimilation as a change from one phoneme to another is naive; modern instrumental studies in the broader field of *coarticulation* show that when assimilation happens one can often show how there is some sort of combination of articulatory gestures. In

'good girl', for example, it is not a simple matter of the first word ending *either* in d *or* in g, but rather a matter of the extent to which alveolar and/or velar closures are achieved. There may be an alveolar closure immediately preceding and overlapping with a velar closure; there may be simultaneous alveolar and velar closure, or a velar closure followed by slight contact but not closure in the alveolar region. There are many other possibilities. An experimental study of coarticulation in consonant clusters which shows some of the above articulatory events is described in Hardcastle and Roach (1979).

14.4 An essential part of acquiring fluency in English is learning to produce connected speech without gaps between words, and this is the practical importance of linking. For practical work, see Mortimer (1984). From the theoretical point of view, however, I personally do not find the question of 'intrusive' and 'linking' r in RP very interesting (one might perhaps class it as a matter similar to the grammatical and stylistic question of whether or not to use 'whom') but anyone who wishes to go into the subject could read Windsor Lewis (1975a), Pring (1976), Windsor Lewis (1977a) and Fox (1978).

An obvious question to be asked in relation to juncture is whether 'internal open juncture' can actually be heard. Jones (1931) implies that it can, but experimental work (e.g. O'Connor and Tooley (1964)) suggests that in many cases it is not perceptible unless a speaker is deliberately trying to avoid ambiguity. It is interesting to note that some phonologists of the 1950s and 1960s felt it necessary to invent a 'phoneme' of juncture in order to be able to transcribe minimal pairs like 'grey tape' / 'great ape' unambiguously without having to refer to grammatical boundaries; see for example Trager and Smith (1951).

Notes for teachers

There is a lot of disagreement about the importance of the various topics in this chapter from the language teacher's point of view. My feeling is that two separate matters sometimes get mixed up: the practice and study of connected speech is agreed by everyone to be of great importance, but this can sometimes result in some relatively unimportant aspects of speech (e.g. assimilation, juncture) being given more emphasis than they should.

In looking at the importance of studying aspects of speech above the segmental level some writers have claimed that learners can come to identify an overall "feel" of the pronunciation of the language being learned. Differences between languages have been described in terms of their **articulatory settings**, that is, overall articulatory posture, by

Honikman (1964). She describes such factors as lip mobility and tongue-setting for English, French and other languages. The notion seems a useful one, though it is difficult to confirm these settings scientifically.

Tape Unit 14 is liable to come as something of a surprise to students who have not had the experience of examining colloquial English speech before. The main message to get across is that concentration on selective, analytic listening will help them to recognise what is being said, and that practice usually brings confidence.

Written exercises

1. Divide the following sentences up into feet, using the ˈ mark as a boundary symbol. If a sentence starts with an unstressed syllable, leave it out of consideration – it doesn't belong in a foot.

   a) A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.
   b) Over a quarter of a century has elapsed since his death.
   c) Computers consume a considerable amount of money and time.
   d) Most of them have arrived on the bus.
   e) Newspaper editors are invariably underworked.

2. Try to draw tree diagrams of the rhythmical structure of the following phrases.

   a) Christmas present
   b) Rolls Royce
   c) Pet food dealer
   d) Rolls-Royce rally event

3. The following sentences are given in spelling and in a "slow, careful" phonemic transcription. Rewrite the phonemic transcription as a "broad phonetic" one so as to show likely assimilations, elisions and linking.

   a) One cause of asthma is supposed to be allergies
   wʌn kɔːz əv æsθmə ɪz səpəʊzd tə bi ælədʒɪz
   [ ]
   b) What the urban population could use is better trains
   wɒt ði ɜːbən pɒpjʊleɪʃn̩ kʊd juːz ɪz betə treɪnz
   [ ]
   c) She acts particularly well in the first scene
   ʃi ækts pətɪkjələli wel ɪn ðə fɜːst siːn
   [ ]

15 Intonation 1

Many of the previous chapters have been concerned with the description of phonemes, and in 5.2 it was pointed out that the subject of phonology includes not just this aspect (which is usually called **segmental phonology**) but also several others. In Chapters 10 and 11, for example, we studied stress. Clearly, stress has linguistic importance and is therefore an aspect of the phonology of English that must be described, but it is not usually regarded as something that is related to individual segmental phonemes; normally, stress is said to be something that is applied to (or is a property of) syllables, and is therefore part of the **suprasegmental phonology** of English. Another part of suprasegmental phonology is **intonation**, and the next five chapters are devoted to this subject.

What is intonation? No definition is completely satisfactory, but any attempt at a definition must recognise that the **pitch** of the voice plays the most important part. Only in very unusual situations do we speak with fixed, unvarying pitch, and when we speak normally the pitch of our voice is constantly changing. One of the most important tasks in analysing intonation is to listen to the speaker's pitch and recognise what it is doing; this is not an easy thing to do, and it seems to be a quite different skill from that acquired in studying segmental phonetics. We describe pitch in terms of **high** and **low**, and some people find it difficult to relate what they hear in someone's voice to a scale ranging from low to high. We should remember that "high" and "low" are arbitrary choices for end-points of the pitch scale. It would be perfectly reasonable to think of pitch as ranging instead from "light" to "heavy", for example, or from "left" to "right", and people who have difficulty in "hearing" intonation patterns are generally only having difficulty in relating what they hear (which is the same as what everyone else hears) to this "pseudo-spatial" representation.

It is very important to make the point that we are not interested in *all* aspects of a speaker's pitch; the only things that should interest us are those which carry some linguistic information. If a speaker tries to talk while riding fast on a horse, the speaker's pitch will make a lot of sudden rises and falls as a result of the irregular movement; this is something which is outside the speaker's control and therefore cannot be linguistically significant. Similarly, if we take two speakers at random we will almost certainly find that one speaker typically speaks

with lower pitch than the other; the difference between the two speakers is not linguistically significant because their habitual pitch level is determined by their physical structure. But individual speakers *do* have control over their own pitch, and may choose to speak with a higher than normal pitch; this is something which *is* potentially of linguistic significance.

We have established that for pitch differences to be linguistically significant, it is a necessary condition that they should be under the speaker's control. There is another necessary condition and that is that a pitch difference must be **perceptible**; it is possible to detect differences in the **frequency** of the vibration of a speaker's voice by means of laboratory instruments, but these differences may not be great enough to be heard by a listener as differences in pitch. Finally, it should be remembered that in looking for linguistically significant aspects of speech we must always be looking for *contrasts*; one of the most important things about any unit of phonology or grammar is the set of items it contrasts with. We know how to establish what phonemes are in contrast with b in the context –ɪn; we can substitute other phonemes (e.g. p, s) to change the identity of the word from 'bin' to 'pin' to 'sin'. Can we establish such units and contrasts in intonation?

15.1 Form and function in intonation

To summarise what was said above, we want to know the answers to two questions about English speech:

i) What can we observe when we study pitch variations?
ii) What is the linguistic importance of the phenomena we observe?

These questions might be rephrased more briefly as:

i) What is the **form** of intonation?
ii) What is the **function** of intonation?

We will begin by looking at intonation in the shortest piece of speech we can find – the single syllable. At this point a new term will be introduced: we need a name for a continuous piece of speech beginning and ending with a clear pause, and we will call this an **utterance**. In this chapter, then, we are going to look at the intonation of one-syllable utterances. These are quite common, and give us a comparatively easy introduction to the subject.

Two common one-syllable utterances are 'yes' and 'no'. The first thing to notice is that we have a choice of saying these with the pitch remaining at a constant level, or with the pitch changing from one level to another. The word we use for the overall behaviour of the pitch in

these examples is **tone**; a one-syllable word can be said with either a **level tone** or a **moving tone**. If you try saying 'yes' or 'no' with a level tone (rather as though you were trying to sing them on a steady note) you may find the result does not sound natural, and indeed English speakers do not use level tones on one-syllable utterances very frequently. Moving tones are more common; if English speakers want to say 'yes' or 'no' in a definite, final manner they will probably use a **falling** tone – one which descends from a higher to a lower pitch. If they want to say 'yes?' or 'no?' in a questioning manner they may say it with a **rising** tone – a movement from a lower pitch to a higher one.

Notice that already, in talking about different tones, some idea of function has been introduced; speakers are said to select from a choice of tones according to how they want the utterance to be heard, and it is implied that the listener will hear one-syllable utterances said with different tones as sounding different in some way. During the development of modern phonetics in the present century it was for a long time hoped that scientific study of intonation would make it possible to state what the function of each different aspect of intonation was, and that foreign learners could then be taught rules to enable them to use intonation in the way that native speakers use it. Few people now believe this to be possible. It is certainly possible to produce a few general rules, and some will be given in this course, just as a few general rules for word stress were given in Chapters 10 and 11. However, these rules are certainly not adequate as a practical guide to how to use English intonation. My treatment of intonation is based on the belief that foreign learners of English at advanced levels who may use this course should be given training to make them better able to recognise and copy English intonation; the only really efficient way to learn to use the intonation of a language is the way a child acquires the intonation of its first language, and the training referred to above should help the adult learner of English to acquire English intonation in a similar (though much slower) way – through listening to and talking to English speakers. It is perhaps a discouraging thing to say, but learners of English who are not able to talk regularly with native speakers of English, or who are not able at least to listen regularly to colloquial English, are not likely to learn English intonation, though they may learn very good pronunciation of the segments and use stress correctly.

15.2 Tone and tone languages

TU 15, Exs 1–3

In the preceding section we mentioned three simple possibilities for the intonation used in pronouncing the one-word utterances 'yes' and 'no'. These were: level, fall and rise. It will often be necessary to use symbols

to represent tones, and for this we will use marks placed before the syllable in the following way (phonemic transcription will not be used in these examples – words are given in spelling):

Level	ˍyes	ˍno
Falling	ˎyes	ˎno
Rising	ˏyes	ˏno

Obviously, this simple system for tone transcription could be extended, if we wished, to cover a greater number of possibilities. For example, if it was important to distinguish between a high level and low level tone for English we could do it in this way:

High level	ˉyes	ˉno
Low level	ˍyes	ˍno

Although in English we do on occasions say ˉyes or ˉno and on other occasions ˍyes or ˍno, no speaker of English would say that the meaning of the words 'yes' and 'no' was different with the different tones. (As will be seen below, we will not use the symbols for high and low level tones in the description of English intonation.) But there are many languages in which the tone *can* determine the meaning of a word, and changing from one tone to another can completely change the meaning. For example, in Kono, a language of West Africa, we find the following (meanings given in brackets):

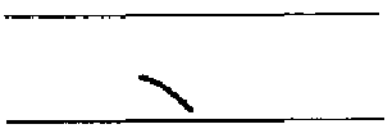
High level	ˉbɛŋ ('uncle')	ˉbuu ('horn')
Low level	ˍbɛŋ ('greedy')	ˍbuu ('to be cross')

Similarly, while we can hear a difference between English ˍyes, ˏyes and ˎyes, and between ˍno, ˏno and ˎno, there is not a difference in meaning in such a clear-cut way as in Chinese (Peking dialect), where, for example, ˉma means 'mother', ˏma means 'hemp' and ˎma means 'scold'. Languages such as the above are called **tone languages**; although to most speakers of European languages they may seem strange and exotic, such languages are in fact spoken by a very large proportion of the world's population. In addition to the many dialects of Chinese, many other languages of South-East Asia (e.g. Thai, Vietnamese) are tone languages; so are very many African languages, particularly those to the South and West, and a considerable number of Amerindian languages. English is, of course, *not* a tone language, and the function of tone is much more difficult to define than in a tone language.

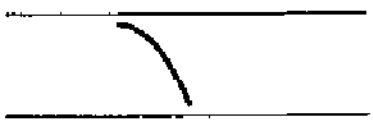
15.3 Complex tones and pitch height

We have introduced three simple tones that can be used on one-syllable English utterances: level, fall and rise. However, other more complex tones are also used. One that is quite frequently found is the **fall–rise** tone, where the pitch descends and then rises again; another complex tone, much less frequently used, is the **rise–fall** in which the pitch follows the opposite movement. We will not consider any more complex tones, since these are not often encountered and are of little importance.

One further complication should be mentioned here. Each speaker has his or her own normal pitch range: a top level which is the highest pitch normally used by the speaker, and a bottom level that the speaker's pitch normally does not go below. In ordinary speech, the intonation tends to take place within the lower part of the speaker's pitch range, but in situations where strong feelings are to be expressed it is usual to make use of extra pitch height. For example, if we represent the pitch range by drawing two parallel lines representing the highest and lowest limits of the range, then a normal unemphatic 'yes' could be diagrammed like this:



but a strong, emphatic 'yes' like this:



We will use a new symbol ↑ (a vertical arrow) to indicate **extra pitch height,** so that we can distinguish between:

↘yes and ↑↘yes

Any of the tones presented in this chapter may be given extra pitch height, but since this course is based on normal, unemotional speech, it will not be necessary to use the symbol very frequently.

15.4 Some functions of English tones

TU 15, Ex 4

In this chapter only a very small part of English intonation has been introduced. We will now see if it is possible to state in what circumstances the different tones are used within the very limited context of the words 'yes' and 'no' said in isolation. We will look at some typical occurrences; no examples of extra pitch height will be considered here.

Fall ˎyes ˎno

This is the tone about which least needs to be said, and which is usually regarded as more or less "neutral". If someone is asked a question and replies ˎyes or ˎno it will be understood that the question is now answered and that there is nothing more to be said. The fall could be said to give an impression of "finality".

Rise ˏyes ˏno

In a variety of ways, this tone conveys an impression that something more is to follow; a typical occurrence in a dialogue between two speakers whom we shall call A and B might be the following:

A (wishing to attract B's attention): Excuse me.
B: ˏyes

(B's reply is, perhaps, equivalent to 'what do you want?')
Another quite common occurrence would be:

A: Do you know John Smith?

One possible reply from B would be ˏyes, inviting A to continue with what she intends to say about John Smith after establishing that B knows him. To reply instead ˎyes would give a feeling of "finality", of "end of the conversation"; if A *did* have something to say about John Smith, the response with a fall would make it difficult for A to continue.

We can see similar "invitations to continue" in someone's response to a series of instructions or directions. For example:

A: You start off on the ring road . . .
B: ˏyes
A: turn left at the first roundabout . . .
B: ˏyes
A: and ours is the third house on the left.

Whatever B replies to this last utterance of A, it would be most unlikely to be ˏyes again, since A has clearly finished her instructions and it would be pointless to "prompt" her to continue.

With 'no', a similar function can be seen. For example:

A: Have you seen Ann?

If B replies ˎno, he implies quite clearly that he has no interest in continuing with that topic of conversation. But a reply of ˏno would be an invitation to A to explain why she is looking for Ann, or why she does not know where she is.

Similarly, someone may ask a question that implies readiness to present some new information. For example:

A: Do you know what the longest balloon flight was?

If B replies ˏno he is inviting A to tell him, while a response of ˎno could be taken to mean that he does not know and is not expecting to be told. This is, in fact, a common cause of misunderstanding in English conversation, when a question such as A's above might be a request for information *or* an offer to provide some.

Fall–rise ˎyes ˎno

The fall–rise is used a lot in English and has some rather special functions. In the present context we will only consider one fairly simple one, which could perhaps be described as "limited agreement" or "response with reservations". Examples may make this clearer:

A: I've heard that it's a good school.
B: ˎyes

B's reply would be taken to mean that he would not completely agree with what A said, and A would probably expect B to go on to explain *why* he was reluctant to agree. Similarly:

A: It's not really an expensive record, is it?
B: ˎno

The fall–rise in B's reply again indicates that he would not completely agree with A. Fall–rise in such contexts almost always indicates both something "given" or "conceded" and at the same time some "reservation" or "hesitation". This use of intonation will be returned to in Chapter 19.

Rise–fall ˏyes ˏno

This is used to convey rather strong feelings of approval, disapproval or surprise. It is not usually considered to be an important tone for foreign

learners to acquire, though it is still useful practice to learn to distinguish it from other tones. Here are some examples:

A: *You* would't do an awful thing like that, would you?
B: ˻no

A: Isn't the view lovely!
B: ˻yes

A: I think you said it was the best so far.
B: ˻yes

Level ˻yes ˻no

This tone is certainly used in English, but in a rather restricted context: it almost always conveys (on single-syllable utterances) a feeling of saying something routine, uninteresting or boring. A teacher calling the names of pupils from a register will often do so using a level tone on each name, and the pupils would be likely to respond with ˻yes when their name was called. Similarly, if one is being asked a series of routine questions for some purpose such as applying for an insurance policy, one might reply to each question of a series like 'Have you ever been in prison?', 'Do you suffer from any serious illness?', 'Is your eyesight defective?', etc., with ˻no.

A few "meanings" have been suggested for the five tones that have been introduced, but each tone may have many more such meanings. Moreover, it would be quite wrong to conclude that in the above examples only the tones given would be appropriate; it is, in fact, almost impossible to find a context where one could not substitute a different tone. This is not the same thing as saying that *any* tone can be used in *any* context; the point is that no particular tone has a unique "privilege of occurrence" in a particular context. When we come to look at more complex intonation patterns, we will see that defining intonational "meanings" does not become any easier.

Notes on problems and further reading

To devote five chapters to intonation may seem excessive, but I feel that this is necessary since the subject is difficult and complex, and needs to be explained at considerable length if the explanation is to be intelligible. The study of intonation has gone through many changes during this century. The most intensive theoretical development began during the 1940s. In the United States the theory that evolved was based

on 'pitch phonemes' (Wells, 1945; Pike, 1945): four contrastive pitch levels were established and intonation was described basically in terms of a series of movements from one of these levels to another. This approach was further developed in Trager and Smith (1951). Although this 'pitch phoneme' theory became an orthodoxy, it was consistently attacked by one American linguist, D. Bolinger (e.g. Bolinger, 1951). In Britain the 'tone-unit' or 'tonetic' approach begun by H. E. Palmer in the 1920s (Palmer, 1924) was developed by (among others) Kingdon (1958a), O'Connor and Arnold (1962) and Halliday (1967). These two different theoretical approaches became gradually more elaborate; in the American case perhaps the most elaborate exposition was in Trager (1964), while O'Connor and Arnold produced an extended version of their treatment in their second edition (1973). However, since the 1970s it has become clear that such frameworks are inadequate for dealing with natural spontaneous speech; in Britain the most influential work leading to this recognition was Crystal (1969); another good example of the same attitude is Brown *et al.* (1980). I have tried in this course to reflect some of the more recently developed ideas for dealing with intonation, though the treatment remains essentially within the conventions of the British tradition. The best explanation of theoretical issues in intonation is Cruttenden (1986).

A word of caution is needed in connection with the word *pitch*. Strictly speaking, this should be used to refer to an auditory sensation experienced by the hearer. The rate of vibration of the vocal cords – something which is physically measurable, and which is related to activity on the part of the speaker – is the *fundamental frequency** of voiced sounds, and should not be called 'pitch'. However, as long as this distinction is understood, it is generally agreed that the term 'pitch' is a convenient one to use informally to refer both to the subjective sensation and to the objectively measurable fundamental frequency.

15.1 The notion of *tone* is best understood by dealing with single syllables at first. Eventually the number of tones used in this course is five: fall, rise, fall–rise, rise–fall and level.

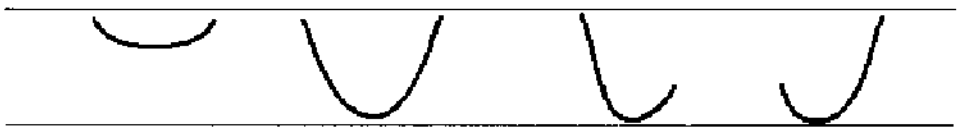
15.2 The amount of time to be spent on learning about tone languages should depend to some extent on your background. Those whose native language is a tone language should be aware of the considerable linguistic importance of tone in such languages; often it is extremely difficult for people who have spoken a tone language all their life to learn to observe their own use of tone objectively. The study of tone languages is less important for native speakers of non-tone languages, but most students seem to find it an interesting subject. A good introduction is Ladefoged (1982), pp. 226–32. The classic work on the

* 'fundamental frequency' is often abbreviated to FO.

subject is Pike (1948), while more modern treatments are Hyman (1975), pp. 212–29 and Katamba (1989), Chapter 10.

15.3 Many analyses within the British approach to intonation include among tones both 'high' and 'low' varieties. For example, O'Connor and Arnold (1973) distinguished between 'high fall' and 'low fall' (the former starting from a high pitch, the latter from mid), and also between 'low rise' and 'high rise' (the latter rising to a higher point than the former). Some writers have high and low versions of all tones. Compared with the proposed establishing of a separate feature of 'extra pitch height' (which is explained more fully in 18.1), this is unnecessary duplication. Of course, if one adds extra pitch height to a tone, one has not given all possible detail about it. If we take as an example a fall–rise without extra pitch height:

then something symbolised as ↑ ˬ could be any of the following:



It would be possible to extend our framework to distinguish between these possibilities, but I do not believe it would be profitable to do so.

Crystal (1969) includes in his set of tones fall–rise–fall and rise–fall–rise; I have seldom felt the need to recognise these as distinct from rise–fall and fall–rise respectively. Halliday (1967) has a rather odd-looking set of tones:

1. ╲ falling
2. { ╱ rising
   { ╲╱ falling–rising
3. ___╱ rising
4. ∧╲╱ (rising–)<u>falling</u>–rising
5. ╲╱╲ (falling–)<u>rising</u>–falling

There is, of course, no particular reason to expect linguistic systems to be tidy and symmetrical, but I find it hard to see why Halliday chose these particular tones.

15.4 I will leave discussion of the functions (or supposed functions) of tones until later, except for the fall–rise. It seems to be generally agreed that this is in some way 'special', and peculiar to English. This may not be

true, but certainly in listening to conversational English one does encounter a very large number of these and they do seem to the native speaker to have some perhaps indefinable 'feel' of something negative present in the background, as suggested above, on p. 139). The clearest attempt to explain this is, in my opinion, O'Connor (1957).

Note for teachers

As explained above, some students may be perfectly well able to discriminate between tones, but have difficulty in labelling them as 'fall', 'rise', etc. I find that about 5 per cent of the students I teach are never able to overcome this difficulty (even though they may have perfect hearing and in some cases a high level of linguistic and musical ability); of the remainder, a few are especially gifted and cannot understand how anyone could find the task difficult, and most others eventually learn after five or ten hours of practical classes. Many students find it very helpful to sit in the phonetics laboratory looking at a computer display showing a picture of their pitch movements.

Written exercise

In the following sentences and bits of dialogue, each underlined syllable must be given an appropriate tone mark. Write a tone mark just in front of each of the syllables.

1. This train is for Leeds, York, Darlington and Durham
2. Can you give me a lift?
   Possibly Where to?
3. No! Certainly not! Go away!
4. Did you know he'd been convicted of drunken driving?
   No!
5. If I give him money he goes and spends it
   If I lend him the bike he loses it
   He's completely unreliable

16 Intonation 2

16.1 The tone-unit

In the last chapter it was explained that some of the world's languages are "tone languages", in which substituting one distinctive tone for another on a particular word or morpheme can cause a change in the dictionary ("lexical") meaning of that word or morpheme, or in some aspect of its grammatical categorisation. English is one of the languages that do *not* use tone in this way though tones or pitch differences *are* used for other purposes; such languages are sometimes called **intonation languages**. In tone languages the main suprasegmental contrastive unit is the tone, which is usually linked to the phonological unit that we call the syllable. It could be said that someone analysing the function and distribution of tones in a tone language would be mainly occupied in examining utterances syllable by syllable, looking at each syllable as an independently variable item. In the last chapter, five tones found on English one-syllable utterances were introduced, and if English was spoken in isolated monosyllables, the job of tonal analysis would be a rather similar one to that described for tone languages. However, when we look at continuous speech in English utterances we find that these tones can only be identified on a small number of particularly prominent syllables. For the purposes of analysing intonation, a unit generally greater in size than the syllable is needed, and this unit is called the **tone-unit**; in its smallest form the tone-unit may consist of only one syllable, so it would in fact be wrong to say that it is always composed of more than one syllable. The tone-unit is difficult to define, and one or two examples may help to make it easier to understand the concept. (As explained in the last chapter, examples used to illustrate intonation transcription are usually given in spelling form, and you will notice that no punctuation is used; the reason for this is that intonation and stress are the vocal equivalents of written punctuation, so that when these are transcribed it would be unnecessary or even confusing to include punctuation as well.)

Let us begin with a one-syllable utterance:

TU 16, Exs 1 & 2

,you

We will underline syllables that carry a tone. Now consider this three-syllable utterance:

is it ˏyou

The third syllable is more prominent than the other two and carries a rising tone. The other two syllables will normally be much less prominent, and be said on a level pitch. Why do we not say that each of the syllables 'is' and 'it' carries a level tone? This is a difficult question that will be examined more fully later; for the present I will answer it (rather unsatisfactorily) by saying that it is unusual for a syllable said on a level pitch to be so prominent that it would be described as carrying a level *tone*. To summarise the analysis of 'is it ˏyou' so far, it is an utterance of three syllables, composed of one tone-unit; the only syllable that carries a tone is the third one. From now on, a syllable which carries a tone will be called a **tonic syllable**. It has been mentioned several times that tonic syllables have a high degree of prominence; prominence is, of course, a property of stressed syllables, and a tonic syllable not only carries a tone (which is something related to intonation) but also a type of stress that will be called **tonic stress**. (Some writers use the terms **nucleus** and **nuclear stress** for **tonic syllable** and **tonic stress**.)

The example can now be extended:

ˏJohn is it ˏyou

(a fall–rise is used quite commonly in calling someone's name out). If there is a clear pause (silence) between 'ˏJohn' and 'is it ˏyou', then according to the definition of an utterance given in the last chapter, there are two utterances; however, it is quite likely that a speaker would say 'ˏJohn is it ˏyou' with no pause, so that the four syllables would make up a single utterance. In spite of the absence of any pause, the utterance would normally be regarded as divided into two tone-units: 'ˏJohn' and 'is it ˏyou'. Since it is very difficult to lay down the conditions for deciding where the boundaries between tone-units exist, the discussion of this matter must wait until later.

It should be possible to see now that the tone-unit has a place in a range of phonological units that are in a **hierarchical relationship**: speech consists of a number of **utterances** (the largest unit that we shall consider); each utterance consists of one or more **tone-units**; each tone-unit consists of one or more **feet**; each foot consists of one or more **syllables**; each syllable consists of one or more **phonemes**.

16.2 The structure of the tone-unit

In Chapter 8 the structure of the English syllable was examined in some detail. Like the syllable, the tone-unit has a fairly clearly-defined

internal structure, but the only component that has been mentioned so far is the tonic syllable. The first thing to be done is to make more precise the role of the tonic syllable in the tone-unit. Most tone-units are of a type that we call **simple**, and the sort that we call **compound** are not discussed in this chapter. Each simple tone-unit has one and only one tonic syllable; this means that the tonic syllable is an obligatory component of the tone-unit. (Compare the role of the vowel in the syllable.) We will now see what the other components may be.

The head

Consider the following one-syllable utterance:

ˏthose

We can find the same tonic syllable in a long utterance (still of one tone-unit):

'give me ˏthose

The rest of the tone-unit in this example is called the **head**. Notice that the first syllable has a stress mark; this is important. A head is all that part of a tone-unit that extends from the first stressed syllable up to (but not including) the tonic syllable. It follows that if there is no stressed syllable before the tonic syllable, there cannot be a head. In the above example, the first two syllables (words) are the head of the tone-unit. In the following example, the head is the first five syllables:

'Bill 'called to 'give me ˏthose

As was said a little earlier, if there is no stressed syllable preceding the tonic syllable, there is no head. This is the case in the following example:

in an ˏhour

Neither of the two syllables preceding the tonic syllable is stressed. The syllables 'in an' form a **pre-head**, which is the next component of the tone-unit to be introduced.

The pre-head

The **pre-head** is composed of all the unstressed syllables in a tone-unit preceding the first stressed syllable. Thus pre-heads are found in two main environments:

i) When there is no head (i.e. no stressed syllable preceding the tonic syllable), as in the example 'in an ˏhour'.

ii) When there is a head, as in the following example:
in a 'little 'less than an ˏhour

In this example, the pre-head consists of 'in a', the head consists of ''little 'less than an', and the tonic syllable is 'ˏhour'.

The tail

It often happens that some syllables follow the tonic syllable. Any syllables between the tonic syllable and the end of the tone-unit are called the **tail**. In the following examples, each tone-unit consists of an initial tonic syllable and a tail:

ˏlook at it ˏwhat did you say
ˏboth of them were here

When it is necessary to mark stress in a tail, we will use a special symbol, a raised dot · for reasons that will be explained later. The above examples should, then, be transcribed as follows:

ˏlook at it ˏwhat did you ·say
ˏboth of them were ·here

This completes the list of tone-unit components. If we use brackets to indicate optional components (that is, components which may be present or may be absent), we can summarise tone-unit structure as follows:

(pre-head) (head) tonic syllable (tail)

or, more briefly, as:

(PH) (H) TS (T)

To illustrate this more fully, let us consider the following passage, which is transcribed from a tape-recording of spontaneous speech (the speaker is describing a picture). When we analyse longer stretches of speech, it is necessary to mark the places where tone-unit boundaries occur (that is, where one tone-unit ends and another begins, or where a tone-unit ends and is followed by a pause, or where a tone-unit begins following a pause). It was mentioned above that tone-units are sometimes separated by silent pauses and sometimes not; pause-type boundaries can be marked by double vertical lines like this || and non-pause boundaries with a single line |. In practice it is not usually important to mark pauses at the beginning and end of a passage; in the rest of the book I put no lines on short examples and only single lines around longer ones; the boundaries *within* a passage are much more important.

|| and then 'nearer to the ,front || on the ,left | theres 'bit of ,forest | 'coming 'down to the ,waterside || and then a 'bit of a ,bay ||

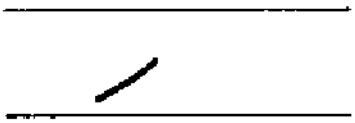
We can mark their structure as follows:

PH	H	TS	PH	TS	PH
and then	'nearer to the	,front	on the	,left	theres a

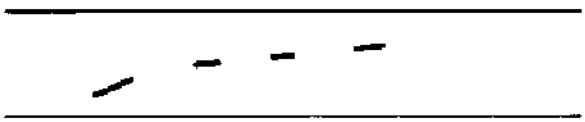
H	TS	T	H	TS	T
'bit of	,fo	rest	'coming 'down to the	,wa	terside

PH	H	TS
and then a	'bit of a	,bay

The above passage contains five tone-units. Notice that in the third tone-unit, since it is the tonic syllable rather than the word that carries the tone, it is necessary to divide the word 'forest' into two parts, 'fo' fo and 'rest' rst (it could be argued that the syllables should be divided 'for' and 'est', but this is not important here). This example shows clearly how the units of phonological analysis can sometimes be seen to differ from those of grammatical analysis.



The four syllables in '<u>what</u> did you say' might be said like this:



with the pitch of the syllables in the tail getting progressively higher. In such cases, the tonic syllable is the syllable on which the pitch movement of the tone begins, but that pitch movement is completed over the rest of the tone unit (i.e. the tail). If, in rising progressively higher, the pitch reaches the highest part of the speaker's normal pitch range, subsequent syllables will continue at that level.

We find a similar situation with the falling tone. On a single syllable '<u>why</u>', the pitch movement might be of this sort:

but if there are syllables following, the fall may not be completed on the tonic syllable: <u>why</u> did you go

Again, if the speaker's lowest pitch is reached before the end of the tail, the pitch continues at the bottom level. In the case of a level tone, syllables following in the tail will, of course, continue at the same level; since level tone is to be treated as a rather unusual type of tone, we will not examine it in more detail at this stage. The situation is more complicated when we have a tail following a fall–rise or a rise–fall, and this will be described in the next chapter.

Notes on problems and further reading

Almost all British analyses use a unit similar or identical to what I call a *tone-unit*, and many writers see this unit as having a crucial role in

linking intonation to higher-level grammatical units. It is possible to represent intonation as a simple sequence of tonic and non-tonic stressed syllables, and pauses, with no higher-level organisation; an example of this is Windsor Lewis (1977b). An early attempt at defining intonation units was that of Jones (1975, Chapter 30), where stretches of speech between pauses were called 'breath-groups' and marked with double vertical lines ||, and smaller stretches within these, called 'sense-groups', bounded by places where 'pauses *may* be made' and consisting of 'a few words in close grammatical connexion'. Trim (1959)* criticises this proposal, saying that Jones' 'sense-group' is defined in semantic terms and the 'breath-group' in physiological terms, whereas we should be concerned with phonetic and phonological units and definitions. Instead, he proposes that the unit used should be the 'tone-group', defined in terms of rhythm and pitch movements, and that we should distinguish between 'major' and 'minor' tone-groups. The minor tone-group corresponds to the tone-unit used in this course, and the idea of a larger unit (the major tone-unit) is a valuable one that will be discussed further in the notes on Chapter 19. Different writers use different names: Halliday and his followers use 'tone-group', O'Connor and Arnold use 'sense-group' and Crystal, Brazil *et al.* and I use 'tone-unit'. On tone-unit structure and pitch possibilities in the tone-unit, see chapter 5 in Crystal (1969), chapter 1 in Crystal (1975), Halliday (1967), and chapter 1 in O'Connor and Arnold (1973).

Note for teachers

The move from tones to tone-units is a difficult one, and I feel it is advisable at this stage to use only slow, careful speech for exercises (**Tape Units 15 and 16**). More difficult exercises follow later (**Tape Units 18 and 19**).

* Not surprisingly, the fact that Trim's article is written in phonemic transcription with many words not separated by spaces makes it hard to read.

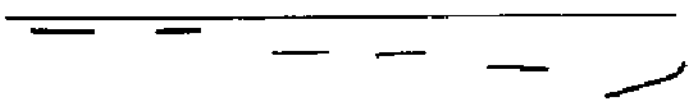
Written exercises

1. Here is a list of single tonic syllables. Add a number of extra syllables (as specified by the number in brackets) to make a tail. Example: go (2) *answer:* go for it
   a) buy (3)
   b) hear (1)
   c) talk (2)

(The answers section gives some possible versions.)

2. Now expand the following tonic syllables by putting heads in front of them, containing the number of stressed syllables indicated in brackets. Example: (2) dark *answer:* 'John was a'fraid of the dark
   a) (1) step
   b) (3) train
   c) (2) hot
3. The following sentences are given with intonation transcribed. Draw underneath them a diagram of the pitch movements, leaving a gap between each syllable. Example:

   'would you 'like some 'more ˏmilk



a) 'Only when the ˏwind blows

b) ˏWhen did you say

c) 'What was the ˏname of the place

17 Intonation 3

In the last chapter the structure of the tone-unit was introduced and it was explained that when a tonic syllable is followed by a tail, that tail continues and completes the tone begun on the tonic syllable. Examples were given to show how this happens in the case of rising and falling tones. We now go on to consider the rather more difficult cases of fall–rise and rise–fall tones.

17.1 Fall–rise and rise–fall tones followed by a tail

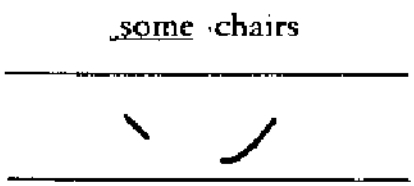
TU 17, Exs 1 & 2

A rising or a falling tone is quite easy to identify, whether it falls on a single syllable or extends over more syllables in the case of a tonic syllable followed by a tail. Fall–rise and rise–fall tones, however, can be quite difficult to recognise when they are extended over tails, since their characteristic pitch movements are often broken up or distorted by the structure of the syllables they occur on. For example, the pitch movement on ˏsome will be something like this:

If we add a syllable, the "fall" part of the fall–rise is usually carried by the first syllable and the "rise" part by the second. The result may be a continuous pitch movement very similar to the one-syllable case, if there are no voiceless medial consonants to cause a break in the voicing. For example:

ˏsome ·men

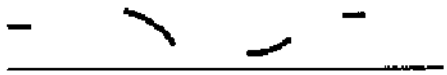
If the continuity of the voicing is broken, however, the pitch pattern might be more like this:



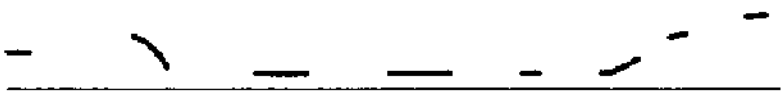
In this case it would be possible to say that there is a falling tone on 'some' and a rise on 'chairs'. However, most English speakers seem to feel that the pitch movement in this case is the same as that in the previous two examples; it can be said that there is a parallel with rhyming. Just as 'balloon' rhymes with 'moon', so we might say that 'some chairs' has what could be called a **tonal rhyme** with 'some'.

If there is a tail of two or more syllables, the normal pitch movement is for the pitch to fall on the tonic syllable and to remain low until the last stressed syllable in the tail. The pitch then rises from that point up to the end of the tone-unit. If there is *no* stressed syllable in the tail, the rise happens on the final syllable. Here are some examples:

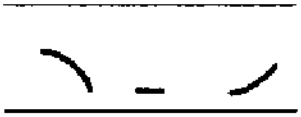
a) I might buy it



I might have thought of buying it

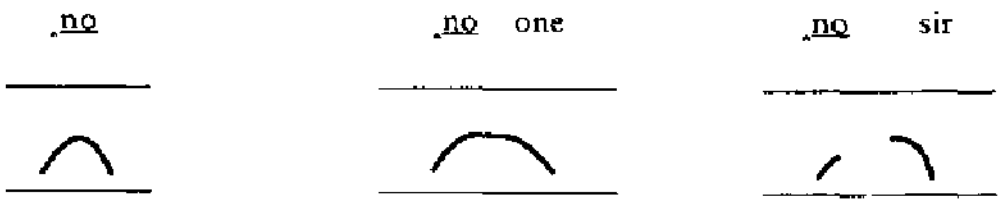


b) most of them

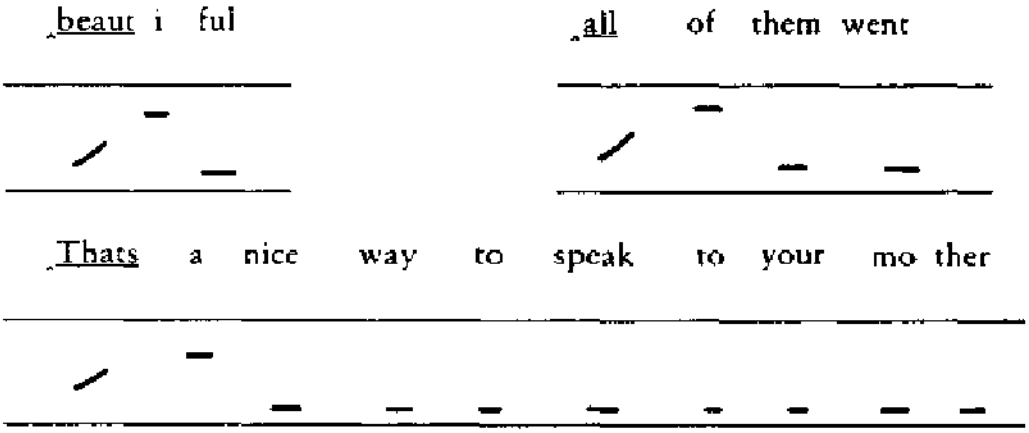


most of it was for them

With the rise–fall tone we find a similar situation: if the tonic syllable is followed by a single syllable in the tail, the "rise" part of the tone takes place on the first (tonic) syllable and the "fall" part is on the second. Thus:



When there are two or more syllables in the tail, the syllable immediately following the tonic syllable is always higher and any following syllables are low. For example:

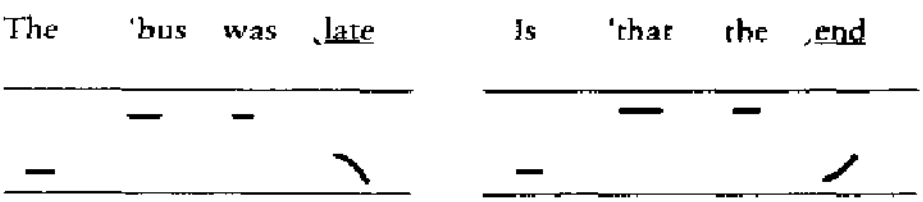


It should be clear by now that the speaker does not have a choice in the matter of the pitch of the syllables in the tail. This is completely determined by the choice of tone for the tonic syllable.

17.2 High and low heads

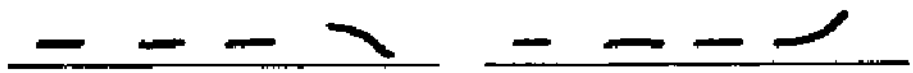
TU 17, Ex 3

The **head** was defined in the last chapter as "all that part of a tone-unit that extends from the first stressed syllable up to, but not including, the tonic syllable". In our description of intonation up to this point, the only pitch contrasts found in the tone-unit are the different possible choices of tone for the tonic syllable. However, we can identify different pitch possibilities in the head, though these are limited to two which we will call **high head** and **low head**. In the case of the high head, the stressed syllable which begins the head is high in pitch; usually it is higher than the beginning pitch of the tone on the tonic syllable. For example:



In the low head the stressed syllable which begins the head is low in pitch; usually it is lower than the beginning pitch of the tone on the tonic syllable. To mark this stressed syllable in the low head we will use a different symbol, ˌ as in ˌlow. As an example, the heads of the above sentences will be changed from high to low:

The ˌbus was ˏlate Is ˌthat the ˏend



The two different versions (high and low head) will usually sound slightly different to English listeners, though it it not easy to say just what the difference *is*, as will be made clear in the next chapter.

It is usual for unstressed syllables to continue the pitch of the stressed syllable that precedes them. In the following example, the three unstressed syllables 'if it had' continue at the same pitch as the stressed syllable 'asked':

a) with high head

We 'asked if it had ˏcome

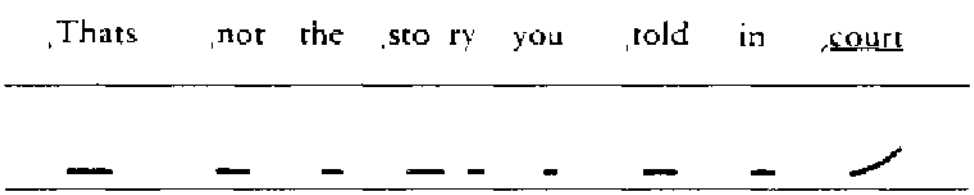
b) with low head

We ˌasked if it had ˏcome

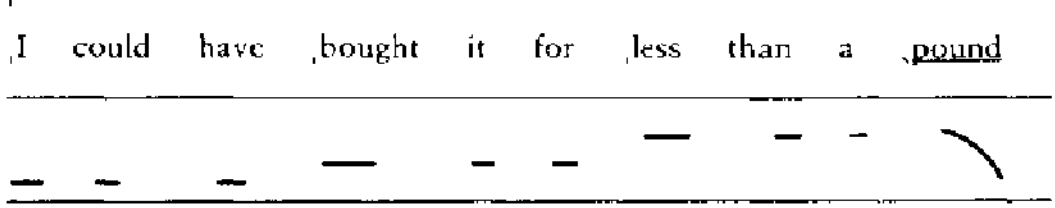
When there is more than one stressed syllable in the head there is usually a slight change in pitch from the level of one stressed syllable to that of the next, the change being in the direction of the beginning pitch of the tone on the tonic syllable. We will use some long examples to illustrate this, though heads of this length are not very frequently found in natural speech. In the first example the stressed syllables in the high head step downwards progressively to approach the beginning of the tone:

The 'rain was 'com ing 'down 'fair ly ˏhard

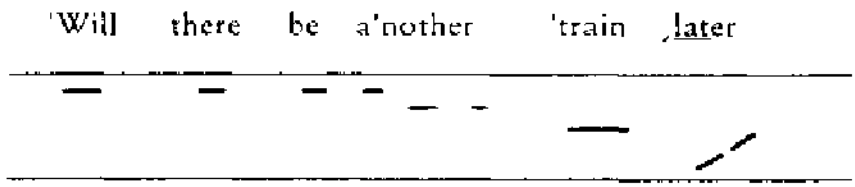
In the next example the head is low; since the tone also starts low, being a rise, there is no upward movement in the head:



When there is a low head followed by a falling tone, successive stressed syllables in the head will tend to move upwards towards the beginning pitch of the tone:



When a high head is followed by a rise the stressed syllables tend to move downwards, as one would expect, towards the beginning pitch of the tone:



Of course, when we examine the intonation of polysyllabic heads we find much greater variety than these simple examples suggest. However, the division into high and low heads as general types is probably the most basic that can be made, and it would be pointless to set up a more elaborate system to represent differences if these differences were not recognised by most English speakers. Some writers on intonation claim that the intonation pattern starting at a fairly high pitch, with a gradual dropping down of pitch during the utterance, is the most basic, normal, "unmarked" intonation pattern; this movement is often called **declination**. The claim that declination is universally unmarked in English, or even in all languages, is a strong one. As far as English is concerned, it would be good to see more evidence from the full range of regional and national varieties in support of the claim.

It should be noted that the two marks ' and , are being used for two different purposes in this course, as they are in many phonetics books. When stress is being discussed, the ' mark indicates primary stress and , indicates secondary stress. For the purposes of marking intonation, however, the mark ' indicates a stressed syllable in a high head and the mark , indicates a stressed syllable in a low head. In practice this is not usually found confusing as long as one is aware of whether one is marking stress levels or intonation. Of course, when the high and low marks ' and , are being used to indicate intonation it is no longer

possible to mark two different levels of stress within the word. However, when looking at speech at the level of the tone-unit we are not usually interested in this; a much more important difference here is that between tonic stress (marked by underlining the tonic syllable and placing before it one of the five tone-marks) and non-tonic stressed syllables (marked ' or , in the head or -in the tail).

It needs to be emphasised that in marking intonation, only stressed syllables are marked; this implies that intonation is carried entirely by the stressed syllables of a tone-unit and that the pitch of unstressed syllables is either predictable from that of stressed syllables or is of so little importance that it is not worth marking. Remember that the additional information given in the examples above by drawing pitch levels and movements between lines is only included here to make the examples clearer and is not normally given with our system of transcription, so all the important information about intonation *must* be given by the marks placed in the text.

7.3 Problems in analysing the form of intonation

The analysis of intonational form presented in this chapter and the two previous ones is similar in most respects to the approaches used in many British studies of English intonation. There are certain difficulties that all of these studies have had to confront, and it is useful to have a brief summary of what the major difficulties are.

Identifying the tonic syllable

It is often said that the tonic syllable can be identified because it is the only syllable in the tone-unit that carries a movement in pitch; this is in fact not always true. We have seen how when the tonic syllable is followed by a tail the tone is carried by the tonic plus tail together in such a way that in some cases practically no pitch movement is detectable on the tonic syllable itself. In addition it has been claimed that one of the tones is the *level* tone, which by definition may not have any pitch movement. It is therefore necessary to say in this particular case that the tonic syllable is identified simply as the most prominent syllable.

In addition, it sometimes seems as if some tone-units (though only a small number) contain not one but *two* tonic syllables, almost always with the first syllable having a fall on it and the other a rise. An example is:

Ive ˏseen ˏhim

i)

In this example there seems to be equal prominence on 'seen' and 'him'. Of course, it could be claimed that this was the same thing as:

Ive ˏseen him

ii)

but it has been pointed out that the two versions are different in several ways. Since 'him' has greater prominence in (i), it cannot occur in its weak form ɪm, but must be pronounced hɪm, whereas in (ii) the pronunciation is likely to be aɪv ˏsiːn ɪm. The two versions are said to convey different meanings, too. Version (i) might be said in conversation on hearing someone's name, as in this example:

A: John Cleese is a very funny actor.
B: 'Oh ˏyes |Ive ˏseen ˏhim

In version (ii), on the other hand, the word 'seen' is given the greatest prominence, and it is likely to sound as though the speaker has some reservation, or has something further to say:

A: Have you seen my father yet?
B: Ive ˏseen him |but I 'havent had ' time to ˏtalk to him

The same is found with 'her', as in

Ive ˏseen ˏher
aɪv ˏsiːn ˏhɜː

compared with

Ive ˏseen her
aɪv ˏsiːn ə

This is a difficult problem, since it weakens the general claim made earlier that each tone-unit contains only one tonic syllable.

Identifying tone-unit boundaries

It is a generally accepted principle in the study of grammar that utterances may contain one or more sentences, and that one can identify on grammatical grounds the places where one sentence ends

and another begins. In a similar way in suprasegmental phonology it is claimed that utterances may be divided up into tone-units, and that one can identify on phonetic or phonological grounds the places where one tone-unit ends and another tone-unit begins. However, giving rules for determining where the boundaries are placed is not easy, except in cases where a clear pause separates tone-units. Two principles are usually mentioned: one is that it is possible in most cases to detect some sudden change from the pitch level at the end of one tone-unit to the pitch level that starts the following tone-unit, and recognition of the start of the following tone-unit is made easier by the fact that speakers tend to "return home" to a particular pitch level at the beginning of a tone-unit. The second principle used in tone-unit boundary identification is a rhythmical one: it is claimed that *within* the tone-unit, speech has a regular rhythm, but that rhythm is broken or interrupted at the tone-unit boundary. Both the above principles are useful guides, but one regularly finds, in analysing natural speech, cases where it remains difficult or impossible to make a clear decision; the principles may well also be factually correct, but it should be emphasised that at present there is no conclusive evidence from instrumental study in the laboratory that they are.

Anomalous tone-units

However comprehensive one's descriptive framework may be (and the one given in this course is very limited), there will inevitably be cases which do not fit within it. For example other tones such as fall–rise–fall or rise–fall–rise are occasionally found. In the head, we sometimes find cases where the stressed syllables are not all high or all low, as in the following example:

,After ,one of the 'worst 'days of my .life

It can also happen that a speaker is interrupted and leaves a tone-unit incomplete – for example, lacking a tonic syllable. To return to the analogy with grammar, one often finds in natural speech, sentences which are grammatically anomalous or incomplete, but this does not deter the grammarian from describing "normal" sentence structure. Similarly, though there are inevitably problems and exceptions, we continue to treat the tone-unit as something that can be described, defined and recognised.

Notes on problems and further reading

The main concern of this chapter is to complete the description of intonational form, including analysis of perhaps the most difficult aspect, that of recognising fall–rise and rise–fall tones when they are extended over a number of syllables. This is necessary since no complete analysis of intonation can be done without having studied these "extended tones".

The most detailed discussion of the difference between fall–rise and the "compound" fall–plus–rise is Sharp (1958), though this is not easy reading and many will find it hard to follow some of the examples. It is interesting that Brazil *et al.* (1980) exclude compound tone completely from their analysis.

On tone-unit boundaries, there is a clear explanation of the problems in Cruttenden (1986), pp. 35–42, and in more detail in Crystal (1969), pp. 204–7. Brazil *et al.* make it clear (pp. 45–6) that they attach little importance to the identification of such boundaries. The study of Scottish English by Brown *et al.* (1980) gives ample evidence that tone-units in real life are not by any means always like tone-units in text-books.

Declination was given importance by Pierrehumbert (1979, 1987); see Cruttenden (1986), pp. 67–72 for a summary.

Notes for teachers

I would like to emphasise how valuable an exercise it is for students and teachers to attempt to analyse some recorded speech for themselves. For beginners it is best to start on slow, careful speech, such as that of newsreaders, before attempting conversational speech. One can learn more about intonation in an hour of this work than in days of reading text-books on the subject, and one's interest in and understanding of theoretical problems becomes much more profound.

Written exercises

1. The following sentences are given with intonation marks. Sketch the pitch within the lines below, leaving a gap between each syllable.
   a) 'Which was the ˏcheap one did you say

   b) I 'only 'want to ˏtaste it

   c) ˌShe would have ˌthought it was ˏobvious

   d) There 'wasnt 'even a 'piece of ˏbread in the ˏhouse

   e) ˏNow will you be ˏlieve me

2. This exercise is similar, but here you are given polysyllabic words and a tone; you must draw an appropriate pitch movement between the lines.
   a) (rise) opportunity

   b) (fall–rise) actually

   c) (fall) confidently

   d) (rise–fall) magnificent

e) (rise) relationship

f) (fall–rise) afternoon

18 Functions of intonation 1

The form of intonation has now been described in some detail, and we will move on to look more closely at its functions. Perhaps the best way to start on this is to ask ourselves what would be lost if we were to speak *without* intonation: you should try to imagine speech in which every syllable was said on the same level pitch, with no pauses and no changes in speed or loudness. This is the sort of speech that would be produced by a "mechanical speech" device (as described at the beginning of Chapter 14) that made sentences by putting together recordings of isolated words. To put it in the broadest possible terms, we can see that intonation makes it easier for a listener to understand what a speaker is trying to convey. The ways in which intonation does this are very complex, and many suggestions have been made for ways of isolating different functions. Among the most often proposed are the following:

i) Intonation enables us to express emotions and attitudes as we speak, and this adds a special kind of "meaning" to spoken language. This is often called the **attitudinal function** of intonation.
ii) Intonation helps to produce the effect of prominence on syllables that need to be perceived as stressed, and in particular the placing of tonic stress on a particular syllable marks out the word to which it belongs as the most important in the tone-unit. This has been called the **accentual function** of intonation.
iii) The listener is better able to recognise the grammar and syntactic structure of what is being said by using the information contained in the intonation: for example, such things as the placement of boundaries between phrases, clauses or sentences, the difference between questions and statements and the use of grammatical subordination may be indicated. This has been called the **grammatical function** of intonation.
iv) Looking at the act of speaking in a broader way, we can see that intonation can signal to the listener what is to be taken as "new" information and what is already "given", can suggest when the speaker is indicating some sort of contrast or link with material in another tone-unit and, in conversation, can convey to the listener what kind of response is expected. Such functions are examples of intonation's **discourse function**.

The attitudinal function has been given so much importance in past

work on intonation that it will be discussed separately in this chapter, though it should eventually become clear that it overlaps considerably with the discourse function. In the case of the other three functions, it will be argued that it is difficult to see how they could be treated as separate: for example, the placement of tonic stress is closely linked to the presentation of "new" information, while the question/statement distinction and the indication of contrast seem to be equally important in grammar and discourse. What seems to be common to accentual, grammatical and discourse functions is the indication, by means of intonation, of the relationship between some linguistic element and the context in which it occurs. The word used in linguistics for this type of relationship is **syntagmatic**, and I will refer to the accentual, grammatical and discourse functions as **syntagmatic functions** of intonation. The fact that they overlap with each other to a large degree is not so important if one does not insist on discovering several distinct functions.

The rest of this chapter is concerned with a critical examination of the attitudinal function.

18.1 The attitudinal function of intonation

Many writers have expressed the view that intonation is used to convey our feelings and attitudes; for example, the same sentence can be said in different ways, which might be labelled "angry", 'happy", "grateful", "bored", and so on. It has also been widely observed that the form of intonation is different in different languages; for example, the intonation of languages such as Swedish, Italian or Hindi is instantly recognisable as being different from that of English. Not surprisingly, it has often been said that foreign learners of English need to learn English intonation; some have gone further than this and claimed that, unless the foreign learner learns the appropriate way to use intonation in a given situation, there is a risk that he or she may unintentionally give offence; for example, the learner might use an intonation suitable for expressing boredom or discontent when what was needed was an expression of gratitude or affection. This misleading view of intonation must have caused unnecessary anxiety to many learners of the language.

Let us begin by considering how one might analyse the attitudinal function of intonation. One possibility would be for the analyst to invent a large number of sentences and try saying them with different intonation patterns (i.e. different combinations of head and tone), noting what attitude was supposed to correspond to the intonation in each case; of course, the results are then very subjective, and based on

an artificial performance that has little resemblance to conversational speech. Alternatively, the analyst could say these different sentences to a group of listeners and ask them all to write down what attitudes they thought were being expressed; however, we have a vast range of adjectives available for labelling attitudes and the members of the group would probably produce a very large number of such adjectives, leaving the analyst with the problem of deciding whether pairs such as 'pompous' and 'stuck-up', or 'obsequious' and 'sycophantic' were synonyms or represented different attitudes. To overcome this difficulty, one could ask the members of the group to choose among a small number of adjectives (or "labels") given by the analyst; the results would then inevitably be easier to quantify (that is, the job of counting the different responses would be simpler) but the results would no longer represent the listeners' free choice of label. An alternative procedure would be to ask a lot of speakers to say a list of sentences in different ways according to labels provided by the analyst, and see what intonational features are found in common (for example, one might count how many speakers used a low head in saying something in a "hostile" way). The results of such experiments are usually very variable and difficult to interpret, not least because the range of acting talent in a randomly selected group is considerable.

A much more useful and realistic approach is to study recordings of different speakers' natural, spontaneous speech and try to make generalisations about attitudes and intonation on this basis. Many problems remain, however. In the method described previously, the analyst tries to select sentences (or passages of some other size) whose meaning is fairly "neutral" from the emotional point of view, and will tend to avoid material such as 'Why don't you leave me alone?' or 'How can I ever thank you enough?' because the lexical meaning of the words used already makes the speaker's attitude pretty clear, whereas sentences such as 'She's going to buy it tomorrow' or 'The paper has fallen under the table' are less likely to prejudice the listener. The choice of material is much less free for someone studying natural speech. Nevertheless, if we are ever to make new discoveries about intonation, it will be as a result of studying what people actually say rather than inventing examples of what they *might* say.

The notion of "expressing an emotion or attitude" is itself a more complex one than is generally realised. Firstly, an emotion may be expressed involuntarily or voluntarily; if I say something in a "happy" way, this may be because I *feel* happy, or because I want to convey to *you* the *impression* that I am happy. Secondly, an attitude that is expressed could be an attitude towards the listener (e.g. if I say something in a "friendly" way), towards what is being said (e.g. if I say something in a "sceptical" or "dubious" way) or towards some external event or situation (e.g. "regretful" or "disapproving").

However, one point is much more important and fundamental than all the problems discussed above. To understand this point you should imagine (or even actually *perform*) your pronunciation of a sentence in a number of different ways: for example, if the sentence was 'I want to buy a new car' and you were to say it in the following ways: "pleading", "angry", "sad", "happy", "proud", it is certain that at least *some* of your performances will be different from some others, but it is also certain that the technique for analysing and transcribing intonation introduced earlier in the course will be found inadequate to represent the different things you do. You will have used variations in *loudness* and *speed*, for example; almost certainly you will have used different *voice qualities* for different attitudes. You may have used your pitch range (which was introduced in 15.3) in different ways: your pitch movements may have taken place within quite a narrow range (**narrow pitch range**) or using the full range between high and low (**wide pitch range**); if you did not use wide pitch range, you may have used different **keys**: **high key** (using the upper part of your pitch range), **mid key** (using the middle part of the range) or **low key** (the lower part). It is very likely that you will have used different **facial expressions** and even **gestures** and **body movements**. These factors are all of great importance in conveying attitudes and emotions, yet the traditional handbooks on English pronunciation have almost completely ignored them.

If we accept the importance of these factors it becomes necessary to consider how they are related to intonation, and what intonation itself consists of. We can isolate three distinct types of suprasegmental variable:

SEQUENTIAL

These components of intonation are found as elements in sequences of other such elements occurring one after another (never simultaneously). These are:

i) pre-heads, heads, tonic syllables and tails (with their pitch possibilities)
ii) pauses
iii) tone-unit boundaries.

These have all been introduced in previous chapters.

PROSODIC

These components are characteristics of speech which are constantly present and observable while speech is going on. The most important are:

i) width of pitch range
ii) key
iii) loudness
iv) speed
v) voice quality.

It is not possible to speak without one's speech having some degree or type of pitch range, loudness, speed and voice quality (with the possible exception that pitch factors are largely lost in whispered speech). Different speakers do, of course, have their own typical pitch range, loudness, voice quality, etc., and contrasts among prosodic components should be seen as relative to these "background" speaker characteristics.

Each of these prosodic components needs a proper framework for categorisation, and this is an interesting area of current research. One example of the prosodic component "width of pitch range" has already been mentioned in 15.3, when "extra pitch height" was introduced, and the "rhythmicality" discussed in 14.1 could be regarded as another prosodic component. Prosodic components should be regarded as part of intonation along with sequential components.

PARALINGUISTIC

Mention was made above of facial expressions, gestures and body movements. People who study human behaviour use the term **body language** for such activity. One could also mention certain **vocal effects** such as laughs and sobs. These are obviously relevant to the act of speaking but could not themselves properly be regarded as components of speech. Again, they need a proper descriptive and classificatory system, but this is not something that comes within the scope of this course, nor in my opinion should they be regarded as components of intonation.

What advice, then, can be given to the foreign learner of English who wants to learn "correct intonation"? It is certainly true that a few generalisations can be made about the attitudinal functions of some components of intonation. Within tone, for example, most books agree on some basic meanings; here are some examples:

1. *Fall*
   Finality, definiteness: That is the end of the ˏnews
   I'm absolutely ˏcertain
   Stop ˏtalking
2. *Rise*
   Most of the functions attributed to rises are nearer to grammatical

than attitudinal), as in the first three examples given below; they are included here mainly to give a fuller picture of intonational function.

General questions: Can you ˏhelp me
Is it ˏover

Listing: ˏRed, ˏbrown, ˏyellow or ˏblue
(fall is normal on the last item)

"More to follow": I phoned them right aˏway
(and they agreed to come)
You must write it aˏgain
(and this time, get it right)

Encouraging: It wont ˏhurt

3. *Fall–rise*

Uncertainty, doubt: You ˎmay be right
Its ˎpossible

Requesting: Can I ˎbuy it
Will you ˎlend it to me

4. *Rise–fall*

Surprise, being impressed: You were ˏfirst
ˏAll of them

Generalisations such as these are, however, too broad, and foreign learners do not find it easy to learn to use intonation through studying them. Similarly, within the area of prosodic components most generalisations tend to be very broad and obvious: wider pitch range tends to be used in excited or enthusiastic speaking, slower speed is typical of the speech of someone who is tired or bored, and so on. Most of the generalisations one could make are probably true for a lot of other languages as well. In short, of the rules and generalisations that could be made about conveying attitudes through intonation, those which are not actually wrong are likely to be too trivial to be worth learning. I have witnessed many occasions when foreigners have unintentionally caused misunderstanding or even offence in speaking to an English person, but can remember very few occasions when this could be attributed to "using the wrong intonation" except when a mistake caused a difference in apparent grammatical meaning (something that is dealt with in the next chapter).

It should not be concluded that intonation is not important for conveying attitudes. What is being claimed here is that, though it *is* of great importance, the complexity of the total set of sequential and prosodic components of intonation and of paralinguistic features makes it a very difficult thing to teach. One might compare the difficulty with that of trying to write rules for how one might indicate to someone of the opposite sex that one finds them attractive; while psychologists and biologists might make detailed observations and generalisations about how human beings of a particular culture behave in such a

situation, most people would rightly feel that studying these generalisations would be no substitute for practical experience, and that relying on a text-book could lead to hilarious consequences. The attitudinal use of intonation is something that is best acquired through talking with and listening to English speakers, and this course aims simply to train learners to be more aware of and sensitive to the way English speakers use intonation.

Notes on problems and further reading

Perhaps the most controversial question concerning English intonation is what its function is; pedagogically speaking, this is a very important question, since one would not wish to devote time to teaching something without knowing what its value was likely to be. At the beginning of the chapter I list four commonly cited functions; it is possible to construct a longer list: Lee (1958), for example, proposes ten.

For general introductory reading on the attitudinal function of intonation, see O'Connor and Arnold (1973), Chapter 2; Gimson (1989). Critical views are expressed in Brazil *et al.* (1980), pp. 98–103 and Crystal (1969), pp. 282–308 and there is a good survey in Cruttenden (1986), pp. 95–126.

Few people have actually done experiments on listeners' perception of attitudes through intonation. The experiments reported in Crystal (1969), chapter 7, are only small-scale pilot experiments. Uldall (1960, 1964) used a speech synthesiser to vary pitch and elicit listeners' judgments. Lieberman and Michaels (1962) found that they could get reasonably accurate recognition of attitudes using short recording of sentences spoken in different ways, but that when the recordings were distorted in such a way that most acoustic information was removed (e.g. the speech sounds, voice quality, loudness variations etc.) leaving only the pitch information – that part traditionally equated with intonation – listeners' ability to recognise the attitudes was seriously reduced.

Once one has recognised the importance of features other than pitch, it is necessary to devise a framework for categorising these features. In writing this course I have found it necessary to do this in a way which is somewhat different from other writers' proposals. The framework set out in Crystal and Quirk (1964) is unsatisfactory in two ways: firstly, no explicit distinction is made between sequential and prosodic variables and the choice between, say, rising as opposed to falling tone is presented as a choice of the same type as the choice between fast and slow speed (tempo), which I feel is confusing. Secondly, paralinguistic

features of the 'vocal effect' type are treated as part of intonation, and it is not made sufficiently clear how these are to be distinguished from prosodic features. Crystal (1969) defines paralinguistic features as: '...vocal effects which are primarily the result of physiological mechanisms other than the vocal cords, such as the direct results of the workings of the pharyngeal, oral or nasal cavities' but this does not seem to me to fit the facts. In my view, 'paralinguistic' implies 'outside the system of contrasts used in spoken language' – which does not, of course, necessarily mean 'non-vocal'. I would therefore treat prosodic variables as linguistic, and consequently part of intonation, while vocal effects like laughs or sobs are non-linguistic vocal effects to be classed with gestures and facial expressions. Brown (1990), on the other hand, uses 'paralinguistic' to include what I call 'prosodic', and appears to have no separate term for non-linguistic vocal effects.

The term 'voice quality' needs comment, as it tends to be used to refer to three different things:

i) The personal, 'background' characteristics that make one person's voice recognisably different from another. Crystal (1969), pp. 100–4, uses it in this sense; see also Nolan (1973).
ii) The result of different types of vocal fold vibration.
iii) The auditory quality resulting from the complex interaction of laryngeal and supralaryngeal features.

The last use is the basis of the major work in this field, the treatment by Laver (1968, 1980); if one adopts this as the meaning of 'voice quality' it is preferable to use the term 'phonation type' (see Catford, 1964) for (ii), and in any case I would prefer to use 'personal speaker characteristics' for (i).

Note for teachers

Tape Unit 18 consists of extracts from a recording of spontaneous dialogue. Students usually feel that listening to these unfamiliar voices chopped up into small pieces is hard work, but generally the transcription exercise is not found nearly as difficult as expected.

Written exercises

In the following bits of conversation, you are supplied with an "opening line" and a response that you must imagine saying. You are

given an indication in brackets of the feeling or attitude expressed, and you must mark on the text the intonation you think is appropriate (mark only the response). As usual in intonation work in this book, punctuation is left out, since it can cause confusion.

1. It looks nice for a ˏswim Its rather cold *(doubtful)*
2. Why not get a ˏcar Because I cant afford it *(impatient)*
3. Ive lost my ˏticket Youre silly then *(stating the obvious)*
4. You cant have an ice ˏcream Oh please *(pleading)*
5. What times are the ˏbuses Seven o'clock seven thirty and eight *(listing)*
6. She got eight ˏ'A' levels Eight *(impressed)*
7. How much ˏwork have you got to do Ive got to do the shopping *(and more things after that)*
8. Will the ˏchildren go Some of them might *(uncertain)*

19 Functions of intonation 2

In the previous chapter a distinction was made between the attitudinal function of intonation and several other functions that were given the collective names of **syntagmatic functions**. They include accentual, grammatical and discourse functions, and these are discussed below.

19.1 The accentual function of intonation

The term **accentual** is derived from "accent", a word used by some writers to refer to what in this course is called "stress". When writers say that intonation has accentual function they imply that the placement of stress is something that is determined by intonation. It is possible to argue against this view: in Chapters 10 and 11, word stress was presented as something quite independent of intonation, and subsequently (p. 157) it was said that "intonation is carried entirely by the stressed syllables of a tone-unit". This means that in the presentation so far it has been implied that the placing of stress is independent of and prior to the choice of intonation. However, one particular aspect of stress *could* be regarded as part of intonation: this is the placement of the tonic stress within the tone-unit. It would be reasonable to suggest that while word stress was independent of intonation, the placement of tonic stress was a function (the accentual function) of intonation. Some older pronunciation handbooks refer to this area as "sentence stress", which is not an appropriate name: the sentence is a unit of grammar, while the location of tonic stress is a matter which concerns the tone-unit, a unit of phonology.

The location of the tonic syllable is of considerable linguistic importance. The most common position for this is on the last lexical word (e.g. noun, adjective, verb, adverb as distinct from the function words introduced in Chapter 12, p. 102) of the tone-unit. For contrastive purposes, however, any word may become the tonic syllable. In the following pairs of examples, (a) represents normal placement and (b) contrastive:

a) | I ˌwant to ˌknow ˌwhere hes ˏtravelling to |
(The word 'to', being a preposition and not a lexical word, is not stressed.)

b) (I 'dont want to 'know where hes 'travelling ˏfrom)
| I ˌwant to ˌknow ˌwhere hes ˌtravelling ˏto |

a) | She was 'wearing a 'red ˏdress |

b) (She 'wasnt 'wearing a ˏgreen ·dress) | She was 'wearing a ˏred ·dress |

Similarly, for the purpose of emphasis we may place the tonic stress in other positions; in these examples, (a) is non-emphatic and (b) is emphatic:

a) | It was 'very ˏboring ·

b) | It was ˏvery ·boring |

a) | You 'mustnt 'talk so ˏloudly |

b) | You ˏmustnt ·talk so ·loudly |

However, it would be wrong to say that the only cases of departure from putting tonic stress on the last lexical word were cases of contrast or emphasis. There are quite a few situations where it is normal for the tonic syllable to come earlier in the tone-unit. A well-known example is the sentence 'I have plans to leave'; this is ambiguous:

a) | I have 'plans to ˏleave | (i.e. I am planning to leave.)

b) | I have ˏplans to ·leave | (i.e. I have some plans/diagrams/drawings that I have to leave.)

Version (b) could not be described as contrastive or emphatic. There are many examples similar to (b); perhaps the best rule to give is that the tonic syllable will *tend* to occur on the last lexical word in the tone-unit, but may be placed earlier in the tone-unit if there is a word there with greater importance to what is being said. This can quite often happen as a result of the last part of the tone-unit being already "given" (i.e. something which has already been mentioned or is completely predictable), for example:

a) | 'Heres that ˏbook you ·asked me to bring | (The fact that you asked me to bring it is not new.)

b) | Ive ˌgot to ˌtake the ˏdog for a ·walk | ('For a walk' is by far the most probable thing to follow 'I've got to take the dog'; if the sentence ended with 'to the vet' the tonic syllable would probably be 'vet'.)

Placement of tonic stress is, therefore, important and is closely linked to intonation. A question that remains, however, is whether one can and should treat this matter as separate from the other functions described below.

19.2 The grammatical function of intonation

The word "grammatical" tends to be used in a very loose sense in this context. It is usual to illustrate the grammatical function by inventing sentences which when written are ambiguous, and whose ambiguity can only be removed by using differences of intonation. A typical example is the sentence "Those who sold quickly made a profit". This can be said in at least two different ways:

a) | 'Those who 'sold ˏquickly ˏmade a ˏprofit |
b) | 'Those who ˏsold | ˏquickly ˏmade a ˏprofit

The difference caused by the placement of the tone-unit boundary is seen to be equivalent to giving two different paraphrases of the sentences, as in:

a) A profit was made by those who sold quickly.
b) A profit was quickly made by those who sold.

Let us look further at the role of tone-unit boundaries, and the link between the tone-unit and units of grammar. There is a strong tendency for tone-unit boundaries to occur at boundaries between grammatical units of higher order than words; it is extremely common to find a tone-unit boundary at a sentence boundary, as in:

|I 'wont have any ˏtea |I 'dont ˏlike it |

In sentences with a more complex structure, tone-unit boundaries are often found at phrase and clause boundaries as well, as in:

|In ˏFrance |where ˏfarms ˏtend to be ˏsmaller |the 'subsidies are 'more imˏportant

It is very unusual to find a tone-unit boundary at a place where the only grammatical boundary is between words. It would, for example, sound distinctly odd to have a tone-unit boundary between an article and a following noun, or between auxiliary and main verbs if they are adjacent (though we may on occasions hesitate or pause in such places within a tone-unit; some people who do a lot of arguing, notably politicians and philosophers, develop the skill of pausing for breath in such intonationally unlikely places because they are less likely to be interrupted than if they pause at the end of a sentence). Tone-unit boundary placement can, then, indicate grammatical structure to the listener and we can find minimal pairs such as the following:

a) | The Con'servatives who ˏlike the pro·posal | are ˏpleased |
b) | The Conˏservatives | who ˏlike the pro·posal | are ˏpleased |

The intonation makes clear the difference between (a) "restrictive" and (b) "non-restrictive" relative clauses; (a) implies that only *some* Conservatives like the proposal, while (b) implies that *all* the Conservatives like it.

Another component of intonation that can be said to have grammatical significance is the choice of tone on the tonic syllable. One example that is very familiar is the use of a rising tone with questions. Many languages have the possibility of changing a statement into a question simply by changing the tone from falling to rising. This is, in fact, not used very much by itself in the variety of English being described here, where questions are usually grammatically marked. Thus the sentence "The price is going up" can be said as a statement like this:

|The ˏprice is going up|

(the tonic stress could equally well be on 'up'). It would be quite acceptable in some dialects of English (e.g. many varieties of American English) to ask a question like this:

(Why do you want to buy it now?) ‖The ˏprice is going up|

But speakers in England would be more likely to ask the question like this:

(Why do you want to buy it now?) Is the ˏprice going up|

It is by no means true that a rising tone is always used for questions in English; it is quite usual, for example, to use a falling tone with questions beginning with one of the "wh-question-words" like 'what', 'which', 'when', etc. Here are two examples with typical intonations, where (a) does not start with a "wh- word" and has a rising tone and (b) begins with 'where' and has a falling tone.

a) | 'Did you 'park the ˏcar |
b) | 'Where did you 'park the ˎcar |

However, the fall in (b) is certainly not obligatory, and a rise is quite often heard in such a question. A fall is also possible in (a).

The intonation of **question-tags** (e.g. 'isn't it', 'can't he', 'should she', 'won't they', etc.) is often quoted as a case of a difference in meaning being due to the difference between falling and rising tone. In the following example, the question-tag is 'aren't they'; when it has a falling tone, as in (a), the implication is said to be that the speaker is comparatively certain that the information is correct, and simply expects the listener to provide confirmation, while the rising tone in (b) is said to indicate a lesser degree of certainty, so that the question-tag functions more like a request for information.

a) | They 'are 'coming on ˎTuesday | ˏarent they |

b) | They'are 'coming on ˏTuesday | ˏarent they ;

The difference illustrated here could reasonably be said to be as much attitudinal as grammatical. Certainly there is overlap between these two function.

19.3 The discourse function of intonation

A comparatively new area of study is becoming increasingly important in the description of natural speech. If we think of linguistic analysis as usually being linked to the sentence as the maximum unit of grammar, then the study of discourse attempts to look at the larger contexts in which sentences occur. For example, consider the four sentences in the following:

A: Have you got any free time this morning?
B: I might have later on if that meeting's off.
A: They were talking about putting it later.
B: You can't be sure.

Each sentence could be studied in isolation and be analysed in terms of grammatical construction, lexical content and so on. But it is obvious that the sentences form part of some larger act of conversational interaction between two speakers; the sentences contain several references that presuppose shared knowledge (e.g. 'that meeting' implies that both speakers know which meeting is being spoken about), and in some cases the meaning of a sentence can only be correctly interpreted in the light of knowledge of what has preceded it in the conversation (e.g. 'You can't be sure').

If we consider how intonation may be studied in relation to discourse, we can identify two main areas: one of them is the use of intonation to focus the listener's attention on aspects of the message that are most important, and the other is concerned with the regulation of conversational behaviour. We will look at these in turn.

In the case of "attention focussing", the most obvious use has already been described: this is the placing of tonic stress on the appropriate syllable of one particular word in the tone-unit. In many cases it is easy to demonstrate that the tonic stress is placed on the word that is in some sense the "most important", as in:

|She 'went to ˏScotland|

Sometimes it seems more appropriate to describe tonic stress placement in terms of "information content": the more predictable a word's occurrence is in a given context, the lower its information content is,

and tonic stress will tend to be placed on words with high information content. This is the explanation that would be used in the case of the sentences suggested in 19.1:

a) |Ive ˌgot to ˌtake the ˎdog for a ˏwalk|
b) |Ive ˌgot to ˌtake the ˌdog to the ˎvet|

The word 'vet' is less predictable (has a higher information content) than 'walk'. However, we still find many cases where it is difficult to explain tonic placement in terms of "importance" or "information". For example, in messages like:

Your coat's on fire	The wing's breaking up
The radio's gone wrong	Your uncle's died

probably the majority of English speakers would place the tonic stress on the subject noun, though it is difficult to see how this is more important than the last lexical word in each of the sentences. The placement of tonic stress is still to some extent an unsolved mystery; it is clear, though, that it is at least partly determined by the larger context (linguistic and non-linguistic) in which the tone-unit occurs.

We can see at least two other ways in which intonation can assist in focussing attention. The tone chosen can indicate whether the tone-unit in which it occurs is being used to present new information or to refer to information which is felt to be already possessed by speaker and hearer. For example, in the following sentence:

| ˈSince the ˎlast time we met | when we had that ˈhuge ˎdinner ! Ive ˈbeen on a ˎdiet ˏ

the first two tone-units present information which is relevant to what the speaker is saying, but which is not something new and unknown to the listener. The final tone-unit, however, does present new information. Writers on discourse intonation have proposed that the falling tone indicates new information while rising (including falling–rising) tones indicate "shared" or "given" information.

Another use of intonation connected with the focussing of attention is **intonational subordination**; we can signal that a particular tone-unit is of comparatively low importance and as a result give correspondingly greater importance to adjacent tone-units. For example:

a) ! As I exˌpect youve ˎheard | theyre ˈonly adˈmitting eˎmergency ˏcases |
b) | The ˌJapaˎnese | for ˌsome ˌreason or ˎother | ˈdrive on the ˎleft | like ˎus |

In a typical conversational pronunciation of these sentences, the first tone-unit of (a) and the second and fourth tone-units of (b) might be treated as intonationally subordinate; the prosodic characteristics

marking this are usually (i) a drop to a lower part of the pitch range ("low key"), (ii) increased speed, (iii) narrower range of pitch and (iv) lower loudness, relative to the non-subordinate tone-unit(s). The use of these components has the result that the subordinate tone-units are less easy to hear. Native speakers can usually still understand what is said, if necessary by guessing at inaudible or unrecognisable words on the basis of their knowledge of what the speaker is talking about; foreign learners of English, on the other hand, having in general less "common ground" or shared knowledge with the speaker, often find that these subordinate tone-units, with their "throw-away", parenthetic style, cause serious difficulties in understanding.

We now turn to the second main area of intonational discourse function, the regulation of conversational behaviour. We have already seen how the study of sequences of tone-units in the speech of one speaker can reveal information carried by intonation which would not have been recognised if intonation was analysed only at the level of individual tone-units. Intonation is also important in the conversational interaction of two or more speakers. Most of the research on this has been on conversational interaction of a rather restricted kind, such as between doctor and patient, teacher and pupil or between the various speakers in court cases. In such material it is comparatively easy to identify what each speaker is actually *doing* in speaking – for example, questioning, challenging, advising, encouraging, disapproving, etc. It is likely that other forms of conversation can be analysed in the same way, though this is considerably more difficult. In a more general way, it can be seen that speakers use various prosodic components to indicate to others that they have finished speaking, that another person is expected to speak, that a particular type of response is required, and so on. A very familiar example is that quoted above (p. 175), where the difference between falling and rising intonation on question-tags is supposed to indicate to the listener what sort of response is expected. It seems that key (the part of the pitch range used) is important in signalling information about conversational interaction. We can observe many examples in non-linguistic behaviour of the use of signals to regulate **turn-taking**: in many sports, for example, it is necessary to do this – footballers can indicate that they are looking for someone to pass the ball to, or that they are ready to receive the ball, and doubles partners in tennis can indicate to each other who is to play a shot. Intonation, in conjunction with "body language" such as eye-contact, facial expression, gestures and head-turning, is used for similar purposes in speech, as well as for establishing or confirming the status of the participants in a conversation.

19.4 Conclusions

It seems clear that studying intonation in relation to discoucse makes it possible to explain much more comprehensively the uses that speakers make of intonation. Practically all the separate functions traditionally attributed to intonation (attitudinal, accentual and grammatical) could be seen as different aspects of discourse function. The risk, with such a broad approach, is that one might end up making generalisations that were *too* broad and had little power to predict with any accuracy the intonation that a speaker would use in a particular context. It is too early yet to say how useful the discourse approach will be, but even if it achieves nothing else, it can at least be claimed to have shown the inadequacy of attempting to analyse the function of intonation on the basis of isolated sentences or tone-units, removed from their linguistic and situational context.

Notes on problems and further reading

19.1 In Britain, the most important work on the placement of tonic stress is Halliday (1967); his term for this is 'tonicity', and he adopts the widely-used linguistic term 'marked' for tonicity that deviates from what I have called (for the sake of simplicity) 'normal'. Within generative phonology there has been much debate about whether one can put tonic ('primary') stress in the right place without referring to the non-linguistic context in which the speaker says something. This debate is well summarised and criticised in Schmerling (1976), but see Bolinger (1972).

19.2 Opinions differ about whether intonation has a grammatical function. Cruttenden (1970) argues that intonation is affected by and reflects the grammar of what is said, but does not alter it or contribute to it. Consequently, it is wrong to say that it has a grammatical function. I think Cruttenden's arguments are in many ways convincing, but one must recognise that if intonation is influenced by and reflects the grammar, it follows that it must be a help to listeners in interpreting the grammar of what they hear, and perhaps more importantly, if a speaker's intonation is inappropriate in relation to the grammar, listeners will find it more difficult to interpret the grammar, and may be confused.

19.3 One of the most interesting developments of recent years has been the emergence of a theory of *discourse intonation*. Readers unfamiliar with the study of discourse may find some initial difficulty in understanding

some of the principles involved; the best way to begin is to read Coulthard (1977), paying particular attention to the chapter on intonation, then go on to study Brazil *et al.* (1980). I have not been able to do more than suggest the rough outline of this approach.

The treatment of intonational subordination is based not on the work of Brazil but on Crystal and Quirk (1964), pp. 52–6 and Crystal (1969), pp. 235–52. The basic philosophy is the same, however, in that both views illustrate the fact that there is in intonation some organisation at a level higher than the isolated tone-unit; this was pointed out in the discussion of Trim (1959) (notes on Chapter 16 above); see also Fox (1973). A parallel might be drawn with the relationship between the sentence and the paragraph in writing. It seems likely that a considerable amount of valuable new research on pronunciation will grow out of the study of discourse.

Note for teachers

The comment about Tape Unit 18 made above applies also to **Tape Unit 19**: at first hearing it seems very difficult, but when worked on step by step it is far from impossible. In fact, although this passage sounds rapid and colloquial it is still easier to analyse than a full-speed conversational interchange.

Written exercises

1. In the following exercise, read the "opening line" and then decide the most suitable place for tonic stress placement (underline the syllable) in the response.
   a) I'd like you to ˏhelp me . . . (right) can I do the shopping for you
   b) I hear you're offering to do the ˏshopping for someone . . . (right) can I do the shopping for you
   c) What was the first thing that ˏhappened . . . first the professor explained her theory
   d) Was the theory explained by ˏstudents . . . no first the professor explained her theory
   e) Tell me how the ˏtheory was presented . . . first she explained her theory
   f) I think it starts at ten to ˏthree . . . no ten past three
   g) I think it starts at quarter past ˏthree . . . no ten past three
   h) I think it starts at ten past ˏfour . . . no ten past three

2. The following sentences are given without punctuation. Underline the appropriate tonic syllable places and mark tone-unit boundaries where you think they are appropriate.
   a) *(he wrote the letter in a sad way)* he wrote the letter sadly
   b) *(it's regrettable that he wrote the letter)* he wrote the letter sadly
   c) four plus six divided by two equals five
   d) four plus six divided by two equals seven
   e) we broke one thing after another fell down
   f) we broke one thing after another that night

20 Further areas of study in phonetics and phonology

This chapter completes the course by looking at three further areas of study; each is important in its own way, and each is an area on which students working at an advanced level in phonetics and phonology spend a considerable amount of time.

20.1 Distinctive features

Many references have been made to phonology in this course, with the purpose of making use of the concepts and analytical techniques of that subject to help explain various facts about English pronunciation as efficiently as possible. One might call this "applied phonology"; however, the phonological analysis of different languages raises a great number of difficult and interesting theoretical problems, and for a long time the study of phonology "for its own sake" has been regarded as an important area of theoretical linguistics. Within this area of what could be called "pure phonology", problems are examined with little or no reference to their relevance to the language learner. Many different theoretical approaches have been developed, and no area of phonology has been free from critical examination. The very fundamental notion of the phoneme, for example, has been treated in many different ways.

One approach that has been given a lot of importance is **distinctive feature analysis**, which is based on the principle that phonemes should be regarded not as independent and indivisible units, but instead as combinations of different features. For example, if we consider the English d phoneme, it is easy to show that it differs from the plosives b and g in its place of articulation (alveolar), from t in being lenis, from s and z in not being fricative, from n in not being nasal, and so on. If we look at each of the consonants just mentioned and see which of the features each one has, we get a table like this, where + means that a phoneme does possess that feature and — means that it does not:

	d	b	g	t	s	z	n
alveolar	+	−	−	+	+	+	+
bilabial	−	+	−	−	−	−	−
velar	−	−	+	−	−	−	−
lenis	+	+	+	−	−	+	(+)*
plosive	+	+	+	+	−	−	−
fricative	−	−	−	−	+	+	−
nasal	−	−	−	−	−	−	+

* Since there is no fortis/lenis contrast among nasals this could be left blank

If you look carefully at this table, you will see that the combination of + and − values for each phoneme is different; if two sounds were represented by exactly the same +'s and −'s, then by definition they could not be different phonemes. In the case of the limited set of phonemes used for this example, not all the features are needed: if one wished, it would be possible to get rid of, for example, the feature "velar" and the feature "nasal". The g phoneme would still be distinguished from b and d by being *neither* alveolar *nor* bilabial, and n would be distinct from plosives and fricatives simply by being *neither* plosive *nor* fricative. Of course, to produce a complete analysis of all the phonemes of English, other features would be needed for representing other types of consonant and for vowels and diphthongs. In distinctive feature analysis the features themselves thus become important components of the phonology.

Let us look at how the full set of English vowels might be analysed in terms of a small number of distinctive features. We could begin with a feature called **short** to make the fundamental distinction between ɪ, e, æ, ʌ, ɒ, ʊ, ə (+short), and iː, ɑː, ɔː, ɜː, uː, eɪ, aɪ, ɔɪ, əʊ, aʊ, ɪə, eə, ʊə (−short). Then to distinguish pure vowels from diphthongs we could have the feature **pure**; ɪ, e, æ, ʌ, ɒ, ʊ, ə, iː, ɑː, ɔː, ɜː, uː would be (+pure) and all the diphthongs would be (−pure). The feature **close** would have the value + for ɪ, ʊ, iː, uː, and we could also use this for ɪə and ʊə if we adopt the convention that most of the features will be used to classify the *first part* of the diphthongs. All the other vowels and diphthongs would then be (−close). We could also have the feature **open**; æ, ʌ, ɒ, ɑː, aɪ, aʊ would be (+open), all the others being (−open). All vowels and diphthongs that are neither close nor open, i.e. e, ə, ɔː, ɜː, eɪ, ɔɪ, əʊ, eə, must be distinguished from each other by other features. Some of the vowels that are (−close, −open) are central and some are not; the feature **central** would identify ʌ, ə, ɜː, əʊ, all others being (−central). With the features introduced so far, we still do not have complete distinctiveness for all vowels: æ and ɒ, for example, are identical in feature specification so far, as are ɪ and ʊ, iː and uː, eɪ and ɔɪ. We can use the feature **round** to separate these pairs, so that in each case the former is (−round) and the latter (+round). The only remaining problem is that we have three different sorts of diphthong:

those which glide to ɪ (eɪ, aɪ, ɔɪ), those which glide to ʊ (eʊ, aʊ) and those which glide to ə (ɪə, eə, ʊə). The obvious approach would be to have two additional features: **gliding to ɪ** and **gliding to ʊ**; ɪə, eə and ʊə would be (−gliding to ɪ, −gliding to ʊ). In fact, however, it turns out that if we have only the former of these two features, that is, gliding to ɪ, all the diphthongs which are (−gliding to ɪ) can be distinguished from each other in terms of their beginnings, using the features we have already introduced. This can all be seen in Table 5, which you should look at carefully. This is only one possible analysis, and many others, using quite different features, are equally efficient.

It has been claimed by some writers that distinctive feature analysis is not irrelevant to the study of language learning, and that pronunciation difficulties experienced by learners are better seen as due to the need to learn a particular feature or combination of features than as the absence of particular phonemes. For example, English speakers learning French or German have to learn to produce front rounded vowels. In English it is not necessary to be able to class a vowel as (+front, +round), whereas this *is* necessary for French and German; it could be said that the major task for the learner in this case is to learn the combination of these features, not to learn the individual vowels y, ø and (in French) œ.* English, on the other hand, has to be able to distinguish dental from labiodental and alveolar places of articulation for θ to be distinct from f and s and for ð to be distinct from v and z; this requires an additional feature that most languages do not need, and this could be seen as specific task for the learner of English. Distinctive feature phonologists have also claimed that when children are learning their first language, they acquire features rather than individual phonemes.

20.2 Experimental phonetics

Experimental phonetics has been an important part of phonetics for almost a century, and experimental work in phonetics laboratories has produced many important discoveries about how speech is produced and perceived. Too often, however, this area of the subject is regarded as a mysterious world where incomprehensible things are done with expensive equipment. There is reason to hope that in coming years the

* The phonetic symbols represent the following sounds: y is a close front rounded vowel (e.g. the vowel in French *tu*, German *bühne*); ø is a half-close front rounded vowel (e.g. French *peu*, German *schön*); œ is a half-open front rounded vowel (e.g. French *œuf*).

fields of pronunciation teaching and of experimental phonetics will become much more closely linked.

In explaining the subject-matter of experimental phonetics it is usual to start by mentioning the speech chain, which may be diagrammed in simplified form like this:

speaker's brain	→ speaker's vocal tract	→ transmission of sound through air	→ listener's ear	→ listener's brain
1	2	3	4	5
	articulatory phonetic	**acoustic phonetic**	**auditory phonetic**	

With currently available equipment we are not able to discover what goes on in detail in the brain when someone is speaking, though we can make guesses based on evidence such as speech errors ("slips of the tongue") and the effects on speech production of different sorts of brain damage. Much more is known about stage 2, the articulatory aspect of speech production. Many special instruments have been developed to help us to find out about such things as the pressure of air in the lungs and the vocal tract, the flow of air out of the mouth and nose, the opening and closing of the vocal folds and of the soft palate, and the movement of articulators like the lips and the lower jaw. Recently-developed, safer X-ray techniques can help us to observe articulatory movements taking place within the vocal tract, and contact between the tongue and the palate can be measured electrically. Additionally, it is possible to detect the electrical activity that is produced when muscles contract, and we can thus observe the complex co-ordination of activity in the muscles controlling speech production. Although most of these techniques are expensive and difficult to use, it is possible that at least some of them may become more easily available; they can be very useful both for discovering in detail how English speakers produce their speech sounds, and for demonstrating to learners of English their pronunciation errors in a way that helps them to correct them. To give a brief example, recording the airflow from speakers' mouths can show how successfully they are producing the aspiration appropriate for p, t and k.

The third stage, the transmission of sound waves through the air, is studied by acoustic analysis; much has been discovered about the sounds of speech in this way. We can discover the physical events that produce the perceptual effect of vowel quality, we can measure the intensity of different sounds (which is closely related to the loudness that we perceive), and the fundamental frequency of voiced sounds (which is closely related to pitch) can be extracted from the speech signal. Until recently, the acoustic analysis of speech has been such a

Table 5. *A distinctive feature analysis of the English vowel system*

	ɪ	e	æ	ʌ	ɒ	ʊ	ə	iː	ɑː	ɔː	ɜː	uː	eɪ	aɪ	ɔɪ	əʊ	aʊ	ɪə	eə	ʊə
short	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	−	−	−	−	−	−	−	−	−	−	−	−	−
pure	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	−	−	−	−	−	−	−	−
close	+	−	−	−	−	+	−	+	−	−	−	+	−	−	−	−	−	+	−	+
open	−	−	+	+	+	−	−	−	+	−	−	−	−	+	−	−	+	−	−	−
central	−	−	−	+	−	−	+	−	−	−	+	−	−	−	−	+	−	−	−	−
gliding to ɪ	−	−	−	−	−	−	−	−	−	−	−	−	+	+	+	−	−	−	−	−
round	−	−	−	−	+	+	−	−	−	+	−	+	−	−	+	−	−	−	−	+

slow and laborious business that only small samples of speech could be analysed, but recent developments in the use of computers are making it possible to carry out analysis on a much larger scale. Not only is it possible to get an accurate computer analysis of the fundamental frequency of speech (which can be displayed on a screen for someone doing practice on intonation, or can be used in the study of the intonation of large samples of natural speech), but it is now possible to get a computer to produce a simple phonetic transcription of what is said to it. If such techniques are further developed, it should be possible to use computers to provide additional pronunciation training at times when a human teacher is not available.

Finally, it is of great importance to discover more about how the listener's brain identifies what it receives from the ear (stages 4 and 5); many experiments have shown how sensitive we are to very slight acoustic differences and how flexible we are in being able to adjust to very different speakers. We are also very strongly influenced by our expectations; if we have heard and understood half a sentence, it seems that our brain is already guessing at what the rest of it will be before it is heard, and is certainly not acting in a passive way like a simple machine. To help in discovering the organisation and the capabilities of our faculty for perceiving speech, we need to be able to produce very small and finely-controlled differences in speech sounds, and experimental phonetics has made much use of speech produced by machines called **speech synthesisers**. Here again, developments in computers are bringing about rapid changes. The best speech synthesisers are capable of producing speech of such high quality that only an expert can distinguish it from a recording of a human being's speech; less sophisticated synthesisers are becoming so cheap that they can now be bought for attaching to ordinary micro-computers. It is possible that synthetic speech may have a useful role to play in testing language learners' ability to perceive important segmental and suprasegmental distinctions in the language they are learning.

20.3 The study of variety

Differences among accents of English have been mentioned several times in the course, and this is a subject that many students of English find interesting and wish to know more about. For a long time, the study of accents was part of the subject of **dialectology**, which aimed to identify all the ways in which a language differed from place to place. Dialectology in its traditional form is therefore principally interested in geographical differences; its best-known data-gathering technique has

been to send researchers (usually called "field-workers") mainly into rural areas (where the speakers were believed to be less likely to have been influenced by other accents), to find elderly speakers (whose speech was believed to have been less influenced by other accents and to preserve older forms of the dialect) and to use lists of questions to find information about vocabulary and pronunciation, the questions being chosen to concentrate on items known to vary a lot from region to region. Surveys of this kind can provide the basis for many generalisations about geographical variation, but they have serious weaknesses, which will be discussed later.

Differences between accents are of two main sorts, **phonetic** and **phonological**. When two accents differ from each other only phonetically, we find the same number of phonemes in both accents, but some or all of the phonemes are realised differently. There may also be differences in stress or intonation, but not such as would cause a change in meaning. As an example of phonetic differences at the segmental level, it is said that Australian English has the same set of phonemes and phonemic contrasts as RP, yet Australian pronunciation is so different from RP that it is easily recognised as such. A word of caution should be given here: it is all too easy to talk about such things as "Australian English", and ignore the great variety that inevitably exists within such a large community of speakers. Every individual's speech is different from any other's; it follows from this that no one speaker can be taken to represent a particular accent or dialect, and it also follows that the idea of a "standard Received Pronunciation" is a convenient fiction, not a scientific fact.

Many accents of English also differ noticeably in intonation without the difference being such as would cause a difference in meaning; some Welsh accents, for example, have a tendency for unstressed syllables to be higher in pitch than stressed syllables. Such a difference is, again, a phonetic one. An example of a phonetic (non-phonological) difference in stress would be the stressing of verbs ending in '-ise' in some Scots and Northern Irish accents (e.g. 'realise' rɪə'laɪz).

Phonological differences are of various types: again, we can divide these into segmental and suprasegmental. Within the area of segmental phonology the most obvious type of difference is where one accent has a different number of phonemes (and hence of phonemic contrasts) from another. Many speakers with Northern English accents, for example, do not have a contrast between ʌ and ʊ, so that 'luck' and 'look' are pronounced identically (both as lʊk); in the case of consonants, many accents do not have the phoneme h. The phonemic system of such accents is different from that of RP. On the other hand, some accents differ from others in having *more* phonemes and phonemic contrasts. For example, many Northern English accents have a long eː sound as the realisation of the phoneme symbolised eɪ in RP (which is a simple

phonetic difference); but in some Northern accents there is an eɪ diphthong phoneme *and* a contrasting long vowel phoneme that could be symbolised eː. Words like 'eight' and 'reign' are pronounced eɪt, reɪn, while 'late', 'rain' (with no 'g' in the spelling) are pronounced leːt, reːn.

A more complicated kind of difference is where, without affecting the overall set of phonemes and contrasts, a phoneme has a distribution in one accent that is different from the "same" phoneme's distribution in another accent. The obvious example is r, which is restricted to occurring in pre-vocalic position in RP but in many other accents is not restricted in this way. Another example is the occurrence of j between a consonant and uː, ʊ or ʊə; in RP we can find the following: 'pew' pjuː, 'tune' tjuːn, 'queue' kjuː. However, in many American accents and in some English accents of the South and East we find that, while 'pew' is pronounced pjuː and 'queue' as kjuː, 'tune' is pronounced tuːn; this absence of j is found after the other alveolar consonants, hence: 'due' duː; 'new' nuː.

We also find another kind of variation: in the example just given above, the occurrence of the phonemes being discussed was determined by their phonological context, but sometimes the determining factor is lexical rather than phonological. For example, in many accents of the Midlands and North-Western England a particular set of words contains a vowel (represented by 'o' in the spelling) which is pronounced as ʌ in RP but as ʊ in these other accents; the list of words includes 'one', 'none', 'nothing', 'tongue', 'mongrel' and 'constable'. One of the results of this difference is that such accents have different pronunciations for the two members of pairs of words that are pronounced identically (i.e. are **homophones**) in RP, e.g. 'won' and 'one', 'nun' and 'none'.

It would be satisfying to be able to list examples of phonological differences between accents in the area of stress and intonation, but unfortunately, straightforward examples are not available; we do not yet know enough about the phonological functions of stress and intonation, and too little work has been done on comparing accents in terms of these factors. It would be necessary to show how one accent was able to make some difference in meaning with stress or intonation that another accent was unable to make. It is very probable that such differences do exist, and will be identified by suitable research work.

It was mentioned earlier that there were weaknesses in the description of accents in terms of geographical variation alone; the study of **sociolinguistics** has shown the importance of considering other sources of variation. We can find differences in pronunciation (as well as in other fields of linguistic analysis) resulting from various factors that we could call **static influences** including (in addition to geographical origin) one's age and sex, social class, educational background,

occupation and personality. In addition, various **situational** factors influence pronunciation, such as the social relationship between speaker and hearer, whether one is speaking publicly or privately and the purposes for which one is using language. Some people (who usually turn out to do well in phonetic training) find that in speaking to someone with a different accent their pronunciation gets progressively more like that of the person they are speaking to, like a chameleon adapting its colour to its environment.

Among the situational factors influencing variation, it is possible to pick out some which could be described as **stylistic**, and many linguists have attempted to produce frameworks for the analysis of style in language. We will not consider this in detail, but should note that for foreign learners a typical situation – regrettably, an almost inevitable one – is that they learn a style of pronunciation which could be described as careful and formal. Probably their teachers will speak to them in this style, though what the learners are likely to encounter when they join in conversations with native speakers is what we have referred to previously as a "rapid, casual" style. Young children have an enviable ability to acquire the rapid, casual pronunciation of a language apparently without effort if they are provided with the necessary social contact with native speakers and meaningful communication situations. It has been claimed that adults can also "pick up" spoken language in this way (**second language acquisition**) better than by the traditional classroom approach (**second language learning**) if the conditions are similar to those experienced by young children. This is an attractive idea, but for most adults the goal of learning through communicating naturally in the language throughout the day will, sadly, never be a practical one; we have to continue to make use of something like formal classroom teaching because of the limited time and resources available.

It should now be clear that the pronunciation described in this course is only one of a vast number of possible varieties. The choice of a slow, careful style is made for the sake of convenience and simplicity; learners of English need to be aware of the fact that this style is far from being the only one they will meet, and teachers of English to foreigners should do their best to expose their pupils to other varieties.

Notes on problems and further reading

20.1 Students learning about distinctive features face two main difficulties: one is understanding the basic principles and the other is learning the meanings of the rather confusing feature labels used by most writers. I

have chosen to reduce the latter problem by using labels already familiar from earlier chapters, but some information about the other labels is given here. The idea of distinctive features was put forward in the early 1930s by Bloomfield (1933) and Trubetzkoy (various publications leading up to 1939); however, in early work and in present-day functional phonology, the features are worked out individually for the language being studied. Later, under Jakobson, the idea emerged of a set of features that could be used for every language, and a set of about twelve such features was proposed in Jakobson *et al.* (1952), later reworked in more readable form in Jakobson and Halle (1956).

A universal set of features is an attractive idea, but the price one pays is that each feature has to do many jobs, and the meaning associated with it gets spread thinner and thinner, like a small amount of butter on a large amount of bread. The definition of the Jakobsonian features is thus very difficult to understand. The principle of whether features should or should not be binary (i.e. '+' or '−', 'yes' or 'no') has been much argued about, but this is too big a question to go into here (Hyman (1975), pp. 32–3, 55–8). In the 1960s it became apparent that a revision of the features was needed, and the new set was introduced in Chomsky and Halle (1968), pp. 293–329, rather pretentiously called 'The Universal Set of Phonetic Features'. Unfortunately the definitions of many of these features are also very difficult to understand and there are twice as many of them. If one does not like these features, one can use features that are designed to have a more clearly-defined phonetic meaning (Ladefoged (1982), chapter 11), or alternatively, abandon phonetically meaningful feature labels altogether (Fudge, 1967).

There is a good review of approaches to distinctive features in Clark and Yallop (1990), chapter 9 and pp. 364–8.

20.2 As far as I know there is no introductory book that explains the principles of experimental phonetics, in the sense of how to design and carry out experiments and to interpret the results in terms that are meaningful to other phoneticians. There are, however, good books that explain the speech chain and the aspects of the speech that are measurable. Denes and Pinson (1973) is entitled *The Speech Chain*, and is clear and interesting. Outlines of acoustic phonetics are given in O'Connor (1973), chapter 3, and Ladefoged (1982), chapter 8. There is fuller treatment of speech production, speech acoustics and speech perception in Borden and Harris (1984) and Lieberman and Blumstein (1988).

20.3 On the study of variety, the list of references could become enormous. Those given in the section "Suggestion for further reading" should be enough for most readers; the same is true for sociolinguistics, but I feel that any reading beyond basic introductory material ought to include some work by Labov, whose influence on the subject has been profound. See, for example, Labov (1972).

The distinction between second language learning and second language acquisition is one that has been proposed by Krashen; see for example Krashen (1981).

Note for teachers

Tape Unit 20 is short and intensive. It is meant primarily to give a final reminder that English spoken at something like full conversational speed is very different from the slow, careful pronunciation of the early Tape Units. If there is time, students should now be encouraged to go back to some of the more difficult Tape Units dealing with connected speech (say from Tape Unit 12 onwards, missing out Tape Unit 15); they will probably discover a lot of things they did not notice before.

Written exercises

1. Distinctive feature analysis looks at different properties of segments and classes of segments. In the following exercise you must find what feature or features certain groups of segments have in common; you will probably find it useful to look at the IPA chart on pp. 40–1. You are not restricted to using feature labels given in Chapter 20.
   a) k g ʔ h
   b) English iː ɪ uː ʊ Cardinal vowels i e u o
   c) t d n l s tʃ dʒ ʃ ʒ r
   d) p b f v k g h
   e) p t k f θ s ʃ tʃ
   f) uː ɔː əʊ aʊ
   g) l r w j
2. Phonological differences between accents are of various types. For each of the following sets of data, based on non-RP accents, say what you can conclude about the phonology of that accent.

a)	'sing'	sɪŋ	'finger'	fɪŋgə
	'sung'	sʌŋ	'running'	rʌnɪn
	'singing'	sɪŋɪn	'ring'	rɪŋ
b)	'day'	deː	'you'	juː
	'buy'	baɪ	'me'	miː
	'go'	goː	'more'	mɔː
	'now'	naʊ	'fur'	fɜː

c)	'mother'	mʌve	'father'	fɑ:ve
	'think'	fɪŋk	'breath'	bref
	'lip'	lɪp	'pill'	pɪw
	'help'	ewp	'hill'	ɪw
d)	'mother'	mʌðer	'father'	fɑ:ðer
	'car'	kɑ:r	'cart'	kɑ:rt
	'area'	ɛ:rɪəl	'aerial'	ɛ:rɪəl
	'idea'	aɪdɪəl	'ideal'	aɪdɪəl
	'India'	ɪndɪəl	'Norma'	nɔ:rməl
e)	'cat'	kat	'plaster'	plɑ:ster
	'cart'	kɑ:rt	'grass'	grɑ:s
	'calm'	kɑ:m	'gas'	gas

Recorded exercises

These exercises are mainly intended for students whose native language is not English; however, those exercises which involve work with transcription (exercises 2.2, 3.3, 3.5, 3.7, 4.5, 5.3, 5.4, 6.2, 7.6, 9.5, 10.1, 10.2, 10.3, 11.5, 12.3, 13.1, 13.2, 13.3, all of Tape Unit 14 and exercise 20.2) and those which give practice in intonation (Tape Units 15, 16, 17, 18 and 19, and exercise 20.3) will be useful to native speakers as well.

Each Tape Unit corresponds to a chapter of this book, with the exception that there is no Tape Unit 1 to correspond to Chapter 1. As far as possible, I have tried to relate the contents of each Tape Unit to the subject-matter of the chapter, but where the chapter is devoted to theoretical matters I have taken advantage of this to produce revision exercises going back over some of the subjects previously worked on.

The best way of listening to the tapes is in a language laboratory, where you can record your voice and later listen to it, if possible with the assistance of a tutor. However, if this is not possible, you can use the tapes on an ordinary domestic cassette recorder. If it is possible for you to use headphones you will find the sound quality, even on a cheap machine, very much better than that of the loudspeaker.

In some of the exercises you are asked to put stress or intonation marks on the text. It would obviously be sensible to do this in a way that will make it possible for you, or someone else, to erase these marks and use the exercise again.

As with the chapters of the book, the tapes are intended to be worked through from first to last. Those at the beginning are concerned with individual vowels and consonants, and the words containing them are usually pronounced in isolation in a slow, careful style. Pronouncing isolated words in this way is, of course, a very artificial practice, but the recorded exercises are designed to lead the student towards the study of comparatively natural and fluent speech by the end of the course. In some of the later exercises you will find it necessary to stop the tape in order to allow yourself enough time to write a transcription.

After Tape Unit 20, there is an answers section. Two symbols are used throughout the Tape Units: ■ means "Stop your tape" and ▶ means "Start your tape".

Tape Unit 2 English short vowels

The exercises in this Tape Unit practise the six short vowels introduced in Chapter 2. When pronouncing them, you should take care to give the vowels the correct length *and* the correct quality.

Exercise 1 Repetition

Listen and repeat:

ɪ

bit bɪt	bid bɪd	him hɪm	miss mɪs

e

bet bet	bed bed	hen hen	mess mes

æ

bat bæt	bad bæd	ham hæm	mass mæs

ʌ

cut kʌt	bud bʌd	bun bʌn	bus bʌs

ɒ

pot pɒt	cod kɒd	Tom tɒm	loss lɒs

ʊ

put pʊt	wood wʊd	pull pʊl	push pʊʃ

Exercise 2 Identification

Write the symbol for the vowel you hear in each word. (1 . . . 10)
Check your answers.

Exercise 3 Production

When you hear the number, pronounce the word (which is given in spelling and in phonetic symbols). Repeat the correct pronunciation when you hear it. *Example*: 1. 'Mad'

1. mad mæd
2. mud mʌd
3. bit bɪt
4. bet bet
5. cut kʌt
6. cot kɒt
7. put pʊt
8. pot pɒt
9. men men
10. man mæn
11. fun fʌn
12. fan fæn

Exercise 4 Short vowels contrasted

Listen and repeat (words given in spelling):

ɪ and	e	e and	æ	æ and	ʌ
bit	bet	hem	ham	lack	luck
tin	ten	set	sat	bad	bud
fill	fell	peck	pack	fan	fun
built	belt	send	sand	stamp	stump
lift	left	wreck	rack	flash	flush

ʌ and	ɒ	ɒ and	ʊ
dug	dog	lock	look
cup	cop	cod	could
rub	rob	pot	put
stuck	stock	shock	shook
luck	lock	crock	crook

Tape Unit 3 Long vowels diphthongs and triphthongs

Long vowels

Exercise 1 Repetition

Listen and repeat:

iː			
beat biːt	bead biːd	been biːn	beef biːf
ɑː			
heart hɑːt	hard hɑːd	harm hɑːm	hearth hɑːθ
ɔː			
caught kɔːt	cord kɔːd	corn kɔːn	course kɔːs
uː			
root ruːt	rude ruːd	room ruːm	roof ruːf
ɜː			
hurt hɜːt	heard hɜːd	earn ɜːn	earth ɜːθ

Exercise 2 Production

When you hear the number, pronounce the word. Repeat the correct pronunciation when you hear it.

1. heard hɜ:d
2. been bi:n
3. root ru:t
4. hearth hɑ:θ
5. caught kɔ:t
6. heart hɑ:t
7. cord kɔ:d
8. beef bi:f
9. rude ru:d
10. earn ɜ:n

Exercise 3 Transcription

Write the symbol for the vowel you hear in each word.
(1 . . . 10)

■ Check your answers.

► *Exercise 4 Long-short vowel contrasts*

Listen and repeat (words in spelling):

i: and	ɪ	ɑ: and	ʌ	ɑ: and	æ
feel	fill	calm	come	part	pat
bead	bid	cart	cut	lard	lad
steel	still	half	huff	calm	Cam
reed	rid	lark	luck	heart	hat
been	bin	mast	must	harms	hams

ɔ: and	ɒ	u: and	ʊ	ɜ: and	ʌ	ɑ: and	ɒ
caught	cot	pool	pull	hurt	hut	dark	dock
stork	stock	suit	soot	turn	ton	part	pot
short	shot	Luke	look	curt	cut	lark	lock
cord	cod	wooed	wood	girl	gull	balm	bomb
port	pot	fool	full	bird	bud	large	lodge

Exercise 5 Transcription

Write the symbol for the vowel (long or short) you hear in each word.
(1 . . . 10)

■ Check your answers.

▶ Diphthongs

Exercise 6 Repetition

Listen and repeat, making sure that the second part of the diphthong is weak.

eɪ			
mate meɪt	made meɪd	main meɪn	mace meɪs
aɪ			
right raɪt	ride raɪd	rhyme raɪm	rice raɪs
ɔɪ			
quoit kɔɪt	buoyed bɔɪd	Boyne bɔɪn	Royce rɔɪs
əʊ			
coat kəʊt	code kəʊd	cone kəʊn	close kləʊs
aʊ			
gout gaʊt	loud laʊd	gown gaʊn	louse laʊs
ɪə			
	feared fɪəd	Ian ɪən	fierce fɪəs
eə			
	cared keəd	cairn keən	scarce skeəs
ʊə			
	moored mʊəd	fuel fjʊəl	

Exercise 7 Transcription

Write the symbol for the diphthong you hear in each word.
(1 . . . 12)

■ Check your answers.

Triphthongs

▶ *Exercise 8 Repetition*

Listen and repeat:

eɪə	layer leɪə	əʊə	lowerləʊə
aɪə	liar laɪə	aʊə	tower taʊə
ɔɪə	loyal lɔɪəl		

Tape Unit 4 Plosives

Exercise 1 Repetition of initial plosives

INITIAL FORTIS p, t, k

Each word begins with a fortis plosive; notice that the plosive is aspirated. Listen and repeat:

paw pɔ:	care keə
tea ti:	two tu:
car kɑ:	key ki:
pie paɪ	tar tɑ:
toe təʊ	pay peɪ

INITIAL LENIS b, d, g

Each word begins with a lenis plosive; notice that there is practically no voicing of the plosive. Listen and repeat:

bee bi:	gear gɪə
door dɔ:	boy bɔɪ
go gəʊ	dear dɪə
bear beə	bough baʊ
do du:	day deɪ

INITIAL sp, st, sk

The plosive must be unaspirated. Listen and repeat:

spy spaɪ	score skɔ:
store stɔ:	spear spɪə
ski ski:	stay steɪ
spare speə	sky skaɪ
steer stɪə	spar spɑ:

Exercise 2 Repetition of final plosives

In the pairs of words in this exercise one word ends with a fortis plosive and the other ends with a lenis plosive. Notice the length difference in the vowel. Listen to each pair and repeat:

Fortis followed by lenis		*Lenis followed by fortis*	
mate made	meɪt meɪd	code coat	kəʊd kəʊt
rope robe	rəʊp rəʊb	bid bit	bɪd bɪt
leak league	liːk liːg	lobe lope	ləʊb ləʊp
cart card	kɑːt kɑːd	heard hurt	hɜːd hɜːt
back bag	bæk bæg	brogue broke	brəʊg brəʊk

Exercise 3 Identification of final plosives

You will hear the twenty words of Exercise 2. Each will be one of a pair. You must choose whether the word is one ending with a fortis plosive or the one ending with a lenis plosive; when you hear the word, say "fortis" if you heard the word on the left, or "lenis" if you heard the word on the right. You will then hear the correct answer and the word will be said again for you to repeat.

Example: 'coat'

FORTIS	LENIS	FORTIS	LENIS
coat kəʊt	code kəʊd	mate meɪt	made meɪd
leak liːk	league liːg	coat kəʊt	code kəʊd
hurt hɜːt	heard hɜːd	leak liːk	league liːg
bit bɪt	bid bɪd	rope rəʊp	robe rəʊb
mate meɪt	made meɪd	hurt hɜːt	heard hɜːd
lope ləʊp	lobe ləʊb	broke brəʊk	brogue brəʊg
back bæk	bag bæg	lope ləʊp	lobe ləʊb
cart kɑːt	card kɑːd	bit bɪt	bid bɪd
broke brəʊk	brogue brəʊg	back bæk	bag bæg
rope rəʊp	robe rəʊb	cart kɑːt	card kɑːd

Each of the words which follow ends with a plosive. Write the symbol for each plosive when you hear the word. Each will be said twice. (1 . . . 10)

■ Check your answers.

▶ *Exercise 4 Repetition of words containing plosives*

The following words contain several plosives. They are given in spelling and in transcription. Listen and repeat:

potato pətetəʊ	carpeted kɑːpɪtɪd
topic tɒpɪk	bodyguard bɒdɪgɑːd
petticoat petɪkəʊt	tobacco təbækəʊ
partake pɑːteɪk	doubted daʊtɪd
cupboard kʌbəd	decode diːkəʊd
decapitated dɪkæpɪteɪtɪd	bigoted bɪgətɪd
pocket pɒkɪt	about əbaʊt

Exercise 5 Reading of words in transcription

When you hear the number, pronounce the word given in transcription taking care to pronounce the plosives correctly and putting the strongest stress on the syllable preceded by the stress mark '. You will then hear the correct pronunciation, which you should repeat.

1. dɪ'bɛst
2. 'kɒpɪd
3. 'bʌtəkʌp
4. 'kʊkʊ:
5. dɪ'kɛɪd
6. 'gɑ:dɪd
7. 'dedɪkeɪtɪd
8. 'pædək
9. bu:'ti:k
10. 'æpɪtaɪt

(You will find these words in spelling form in the answers section.)

Tape Unit 5 Revision

Exercise 1 Vowels and diphthongs

Listen and repeat (words given in spelling):

ɑ: and	ɜ:	eɪ and	e	aɪ and	ɑ:
barn	burn	fade	fed	life	laugh
are	err	sale	sell	tight	tart
fast	first	laid	led	pike	park
cart	curt	paste	pest	hide	hard
lark	lurk	late	let	spike	spark

ɔɪ and	ɔ:	əʊ and	ɔ:	ɪə and	i:
toy	tore	phone	fawn	fear	fee
coin	corn	boat	bought	beard	bead
boil	ball	code	cord	mere	me
boy	bore	stoke	stork	steered	steed
foil	fall	bowl	ball	peer	pea

eə and	eɪ	eə and	ɪə	ʊə and	ɔ:
dare	day	fare	fear	poor	paw
stared	stayed	pair	pier	sure	shore
pairs	pays	stare	steer	moor	more
hair	hay	air	ear	dour	door
mare	may	snare	sneer	tour	tore

Exercise 2 Triphthongs

Listen and repeat:

eɪə player pleɪə
aɪə tyre taɪə
ɔɪə loyal lɔɪəl
əʊə mower məʊə
aʊə shower ʃaʊə

Exercise 3 Transcription of words

You should now be able to recognise all the vowels, diphthongs and triphthongs of English, and all the plosives. In the next exercise you will hear one-syllable English words composed of these sounds. Each word will be said twice. You must transcribe these words using the phonemic symbols that you have learned in the first three chapters. When you hear the word, write it with phonemic symbols.
(1 . . . 20)

■ Now check your answers.

▶ *Exercise 4 Production*

The following are all English words; they are given only in phonemic transcription. When you hear the number you should say the word; you will then hear the correct pronunciation, which you should repeat. If you want to see how these words are spelt when you have finished the exercise, you will find them in the answers section.

1. kiːp	11. dʌk
2. bəʊt	12. kəʊp
3. kʌp	13. dɒg
4. dɜːt	14. kaʊəd
5. baɪk	15. beɪk
6. kæb	16. taɪd
7. geɪt	17. bɪəd
8. keəd	18. pʊt
9. taɪəd	19. bʌg
10. bɜːd	20. daʊt

Exercise 5 Fortis/lenis discrimination

When you hear the word, say "fortis" if you hear it as ending with a fortis consonant, and "lenis" if you hear it as ending with a lenis consonant. You will then hear the correct answer and the word will be said again for you to repeat.

	FORTIS	LENIS
1.	right raɪt	ride raɪd
2.	bat bæt	bad bæd
3.	bet bet	bed bed
4.	leak li:k	league li:g
5.	feet fi:t	feed fi:d
6.	right raɪt	ride raɪd
7.	tack tæk	tag tæg
8.	rope rəʊp	robe rəʊb
9.	mate meɪt	made meɪd
10.	beat bi:t	bead bi:d

Tape Unit 6 Fricatives and affricates

Exercise 1 Repetition of words containing fricatives

Listen and repeat (words given in spelling and transcription):

f	fin fɪn	offer ɒfə	laugh lɑ:f
v	vat væt	over əʊvə	leave li:v
θ	thing θɪŋ	method meθəd	breath breθ
ð	these ði:z	other ʌðə	breathe bri:ð
s	sad sæd	lesser lesə	moss mɒs
z	zoo zu:	lazy leɪzi	lose lu:z
ʃ	show ʃəʊ	washing wɒʃɪŋ	rush rʌʃ
ʒ		measure meʒə	rouge ru:ʒ
h	hot hɒt	beehive bi:haɪv	

Exercise 2 Identification

Write the symbol for the fricative you hear in each word.

a) initial position: (1 . . . 5)
b) medial position (6 . . . 10)
c) final position (11 . . . 15)

■ Now check your answers.

▶ *Exercise 3 Production*

When you hear the number, pronounce the word, giving particular attention to the fricatives. You will then hear the correct pronunciation, which you should repeat.

1. **ðiːz** these
2. **feɪθ** faith
3. **heðə** heather
4. **siːʃɔː** seashore
5. **feðəz** feathers
6. **fɪfθ** fifth
7. **ʃɪvəz** shivers
8. **bɪheɪv** behave
9. **siːʒə** seizure
10. **læʃɪz** lashes

Exercise 4 Repetition of fricative and affricate pairs

Listen and repeat:

a) Initial ʃ and tʃ
ʃɒp tʃɒp (shop, chop)
ʃiːt tʃiːt (sheet, cheat)
ʃuːz tʃuːz (shoes, choose)

b) Medial ʃ and tʃ
liːʃɪz liːtʃɪz (leashes, leaches)
wɒʃɪŋ wɒtʃɪŋ (washing, watching)
bæʃɪz bætʃɪz (bashes, batches)

c) Final ʃ and tʃ
mæʃ mætʃ (mash, match)
kæʃ kætʃ (cash, catch)
wɪʃ wɪtʃ (wish, witch)

d) Medial ʒ and dʒ
leʒə ledʒə (leisure, ledger)
pleʒə pledʒə (pleasure, pledger)
liːʒən liːdʒən (lesion, legion)

Exercise 5 Discrimination between fricatives and affricates

You will hear some of the words from Exercise 4. When you hear the word, say "A" if you hear the word on the left or "B" if you hear the word on the right. You will then hear the correct answer and the word will be said again for you to repeat.

A	B
ʃɒp	tʃɒp
kæʃ	kætʃ
wɒʃɪŋ	wɒtʃɪŋ
ʃuːz	tʃuːz
liːʒən	liːdʒən
bæʃɪz	bætʃɪz
ʃiːt	tʃiːt
leʒə	ledʒə
liːʃɪz	liːtʃɪz
wɪʃ	wɪtʃ
pleʒə	pledʒə
mæʃ	mætʃ

Tape Unit 7 Further consonants

Exercise 1 Repetition of words containing a velar nasal

Listen and repeat; take care not to pronounce a plosive after the velar nasal.

hæŋ	hæŋə
sɪŋɪŋ	rɒŋ
rʌŋ	bæŋɪŋ
θɪŋ	nŋ

Exercise 2 ŋ with and without g

Words of one morpheme		*Words of two morphemes*	
Listen and repeat:		Listen and repeat:	
fɪŋgə	finger	sɪŋə	singer
æŋgə	anger	hæŋə	hanger
bæŋgə	Bangor	lɒŋɪŋ	longing
hʌŋgə	hunger	rɪŋɪŋ	ringing
æŋgl	angle	bæŋə	banger

Exercise 3 "Clear" and "dark" l

"Clear l" before vowels

Listen and repeat:

laɪ lie	ləʊ low
lu:s loose	laʊd loud
li:k leak	lɔ: law

"Dark l" before pause

Listen and repeat:

fɪl fill	peɪl pale
bel bell	maɪl mile
ni:l kneel	kɪl kill

"Dark l" before consonants

Listen and repeat:

help help	feɪld failed
fɪlθ filth	mɪlk milk
belt belt	welʃ Welsh

Exercise 4 r

Listen and repeat, concentrating on not allowing the tongue to make contact with the roof of the mouth in pronouncing this consonant:

eərɪŋ airing	reərə rarer
ri:raɪt rewrite	herɪŋ herring
terərɪst terrorist	mɪrə mirror
ærəʊ arrow	rɔ:rɪŋ roaring

Exercise 5 j and w

Listen and repeat:

ju: you	weɪ way
jɔ:n yawn	wɔ: war
jɪə year	wɪn win
jʊə your	weə wear

Exercise 6 Dictation of words

When you hear the word, write it down using phonemic symbols. Each word will be said three times; you should stop your tape if you need more time for writing.
(1 . . . 12)

■ Check your answers.

Tape Unit 8 Consonant clusters

Exercise 1 Devoicing of l, r, w, j

When l, r, w, j follow p, t or k in syllable-initial position they are produced as voiceless, slightly fricative sounds.
Listen and repeat:

pleɪ play	**treɪ** tray	**klɪə** clear
preɪ pray	**twɪn** twin	**kraɪ** cry
pju: pew	**tju:n** tune	**kju:** queue

Exercise 2 Repetition of initial clusters

TWO CONSONANTS

Listen and repeat:

spɒt spot	**plaʊ** plough
stəʊn stone	**twɪst** twist
skeɪt skate	**kri:m** cream
sfɪə sphere	**pjʊə** pure
smaɪl smile	**fleɪm** flame
sneʊ snow	**ʃrɪŋk** shrink
slæm slam	**vju:** view
swɪtʃ switch	**θwɔ:t** thwart

THREE CONSONANTS

Listen and repeat:

spleɪ splay	**streɪ** stray	**skru:** screw
spreɪ spray	**stju:** stew	**skwɒʃ** squash
spju: spew		**skju:** skew

Exercise 3 Final plosive-plus-plosive clusters

a) When one plosive is followed by another at the end of a syllable, the second plosive is usually the only one that can be clearly heard. In this exercise, take care not to make an audible release of the first plosive.

Listen and repeat:

pækt packed	**rɪgd** rigged
bægd bagged	**dʌkt** duct
drɒpt dropped	**lept** leapt
rɒbd robbed	**græbd** grabbed

b) It is difficult to hear the difference between, for example, 'dropped back' and 'drop back', since in the normal pronunciation only the last plosive of the cluster (the **b** of **bæk**) is audibly released. The main difference is that the three-consonant cluster is longer.

Listen and repeat:

A	B
græbd bəʊθ grabbed both	**græb bəʊθ** grab both
laɪkt ðəm liked them	**laɪk ðəm** like them
hɒpt bæk hopped back	**hɒp bæk** hop back
lʊkt fɔ:wəd looked forward	**lʊk fɔ:wəd** look forward
pegd daʊn pegged down	**peg daʊn** peg down
wɪpt kri:m whipped cream	**wɪp kri:m** whip cream

Exercise 4 Recognition

Look at the items of Exercise 3(b) above. When you hear one of them, say "A" if you hear an item from the left-hand column, or "B" if you hear one from the right-hand column. You will then hear the correct answer and the item will be said again for you to repeat.
(1 . . . 6)

Exercise 5 Final clusters of three and four consonants

Listen and repeat:

helps helps	**nekst** next
sɪksθ sixth	**reɪndʒd** ranged
θæŋkt thanked	**rɪsks** risks
edʒd edged	**ri:tʃt** reached
twelfθs twelfths	**teksts** texts

Exercise 6 Pronouncing consonant clusters

When you hear the number, say the word. You will then hear the correct pronunciation which you should repeat.

1. skreɪpt
2. grʌdʒd
3. kləʊðz
4. skrɪpts
5. krʌnʃt
6. θrəʊnz
7. plʌndʒd
8. kwenʃ

(The spelling of these words is given in the answers section.)

Tape Unit 9 Weak syllables

Exercise 1 "Schwa" ə

TWO-SYLLABLE WORDS WITH WEAK FIRST SYLLABLE AND STRESS ON THE SECOND SYLLABLE

Listen and repeat:

Weak syllable spelt 'a'		
about ə'baʊt	ahead ə'hed	again ə'gen
Spelt 'o'		
obtuse əb'tjuːs	oppose ə'pəʊz	offend ə'fend
Spelt 'u'		
suppose sə'pəʊz	support sə'pɔːt	suggest sə'dʒest
Spelt 'or'		
forget fə'get	forsake fə'seɪk	forbid fə'bɪd
Spelt 'er'		
perhaps pə'hæps	percent pə'sent	perceive pə'siv
Spelt 'ur'		
survive sə'vaɪv	surprise sə'praɪz	survey (verb) sə'veɪ

TWO-SYLLABLE WORDS WITH WEAK SECOND SYLLABLE AND STRESS ON THE FIRST SYLLABLE

Listen and repeat:

Weak syllable spelt 'a'		
ballad 'bælləd	Alan 'ælən	necklace 'nekləs
Spelt 'o'		
melon 'melən	paddock 'pædək	purpose 'pɜːpəs
Spelt 'e'		
hundred 'hʌndrəd	sullen 'sʌlən	open 'əʊpən

Spelt 'u'
circus 'sɜ:kəs Autumn 'ɔ:təm album 'ælbəm
Spelt 'ar'
tankard 'tæŋkəd custard 'kʌstəd standard 'stændəd
Spelt 'or'
juror 'dʒʊərə major 'meɪdʒə manor 'mænə
Spelt 'er'
longer 'lɒŋgə eastern 'i:stən mother 'mʌðə
Spelt 'ure'
nature 'neɪtʃə posture 'pɒstʃə creature 'kri:tʃə
Spelt 'ous'
ferrous 'ferəs vicious 'vɪʃəs gracious 'greɪʃəs
Spelt 'ough'
thorough 'θʌrə borough 'bʌrə
Spelt 'our'
saviour 'seɪvjə succour 'sʌkə colour 'kʌlə

THREE-SYLLABLE WORDS WITH WEAK SECOND SYLLABLE AND STRESS ON THE FIRST SYLLABLE

Listen and repeat:
Weak syllable spelt 'a'
workaday 'wɜ:kədeɪ roundabout 'raʊndəbaʊt
Spelt 'o'
customer 'kʌstəmə pantomime 'pæntəmaɪm
Spelt 'u'
perjury 'pɜ:dʒəri venturer 'ventʃərə
Spelt 'ar'
standardise 'stændədaɪz jeopardy 'dʒepədi
Spelt 'er'
wonderland 'wʌndəlænd yesterday 'jestədeɪ

Exercise 2 Close front vowels

WEAK INITIAL SYLLABLES

Listen and repeat:
excite ɪk'saɪt resume rɪ'zju:m
exist ɪg'zɪst relate rɪ'leɪt
inane ɪ'neɪn effect ɪ'fekt
device dɪ'vaɪs ellipse ɪ'lɪps

WEAK FINAL SYLLABLES

Listen and repeat:
city 'sɪti many 'meni
funny 'fʌni lazy 'leɪzi
easy 'i:zi only 'əʊnli
busy 'bɪzi lady 'leɪdi

Exercise 3 Syllabic l̩

Listen and repeat:

bottle 'bɒtl̩	bottled 'bɒtl̩d	bottling 'bɒtl̩ɪŋ
muddle 'mʌdl̩	muddled 'mʌdl̩d	muddling 'mʌdl̩ɪŋ
tunnel 'tʌnl̩	tunnelled 'tʌnl̩d	tunnelling 'tʌnl̩ɪŋ
wrestle 'resl̩	wrestled 'resl̩d	wrestling 'resl̩ɪŋ

Exercise 4 Syllabic n̩

Listen and repeat:

burden 'bɜːdn̩	burdened 'bɜːdn̩d	burdening 'bɜːdn̩ɪŋ
frighten 'fraɪtn̩	frightened 'fraɪtn̩d	frightening 'fraɪtn̩ɪŋ
listen 'lɪsn̩	listened 'lɪsn̩d	listening 'lɪsn̩ɪŋ

Exercise 5 Transcription

Transcribe the following words when you hear them, giving particular attention to the weak syllables. Each word will be said twice. If you need more time for writing, stop your tape and restart it when you are ready for the next word.
(1 . . . 10)

■ Now check your answers.

Tape Unit 10 Word stress

Exercise 1 Stress marking

When you hear the word, repeat it, then place a stress mark ' before the stressed syllable.

enɪmi enemy	səbtrækt subtract
kəlekt collect	elɪfənt elephant
kæpɪtl̩ capital	əbzɜːvə observer
kɑːneɪʃn̩ carnation	prɒfɪt profit
pærədaɪs paradise	entəteɪn entertain

■ Now check your marking with the correct version.

▶ *Exercise 2 Pronouncing from transcription*

The following are British place-names. When you hear the number, pronounce them with the stress as marked. You will then hear the correct pronunciation, which you should repeat.

1. ˈʃrəʊzbri
2. pɒlˈperəʊ
3. æbəˈdiːn
4. wʊlvəˈhæmptən
5. æbəˈnɪstwəθ
6. ˈbɜːmɪŋəm
7. nɔːˈθæmptən
8. dʌnˈdiː
9. ˈkæntəbri
10. ˈbeɪzɪŋstəʊk

(The spelling for these names is given in the answers section.)

Exercise 3 Placing stress on verbs, adjectives and nouns

When you hear the number, pronounce the word with the appropriate stress. You will then hear the correct pronunciation, which you should repeat.

TWO-SYLLABLE WORDS

VERBS

1. dɪsiːv deceive
2. ʃɑːpən sharpen
3. kəlekt collect
4. prənaʊns pronounce
5. kɒpi copy
6. əbdʒekt object
7. kɒŋkə conquer
8. rɪkɔːd record
9. pɒlɪʃ polish
10. dɪpend depend

ADJECTIVES

1. iːzi easy
2. kəmpliːt complete
3. meɪdʒə major
4. ələʊn alone
5. bɪləʊ below
6. jeləʊ yellow
7. ɜːli early
8. səblaɪm sublime
9. hevi heavy
10. əlaɪv alive

NOUNS

1. bɪʃəp bishop
2. æspekt aspect
3. əfeə affair
4. kɑːpɪt carpet
5. dɪfiːt defeat
6. ɒfɪs office
7. əreɪ array
8. pətrəʊl patrol
9. dentɪst dentist
10. ɔːtəm Autumn

THREE-SYLLABLE WORDS

VERBS

1. entətem entertain
2. rezərekt resurrect
3. əbændən abandon
4. dɪlɪvə deliver
5. intərʌpt interrupt
6. ɪlɪsɪt elicit
7. kɒmənɪə commandeer
8. ɪmædʒɪn imagine
9. dɪtɜ:mɪn determine
10. sepəreɪt separate

ADJECTIVES

1. ɪmpɔ:tnt important
2. ɪnɔ:məs enormous
3. dənlɪkt derelict
4. desɪml decimal
5. æbnɔ:ml abnormal
6. ɪnslənt insolent
7. fæntæstɪk fantastic
8. negətɪv negative
9. ækjərət accurate
10. ʌnlaɪkli unlikely

NOUNS

1. fɜ:nɪtʃə furniture
2. dɪzɑ:stə disaster
3. dɪsaɪpl disciple
4. æmbjələns ambulance
5. kwɒntɪti quantity
6. kəθi:drəl cathedral
7. hɒləkɔ:st holocaust
8. trænzɪstə transistor
9. æksɪdnt accident
10. təmɑ:təʊ tomato

Tape Unit 11 Complex word stress

Exercise 1 Stress-carrying suffixes

When you hear the number, pronounce the word with stress on the suffix. You will then hear the correct pronunciation which you should repeat.

1. -ain: entertain ˌentəˈteɪn
2. -ee: refugee ˌrefjʊˈdʒi:
3. -eer: mountaineer ˌmaʊntɪˈnɪə
4. -ese: Portuguese ˌpɔ:tʃəˈgi:z
5. -ette: cigarette ˌsɪgəˈret
6. -esque: picturesque ˌpɪktʃəˈresk

When you hear the stem word, say the word with the given suffix, putting the stress on that suffix. In these examples, a secondary stress comes on the penultimate syllable of the stem.

employ + -ee	absent + -ee
engin + -eer	profit + -eer
Sudan + -ese	Pekin + -ese
usher + -ette	statue + -ette (statuette)

Exercise 2 Neutral suffixes

When you hear the stem word, add the suffix without changing the stress.

comfort + -able	power + -less
anchor + -age	hurried + -ly
refuse + -al (refusal)	punish + -ment
wide + -en (widen)	yellow + -ness
wonder + -ful	poison + -ous
amaze + -ing (amazing)	glory + -fy (glorify)
devil + -ish	other + -wise
bird + -like	fun + -y (funny)

Exercise 3 Stress-moving suffixes

When you hear the stem word, say it with the suffix added and put the stress on the last syllable of the stem.

advantage + -eous (advantageous)	injure + -ious (injurious)
	tranquil + -ity (tranquillity)
photo + -graphy	
proverb + -ial	reflex + -ive
climate + -ic (climatic)	embryo + -logy

Exercise 4 Compound words

When you hear the number, say the item.

a) First element adjectival, stress on second element.

1. loudspeaker
2. bad-tempered
3. headquarters
4. second-class
5. three-wheeler

b) First element nominal, stress on first element.

1. typewriter
2. car-ferry
3. sunrise
4. suitcase
5. tea-cup

c) Mixture of type (a) and (b).

1. long-suffering
2. gunman
3. shoelace
4. red-blooded
5. gear-box
6. overweight

Exercise 5 Word-class pairs

You will hear the number of the item and its word-class. Stress the second syllable if it is a verb; stress the first syllable if it is a noun or adjective.

1. abstract (Adjective)
2. conduct (Verb)
3. contract (Noun)
4. contrast (Verb)
5. desert (Noun)
6. escort (Noun)
7. export (Verb)
8. import (Noun)
9. insult (Verb)
10. object (Noun)
11. perfect (Adjective)
12. permit (Verb)
13. present (Adjective)
14. produce (Verb)
15. protest (Noun)
16. rebel (Verb)
17. record (Noun)
18. subject (Noun)

Tape Unit 12 Weak forms

Words occurring in their weak forms are printed in smaller type than stressed words and strong forms, e.g. 'We can wait' 'wiː kən 'weɪt

Exercise 1 Sentences for repetition

Listen and repeat:

We can 'wait for the 'bus wi kən 'weɪt fə ðə 'bʌs

'How do the 'lights 'work? 'haʊ də ðə 'laɪts 'wɜːk

There are some 'new 'books I must 'read ðər ə səm 'nhuː 'bʊks aɪ məs 'riːd

She 'took her 'aunt for a 'drive ʃi 'tʊk ər 'ɑːnt fər ə 'draɪv

The 'basket was 'full of 'things to 'eat ðə 'bɑːskɪt wəz 'fʊl əv 'θɪŋz tu 'iːt

'Why should a 'man 'earn 'more than a 'woman? 'waɪʃəd ə 'mæn 'ɜːn 'mɔː ðən ə 'wʊmən

You 'ought to 'have your 'own 'car ju 'ɔːt tə 'hæv jər 'əʊn 'kɑː

He 'wants to 'come and 'see us at 'home hi 'wɒnts tə 'kʌm ən 'siː əs ət 'həʊm
'Have you 'taken them from 'that 'box? 'hæv ju 'teɪkən ðəm frəm 'ðæt 'bɒks
It's 'true that he was 'late, but his 'car could have 'broken 'down ɪts 'truː ðət i wəz 'leɪt bət ɪz 'kɑː kəd əv 'brəʊkən 'daʊn
I shall 'take as 'much as I 'want aɪ ʃl̩ 'teɪk əz 'mʌtʃ əz aɪ 'wɒnt
'Why am I 'too 'late to 'see him to'day? 'waɪ əm aɪ 'tuː 'leɪt tə 'siː ɪm tə'deɪ

Exercise 2 Weak forms with pre-vocalic and pre-consonantal forms

DIFFERENT VOWELS

When you hear the number, say the phrase, using the appropriate weak form:

the	1. the apple ði æpl̩	2. the pear ðə peə
to	3. to Edinburgh tu ɛdn̩brə	4. to Leeds tə liːdz
do	5. so do I səʊ du aɪ	6. so do they səʊ də ðeɪ

LINKING CONSONANT

a/an	7. an ear ən ɪə	8. a foot ə fʊt

(The other words in this section have "linking r".)

her	9. Her eyes hər aɪz	10. her nose hə nəʊz
your	11. your uncle jər ʌŋkl̩	12. your friend jə frend
for	13. for Alan fər ælən	14. for Mike fə maɪk
there	15. there aren't ðər ɑːnt	16. there couldn't ðə kʊdn̩t
are	17. these are ours ðiːz ər aʊəz	18. these are mine ðiːz ə maɪn
were	19. you were out juː wər aʊt	20. you were there juː wə ðeə

Exercise 3 Transcription

(*Note*: this exercise is a long one, and it is possible to go directly to Exercise 4 if wished)
Write the following sentences in transcription, taking care to give the correct weak forms for the words printed in smaller type.

1. 'Leave the 'rest of the 'food for 'lunch
2. 'Aren't there some 'letters for her to 'open?
3. 'Where do the 'eggs come from?
4. 'Read his 'book and 'write some 'notes
5. At 'least we can 'try and 'help

■ Now correct your transcription, using the version in the answers section.

▶ *Exercise 4 Pronunciation of weak forms*

This exercise uses the sentences of Exercise 3. When you hear the number, say the sentence, giving particular attention to the weak forms.
(1 . . . 5)

Tape Unit 13 Revision

▶ *Exercise 1 Reading unfamiliar words from transcription*

The following are British place-names written in transcription.* When you hear the number, say the word, making sure that the stress is correctly placed. You will then hear the correct pronunciation which you should repeat.

1. 'kəʊltʃɪstə
2. kɑ:'laɪl
3. 'hemfəd
4. 'skʌnθɔ:p
5. glə'mɔ:gən
6. ˌhɒli'hed
7. 'fræmlɪŋəm
8. saʊθ'end
9. 'tʃeltnəm
10. ˌɪnvə'nes

Exercise 2 Transcription of unfamiliar words

The following are also place-names. Each will be said twice; write what you hear in transcription, including stress marks.
(1 . . . 10)

■ Now check your transcriptions with the correct versions.

* Spelling is given in the answers section.

Exercise 3 Stress placement in sentences

Put a stress mark ' before each syllable you would expect to be stressed in the following sentences. For example, given the sentence 'I think I'll be late for work' you should mark the words 'think', 'late' and 'work' like this:

I 'think Ill be 'late for 'work

1. James decided to type the letter himself
2. The plane was approaching the runway at high speed
3. Try to see the other persons point of view
4. You put your brakes on when the light turns to red
5. In a short time the house was full of children

Now correct your stress marking by looking at the versions given in the answers section.

▶ *Exercise 4 Pronunciation of stressed syllables*

When you hear the number, say the sentence from the list in Exercise 3 taking care to stress the correct syllables. You will then hear the correct version, which you should repeat.
(1 . . . 5)

Exercise 5 Weak forms

In the following sentences, those words which are not stressed must be pronounced in their weak forms. When you hear the number, say the sentence:

1. 'Heres a 'present for your 'brother
2. 'These are 'all the 'pictures that are 'left
3. There 'could be a 'bit of 'rain at the 'end of the 'morning
4. A 'few 'people 'asked him a 'question
5. Col'lect your 'luggage be'fore 'leaving the 'train

Tape Unit 14 Elisions

READ THIS BEFORE STARTING YOUR TAPE

This Tape Unit gives you practice in recognising places where elision occurs in natural speech (i.e. where one or more phonemes which would be pronounced in careful speech are not pronounced). The examples are extracted from dialogues between speakers who are discussing differences between two similar pictures. Each extract is given three times. You must transcribe each item, using phonemic symbols so that the elision can be seen in the transcription. For example, if you heard 'sixth time' pronounced without the θ fricative at the end of the first word you would write **sɪks taɪm**, and the elision would be clearly indicated in this way. You can use the ^{h} symbol to indicate a devoiced weak vowel, as in 'potato' **p^{h}teɪtəʊ**.

You will probably need to stop your tape to give yourself more time to write the transcription. This is a difficult exercise, but explanatory notes are given in the answers section.

► *Transcription*

ONE ELISION

1. a beautiful girl
2. we seem to have a definite one there
3. could it be a stool rather than a table
4. a fifth in
5. any peculiarities about that
6. and how many stripes on yours
7. well it appears to button up its got three
8. or the what do you call it the sill

TWO ELISIONS

9. by column into columns all right
10. diamond shaped patch
11. and I should think from experience of kitchen knives
12. what shall we do next go down

THREE ELISIONS

13. the top of the bottle is projecting outwards into the room

■ Now check your transcriptions.

Tape Unit 15 Tones

Exercise 1 Repetition of tones

Listen and repeat:

Fall:	ˏyes	ˏno	ˏwell	ˏfour
Rise:	ˊyes	ˊno	ˊwell	ˊfour
Fall–rise:	ˇyes	ˇno	ˇwell	ˇfour
Rise–fall:	ˆyes	ˆno	ˆwell	ˆfour
Level:	ˉyes	ˉno	ˉwell	ˉfour

Exercise 2 Production of tones

When you hear the number, say the syllable with the tone indicated:

1. ˊthem
2. ˇwhy
3. ˏwell
4. ˏJohn
5. ˊwhat
6. ˏno
7. ˇhere
8. ˏyou
9. ˊnow
10. ˇend

Exercise 3 Identification

You will hear each syllable twice. Write an appropriate tone symbol. (1 . . . 10)

■ Now check your answers.

▶ *Exercise 4 Production in context*

When you hear the sentence, say the response with the tone indicated.

Hello, is that 661071?	ˏyes
Do you know any scientists?	ˍsome
Keep away from that road!	ˎwhy
How many dogs have you got?	ˎtwo
Have you ever heard such a terrible thing?	ˍno
What colour is your car?	ˎred
Do you want my plate?	ˏplease
Don't you like it?	ˍyes
You haven't seen my watch, have you?	ˏno
What was the weather like?	ˎwet

Tape Unit 16 The tone-unit

Exercise 1 Identifying the tonic syllable

Listen and repeat, then underline the tonic syllable.

1. We could go by bus
2. Of course its broken
3. The car was where Id left it
4. How much is the biggest one
5. I knew it would go wrong
6. It was too cold
7. Here it is
8. That was a loud noise
9. We could go from Manchester
10. Have you finished

■ Now check your answers.

▶ *Exercise 2 Pronouncing the tonic syllable*

When you hear the number, say the item with the tonic syllable in the place indicated, using a falling tone:

1. Dont do <u>that</u>
2. Dont <u>do</u> that
3. <u>Dont</u> do that
4. Write your <u>name</u>
5. Write <u>your</u> name
6. <u>Write</u> your name
7. Heres my <u>pen</u>
8. Heres <u>my</u> pen
9. <u>Heres</u> my pen
10. Why dont you <u>try</u>
11. Why dont <u>you</u> try
12. Why <u>dont</u> you try
13. <u>Why</u> dont you try

Exercise 3 Repetition of tone-units

Listen and repeat, trying to copy the intonation exactly; no transcription is given.

What time will they come
A day return to London
The North Pole would be warmer
Have you decided to buy it
I recorded them on cassette

Exercise 4 Partial analysis of tone-units

The items of Exercise 3 will now be said again twice, and you must do the following things:

a) Identify the tonic syllable and underline it.
b) Identify the tone (in these items the only tones used are fall and rise) and place the appropriate tone-mark before the tonic syllable.
c) Identify any stressed syllables preceding the tonic syllable and place a stress mark ' before each.

You may need to stop your tape to allow enough time to complete the analysis of each item.

1. What time will they come
2. A day return to London
3. The North Pole would be warmer
4. Have you decided to buy it
5. I recorded them on cassette

■ Now check your transcription.

Tape Unit 17 Intonation

Exercise 1 Repetition of tonic syllable plus tail

Listen and repeat, taking care to continue the pitch movement of the tone over the tail:

ˏBill ·bought it	ˏFour of them ·came	ˏWhy do you ·do it
ˊBill ·bought it	ˊFour of them ·came	ˊWhy do you ·do it
ˎBill ·bought it	ˎFour of them ·came	ˎWhy do you ·do it
ˋBill ·bought it	ˋFour of them ·came	ˋWhy do you ·do it

Exercise 2 Production of tonic syllable plus tail

The items from Exercise 1 will be used again. When you hear the number, say the item with the tone that is marked:
(1 . . . 12)

Exercise 3 High and low head

The following tone-units will be repeated with high and low heads. Listen and repeat:

'Taxes have 'risen by 'five per ˏcent
ˌTaxes have ˌrisen by ˌfive per ˏcent

'Havent you 'asked the 'boss for ˊmore
ˌHavent you ˌasked the ˌboss for ˊmore

We 'dont have 'time to 'read the ˏpaper
We ˌdont have ˌtime to ˌread the ˏpaper

'Wouldnt you 'like to 'read it on the ˊtrain
ˌWouldnt you ˌlike to ˌread it on the ˊtrain

Exercise 4 Transcription of tone-units

Each item will be pronounced as one tone-unit, and will be heard three times. You must do the following things:

a) Identify the tonic syllable and underline it.
b) Decide which tone it carries (only ˏ, ˊ and ˎ are used in this exercise) and put the appropriate tone-mark before the tonic syllable.
c) Listen for stressed syllables preceding the tonic syllable and mark them high (') or low (ˌ).

d) Listen for stressed syllables in the tail and mark them (if there are any) with a raised dot (·).

You will probably need to stop your tape to complete the transcription of each item.

1. Now heres the weather forecast
2. You didnt say anything about rates
3. A few years ago they were top
4. No-one could say the cinema was dead
5. Is there anything you wouldnt eat
6. Have you ever considered writing
7. That was what he claimed to be
8. We try to do our shopping in the market
9. But I never go there now
10. It wouldnt be difficult to find out

■ Now check your transcriptions. If there is time, you will find it useful to go back to the start of Exercise 4 and practise repeating the items while looking at the transcriptions.

Tape Unit 18 Intonation – extracts from conversation

The following extracts are from the same recorded conversations as were used in Tape Unit 14. Each extract will be heard three times, with four or five seconds between repetitions. Mark the intonation; the instructions for how to do this are given in the text for Tape Unit 17, Exercise 4. In addition, for numbers 10–16 you will need to use the vertical line | to separate tone-units. You should expect this tape to be more difficult than previous intonation tapes!

Transcription

ONE TONE-UNIT

1. it looks like a French magazine
2. the television is plugged in
3. does your colander have a handle
4. ('s) a flap on it
5. you tell me about yours
6. well dark hair
7. more than half way

8. but er not in the other corners
9. a sort of Daily Sketch format newspaper

TWO TONE-UNITS

10. on the top of the lid
11. well theyre on alternate steps theyre not on every step
12. what about the vent at the back
13. and a ladys handbag hanging on a nail on the wall
14. you do the left hand bit of the picture and Ill do the right hand bit
15. were being very particular but we just havent hit upon one of the differences yet

THREE TONE-UNITS

16. and what about your television two knobs in the front

■ Now check your intonation marking.

Tape Unit 19 Transcription of connected speech

Listen to the recording on which this exercise is based:
it was rather frightening because there there are scores of these bicycles and er you really have to have your wits about you all the time because the you know they stop suddenly and its awkward because the traffic regulations are more honoured in the breach than the observance I'm not in not really sure what regulations there are er for instance the er traffic lights red red lights do not apply if you're turning right erm which means that if you're coming up to a traffic light and there's erm someone stopped who wants to go straight on or turn left and you want to turn right then you pull out overtake them and then cut across in front

■ The above passage will now be heard divided up into 27 tone-units, each of which will be heard twice. Incomplete tone-units (those without a nucleus) are omitted. The main object of the exercise is to transcribe the intonation; however, for a harder exercise taking more time, you

can also write a transcription using phonemic symbols plus any non-phonemic symbols you may need. The transcription given in the answers section is in this form.

▶ it was rather frightening
because there are scores
of these bicycles
you really have to
have your wits about you
all the time
because the you know they stop suddenly
its awkward
because the traffic regulations
are more honoured in the breach
than the observance
Im not in not really sure what
regulations there are
for instance
the er traffic lights
red red lights
do not apply
if youre turning right
which means that
if youre coming up to a traffic light
someone stopped
who wants to go straight on
or turn left
and you want to turn right
then you pull out
overtake them
and then cut across
in front

■ Now check your transcription.

Tape Unit 20 Further practice on connected speech

Exercise 1 Dictation

You will hear five sentences spoken rapidly. Each will be given three times. Write each sentence down *in normal spelling*.
(1 . . . 5)

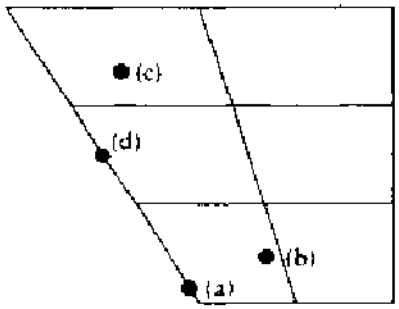
■ Compare what you have written with the correct version.

▶ *Exercise 2 Transcription*

Now wind your tape back and listen to the above sentences again; this time *transcribe* what you hear, using mainly phonemic symbols but also using raised h (^{h}) to indicate a weak voiceless vowel, as in p^{h}tertəʊ. Do not mark intonation.
(1 . . . 5)

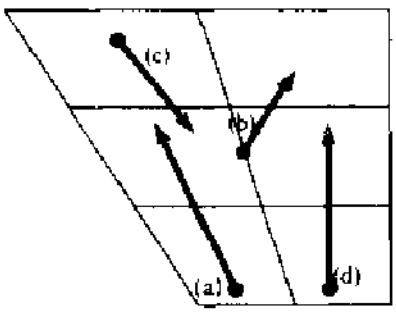
Answers to written exercises

Chapter 2

1. *a)* Soft palate or velum
   b) Alveolar ridge
   c) Front of tongue
   d) Hard palate
   e) Lower lip
2. *a)* Close back rounded
   b) Close-mid front unrounded
   c) Open front unrounded
   d) Close front unrounded
   e) Close-mid back rounded
3. 

4. *a)* e
   b) ʌ
   c) ʊ
   d) ɪ
   e) ʊ
   f) ɒ
   g) æ
   h) e

Chapter 3

1 

2. *a)* ɔː
   b) ɔː
   c) ɑː
   d) ɜː
   e) uː
   f) iː
   g) ɜː
   h) iː
   i) ɜː
3. *a)* əʊ
   b) aɪ
   c) aʊ
   d) eɪ
   e) ɪə
   f) ɔɪ
   g) eə
   h) aɪ
   i) eɪ

Chapter 4

1. You will obviously not have written descriptions identical to the ones given below. The important thing is to check that the sequence of articulatory events is more or less the same.

   a) goat

   Starting from the position for normal breathing, the back of the tongue is raised to form a closure against the velum (soft palate). The lungs are compressed to produce higher air pressure in the vocal tract and the vocal folds are brought together in the voicing position. The vocal folds begin to vibrate, and the back of the tongue is lowered to allow the compressed air to escape. The tongue is moved to a mid central vowel and then moves in the direction of a closer, backer vowel; the lips are moderately rounded for the second part. The tongue blade is raised to make a closure against the alveolar ridge, the vocal folds are separated and voicing ceases. Then the compressed air is released quietly and the lips return to an unrounded shape.

   b) ape

   The tongue is moved slightly upward and forward and the vocal folds are brought together to begin voicing. The tongue glides to a slightly closer and more central vowel. Then the lips are pressed together making a closure and at the same time the vocal folds are separated so that voicing ceases. The lips are then opened and the compressed air is released quietly, while the tongue is lowered to the position for normal breathing.

2.	*a)*	ti:	*d)*	dɑ̆:k	*g)*	eg
	b)	mĭ:t	*e)*	kɑ:d	*h)*	ə̆ʊk
	c)	təʊd	*f)*	lĭp	*i)*	kaĭt
3.	*a)*	beɪk	*d)*	bɔ:t	*g)*	bɔ:d
	b)	gəʊt	*e)*	tɪk	*h)*	gɑ:d
	c)	daʊt	*f)*	baʊ	*i)*	pi:k

Chapter 5

a)	'speed'	spi:d	[spi:d̪]
b)	'partake'	pɑ:teɪk	[pʰa·tʰə̆ɪk]
c)	'book'	bʊk	[b̪ʊ̆k]
d)	'goat'	gəʊt	[g̊ə̆ʊt]
e)	'car'	kɑ:	[k̊ʰɑ:]
f)	'bad'	bæd	[b̪æd̪]
g)	'appeared'	əpɪəd	[əpʰɪəd̪]
h)	'toast'	təʊst	[tʰə̆ʊst]
i)	'stalk'	stɔ:k	[stɔ·k]

Chapter 6

1. *a)* frʃɪz *e)* ətʃiːvz
   b) ʃervə *f)* ʌðəz
   c) sɪksθ *g)* meɜə
   d) ðiːz *h)* əhed
2. Starting from the position for normal breathing, the lower lip is brought into contact with the upper teeth. The lungs are compressed, causing air to flow through the constriction producing fricative noise. The tongue moves to the position for ɪ. The vocal folds are brought together, causing voicing to begin, and at the same time the lower lip is lowered. Then the tongue blade is raised to make a fairly wide constriction in the palato-alveolar region and the vocal folds are separated to stop voicing; the flow of air causes fricative noise. Next, the vocal folds are brought together to begin voicing again and at the same time the tongue is lowered from the constriction position into the ɪ vowel posture. The tongue blade is then raised against the alveolar ridge forming a constriction which results in fricative noise. This is initially accompanied by voicing, which then dies away. Finally, the tongue is lowered from the alveolar constriction, the vocal folds are separated and normal breathing is resumed.

Chapter 7

1. Plosives: p t k b d g
   Fricatives: f θ s ʃ h v ð z ʒ
   Affricates: tʃ dʒ
   Nasals: m n ŋ
   Lateral: l
   Approximants: r w j
   (This course has also mentioned the possibility of ç and ʌʌ)
2. *a)* səufə *e)* skweə
   b) vɜːs *f)* æŋgə
   c) stɪəŋ *g)* bɔːt
   d) bredkrʌm *h)* naɪntiːn
3. *a)* The soft palate is raised for the b plosive and remains raised for æ. It is lowered for n, then raised again for the final ə.
   b) The soft palate remains lowered during the articulation of m, and is then raised for the rest of the syllable.
   c) The soft palate is raised for the æ vowel, then lowered for ŋ. It is then raised for the g plosive and remains raised for the l.

Chapter 8

a)

PRE-INITIAL	INITIAL	POST-INITIAL	PEAK	FINAL	POST-FINAL
s	k	w	i:	l	d
ONSET			PEAK	CODA	

(it would be possible to treat l as pre-final and d as final, but the above analysis is slightly preferable in that d here is a suffix and we know that l occurs finally in 'squeal' skwi:l.)

b)

	FINAL	POST-FINAL 1	POST-FINAL 2
eɪ	t	θ	s
PEAK	CODA		

c)

PRE-INITIAL	INITIAL	POST-INITIAL		FINAL
s	p	l	æ	ʃ
ONSET			PEAK	CODA

d)

INITIAL		FINAL	POST-FINAL 1	POST-FINAL 2	POST-FINAL 3
t	e	k	s	t	s
ONSET	PEAK	CODA			

Chapter 9

1. **e pɛtɪkjələ problem ɛv ðə beʊt wəz ə liːk**
2. **əʊpnɪŋ ðə bɒtl̩ prɪzentɪd nəʊ dɪfɪkl̩ti**
3. **ðər ɪz nəʊ ɒltɜːnətɪv tə ðə gʌvn̩mənts prəpəʊzl̩**
4. **wi ɔːt tə meɪk ə kəlekʃn̩ tə kʌve ðɪ ɪkspensɪz**
   (also possible: **kl̩ekʃn̩**)
5. **fatnl̩ ðət ərɪaɪvd ət ə hɑːbər ət ðɪ edʒ ɛv ðə maʊntɪnz**
   (**hɑːbr̩** possible).

Chapter 10

1. *a)*	pro'tect	prə'tekt	
b)	'clamber	'klæmbə	
c)	fes'toon	fes'tu:n	
d)	de'test	dɪ'test	
e)	'bellow	'beləʊ	
f)	'menace	'menɪs	
g)	disco'nnect	dɪskə'nekt	
h)	'entering	'entərɪŋ	('entrɪŋ)
2. *a)*	'language	'læŋgwɪdʒ	
b)	'captain	'kæptɪn	
c)	ca'reer	kə'rɪə	
d)	'paper	'peɪpə	
e)	e'vent	ɪ'vent	
f)	'jonquil	'dʒɒŋkwɪl	
g)	'injury	'ɪndʒəri	('ɪndʒri)
h)	co'nnection	kə'nekʃən	(kə'nekʃn)

Chapter 11

1. and 2.

a)	'shop ,fitter	'ʃɒp ,fɪtə
b)	,open 'ended	,əʊpn 'endɪd
c)	'Java'nese	,dʒɑ:və'ni:z
d)	'birth ,mark	'bɜ:θ ,mɑ:k
e)	,anti 'clockwise	,ænti 'klɒkwaɪz
f)	,confir'mation	,kɒnfə'meɪʃn
g)	,eight 'sided	,eɪt 'saɪdɪd
h)	'fruit ,cake	'fru:t ,keɪk
i)	de'fective	dɪ'fektɪv
j)	'roof ,timber	'ru:f ,tɪmbə

Chapter 12

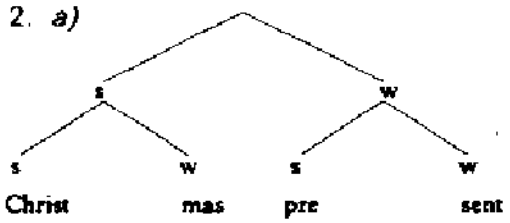
1. aɪ wɒnt ə tə pɑ:k ðæt kɑ:r əʊvə ðeə
2. əv ɔ:l ðə prəpəʊzɪz ðə wʌn ðət ju: meɪd ɪz ðə sɪliəst
3. dʒeɪn ən bɪl kəd əv drɪvn ðem tu: ən frɒm ðə pɑ:ti
   (kʊd is also suitable)
4. tə kʌm tə ðə pɔɪnt wɒt ʃl wi du: fə ðə rest əv ðə wi:k
5. həz enɪwʌn gɒt ən aɪdɪə wear ɪt keɪm frɒm
6. pədestrɪənz məst ɔ:lwɪz ju:z ðə krɒsɪŋz prəvaɪdɪd
7. i:tʃ wʌn wəz ə pɜ:fɪkt ɪgzɑ:mpl əv ði ɑ:t ðət əd bi:n dɪveləpt ðeə

Chapter 13

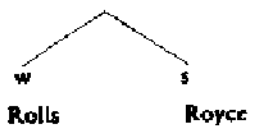
1. In this data there is no evidence of ŋ contrasting with n, since ŋ never occurs except before **k** and **g**. So all phonetic ŋ consonants are phonemic **n**.
   a) **θɪŋ**
   b) **θɪnk**
   c) **θɪnkɪŋ**
   d) **fɪŋgə**
   e) **sɪŋgə**
   f) **sɪŋgɪŋ**
2. *a)* **saʊnd**
   b) **æŋgə**
   c) **kɑ:nt**
   d) **kæmpə**
   e) **bɒnd**
3. /t/ is realised as [ɾ] when it occurs between vowels if the preceding vowel is stressed and the following vowel is unstressed.

Chapter 14

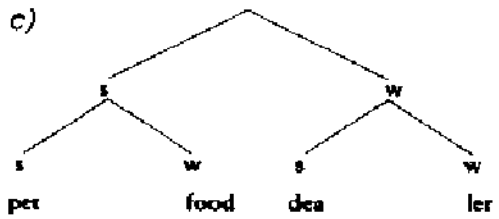
1. *a)* A | bird in the | hand is worth | two in the | bush
   b) | Over a | quarter of a | century has e | lapsed since his | death
   c) Com | puters con | sume a con | siderable a | mount of | money and | time
   d) | Most of them have ar | rived on the | bus
   e) | Newspaper | editors are in | variably | under | worked
2. *a)*



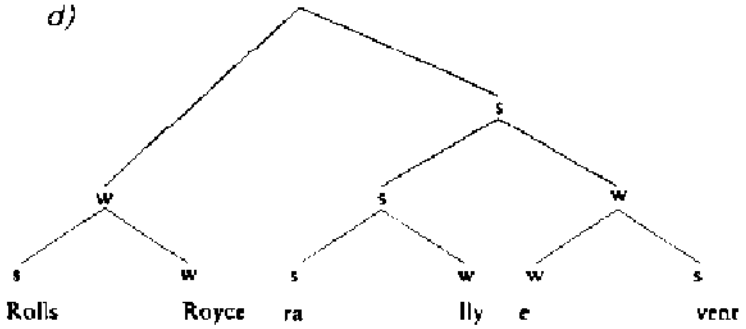
b)



c)



d)



(The stress levels of 'Rolls' and 'Royce' are exchanged to avoid "stress clash" between 'Royce' and 'ra-'.)

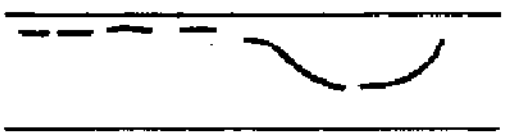
3. *a)* **wʌŋ kɔːz əv æsmənsspəʊstəbi æləʤɪz**
   b) **wɒt ðɪ ɜːbm̩ pɒpjeleɪʃn̩ kəʤuːz ɪz bəte treɪnz**
   c) **ʃi æks pəttkjeli wel ɪŋ̩ne fɜːssiːn**
   (The above represent just one possible pronunciation; many others are possible.)

Chapter 15

1. This train is for ˌLeeds ˌYork ˌDarlington and ˌDurham
2. Can you give me a ˌlift
   ˌPossibly Where ˌto
3. ˌNo Certainly ˌnot Go a ˌway↑
4. Did you know hed been convicted of drunken ˌdriving ˌNo
5. If I give him ˌmoney he goes and ˌspends it
   If I lend him the ˌbike he ˌloses it
   Hes completely unreˌliable

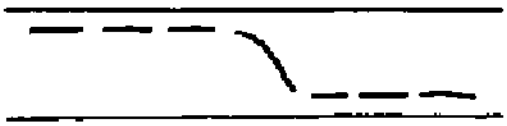
Chapter 16

1. (This is an exercise where there is not one correct answer.)
   a) buy it for me
   b) hear it
   c) talk to him
2. *a)* 'mind the step
   b) 'this is the 'ten to 'seven train
   c) 'keep the 'food hot
3. *a)* 'Only when the ˌwind blows



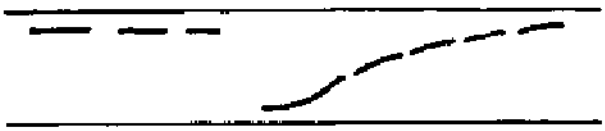
b) ˏWhen did you say

c) ˈWhat was the ˏname of the place

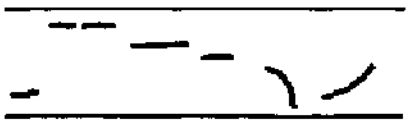


Chapter 17

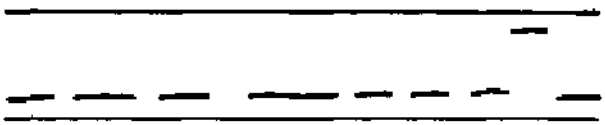
1. *a)* ˈWhich was the ˏcheap one did you say



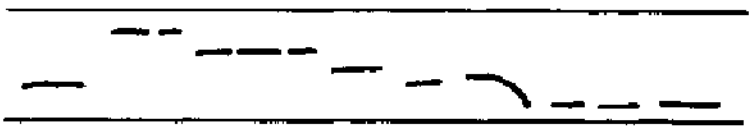
b) I ˈonly ˈwant to ˏtaste it



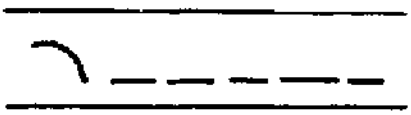
c) ˏShe would have ˏthought it was ˏobvious



d) There ˈwasnt ˈeven a ˈpiece of ˏbread in the ˏhouse

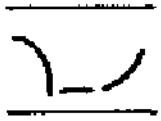


e) ˏNow will you beˈlieve me

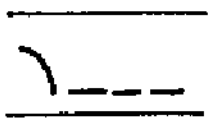


2. *a)* opport,unity

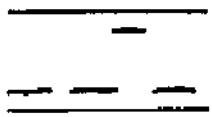
b) ,actually



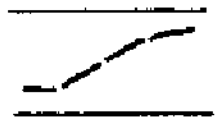
c) ,confidently



d) mag,nificent



e) re,lationship



f) after,noon

Chapter 18

(The following are possible intonation patterns, but others could be correct.)

1. Its 'rather ,cold
2. Be'cause I 'cant a,fford it
3. Youre ,silly then
4. Oh ,please
5. ,Seven o,clock ,seven ,thirty and ,eight
6. ,Eight
7. Ive ,got to ,do the ,shopping
8. ,Some of them might

Chapter 19

1. *a)* right can I do the shopping for you
   b) right can I do the shopping for you
   c) first the professor explained her theory
   d) no first the professor explained her theory
   e) first she explained her theory
   f) no ten past three
   g no ten past three
   h) no ten past three
2. *a)* he wrote the letter sadly
   b) he wrote the letter ; sadly
   c) four plus six | divided by two | equals five
   d) four | plus six divided by two | equals seven
   e) we broke one thing ; after another fell down
   f) we broke one thing after another | that night

Chapter 20

1. *a)* All are made further back then the palatal region – they could be called "back" consonants.
   b) All the vowels are close or close mid (or between these heights).
   c) All require the tongue blade to be raised for their articulation, and all are in the alveolar or post-alveolar region.
   d) None of these requires the raising of the tongue blade – all are front or back articulations.
   e) All are voiceless.
   f) All are rounded or end with lip-rounding.
   g) All are approximants (they create very little obstruction to the airflow).
2. *a)* This accent has a distribution for **ŋ** similar to RP (i.e. a case can be made for a **ŋ** phoneme), except that in the case of the participial '-ing' ending **n** is found instead of **ŋ**.
   b) This accent has two additional long vowels (**e:** and **o:**) and, correspondingly, two fewer diphthongs (**eɪ** and **əʊ**). This situation is found in many Northern accents.
   c) The fricatives **θ**, **ð** and **h** are missing from the phoneme inventory, and **f** and **v** are used in their place. /l/ is realised as [**w**] where RP has "dark l". This is typical of a Cockney accent.
   d) This data is based on the traditional working-class accent of Bristol, where words of more than one syllable cannot end in **ə**. The accent is rhotic, so where there is an 'r' in the spelling (as in 'mother') a **r** is pronounced; where the spelling does not have 'r', a

/l/ sound is added, resulting in some loss of distinctiveness in words (cf. 'idea', 'ideal'; 'area', 'aerial').

e) Here we appear to have three vowels where RP has two: the word 'cat' has the equivalent of æ, 'calm' has a vowel similar to ɑ: while in the set of words that have æ in many Northern accents ('plaster', 'grass', etc.) an additional long vowel a: is used. This is found in Shropshire

Answers to recorded exercises

Tape Unit 2

Exercise 2

1. æ in **bæn** 'ban'
2. ʌ in **hʌb** 'hub'
3. ɪ in **fɪl** 'fill'
4. ɒ in **mɒs** 'moss'
5. e in **led** 'led'
6. ʊ in **pʊt** 'put'
7. ʌ in **kʌm** 'come'
8. ɪ in **mɪd** 'mid'
9. ɒ in **bɒm** 'bomb'
10. e in **sel** 'sell'

Tape Unit 3

Exercise 3

1. iː in **siːt** 'seat'
2. ɑː in **dɑːk** 'dark'
3. ɜː in **bɜːd** 'bird'
4. ɔː in **fɔːt** 'fought'
5. ɑː in **pɑːt** 'part'
6. uː in **fuːd** 'food'
7. ɜː in **kɜːt** 'curt'
8. ɑː in **pɑːk** 'park'
9. iː in **niːd** 'need'
10. ɔː in **hɔːs** 'horse'

Exercise 5

1. ɜː in **hɜːd** 'heard'
2. ɒ in **sɒŋ** 'song'
3. ɔː in **sɔː** 'saw'
4. ʌ in **kʌm** 'come'
5. ɑː in **mɑːtʃ** 'march'
6. ʊ in **fʊl** 'full'
7. ɑː in **pɑːt** 'part'
8. ɒ in **dɒl** 'doll'
9. ʌ in **lʌv** 'love'
10. ɜː in **bɜːn** 'burn'

Exercise 7

1. ɪə in **fɪəs** 'fierce'
2. eə in **keəd** 'cared'
3. ʊə in **mʊəz** 'moors'
4. eɪ in **reɪd** 'raid'
5. aɪ in **taɪm** 'time'
6. əʊ in **kəʊt** 'coat'
7. aɪ in **kaɪt** 'kite'
8. ɪə in **bɪəd** 'beard'
9. ʊə in **tʊəz** 'tours'
10. əʊ in **bəʊn** 'bone'
11. ɔɪ in **bɔɪl** 'boil'
12. aʊ in **taʊn** 'town'

Tape Unit 4

Exercise 3

1. **p** in 'harp' **hɑ:p**
2. **g** in 'rogue' **rəʊg**
3. **t** in 'eight' **eɪt**
4. **d** in 'ride' **raɪd**
5. **b** in 'mob' **mɒb**
6. **k** in 'ache' **eɪk**
7. **d** in 'ode' **əʊd**
8. **p** in 'rip' **rɪp**
9. **g** in 'sag' **sæg**
10. **t** in 'feet' **fi:t**

Exercise 5

1. 'debate'
2. 'copied'
3. 'buttercup'
4. 'cuckoo'
5. 'decayed'
6. 'guarded'
7. 'dedicated'
8. 'paddock'
9. 'boutique'
10. 'appetite'

Tape Unit 5

Exercise 3

1. **geɪt** 'gate'
2. **kəʊt** 'coat'
3. **bɪt** 'bit'
4. **taɪəd** 'tired'
5. **bi:t** 'beat'
6. **pəʊk** 'poke'
7. **kɑ:t** 'cart'
8. **kɔ:t** 'caught'
9. **paʊə** 'power'
10. **kɔ:d** 'cord'
11. **gæp** 'gap'
12. **bɪəd** 'beard'
13. **kɑ:** 'car'
14. **peɪd** 'paid'
15. **gʌt** 'gut'
16. **daʊt** 'doubt'
17. **təʊd** 'toad'
18. **du:** 'do'
19. **peə** 'pair'
20. **dek** 'deck'

Exercise 4

1. keep
2. boat
3. cup
4. dirt
5. bike
6. cab
7. gate
8. cared
9. tired
10. bird
11. duck
12. cope
13. dog
14. coward
15. bake
16. tied
17. beard
18. put
19. bug
20. doubt

Tape Unit 6

Exercise 2

a) initial position
1. ʃ in **ʃəʊ** 'show'
2. θ in **θaɪ** 'thigh'
3. z in **zu:** 'zoo'
4. f in **fɑ:** 'far'
5. ð in **ðəʊ** 'though'

b) medial position
6. v in **əʊve** 'over'
7. ʒ in **meʒə** 'measure'
8. s in **aɪsɪŋ** 'icing'
9. ʃ in **eɪʃə** 'Asia'
10. h in **ehed** 'ahead'

c) final position
11. ð in **ləʊð** 'loathe'
12. v in **i:v** 'Eve'
13. ʃ in **æʃ** 'ash'
14. f in **rʌf** 'rough'
15. θ in **əʊθ** 'oath'

Tape Unit 7

Exercise 6

1. **ju:ʒʊəl** 'usual'
2. **rɪmeɪn** 'remain'
3. **eksəsaɪz** 'exercise'
4. **weərɪŋ** 'wearing'
5. **ɜ:dʒənt** 'urgent'
6. **mɪnɪməm** 'minimum'
7. **vaɪələns** 'violence'
8. **emfəsɪs** 'emphasis'
9. **dʒentlɪ** 'gently'
10. **θɪŋkɪŋ** 'thinking'
11. **taɪpraɪtə** 'typewriter'
12. **jɪəlɪ** 'yearly'

Tape Unit 8

Exercise 6 (Spellings)

1. 'scraped'
2. 'grudged'
3. 'clothes'
4. 'scripts'
5. 'crunched'
6. 'thrones'
7. 'plunged'
8. 'quench'

Tape Unit 9

Exercise 5

Note: The spelling is also given, but only the transcription was wanted for the correct answer.

1. **'gɑ:dn̩ə** 'gardener'
2. **'kɒləm** 'column'
3. **'hændl̩z** 'handles'
4. **ə'laɪv** 'alive'
5. **prɪ'tend** 'pretend'
6. **'sʌdn̩** 'sudden'
7. **'kæləs** 'callous'
8. **'θretn̩ɪŋ** threatening'
9. **pə'laɪt** 'polite'
10. **'pʌzl̩** 'puzzle'

Tape Unit 10

Exercise 1

1. **'enɪmi**
2. **kə'lekt**
3. **'kæpɪtl̩**
4. **kɔ:'neɪʃn̩**
5. **'pærədaɪs**
6. **səb'trækt**
7. **'elɪfənt**
8. **əb'zɜ:və**
9. **'prɒfɪt**
10. **entə'teɪn**

Exercise 2 (Spellings)

1. Shrewsbury
2. Polperro
3. Aberdeen
4. Wolverhampton
5. Aberystwyth
6. Birmingham
7. Northampton
8. Dundee
9. Canterbury
10. Basingstoke

Tape Unit 12

Exercise 3

1. **'li:v ðə 'rest əv ðə 'fu:d fə 'lʌnʃ**
2. **'ɑ:nt ðə səm 'letəz fər ə tu 'əʊpən**
3. **'weə də ðɪ 'egz kʌm frɒm**
4. **'ri:d ɪz 'bʊk ən 'raɪt səm 'nəʊts**
5. **ət 'li:st wi kən 'traɪ ən 'help**

Tape Unit 13

Exercise 1 (Spellings)

1. Colchester
2. Carlisle
3. Hereford
4. Scunthorpe
5. Glamorgan
6. Holyhead
7. Framlingham
8. Southend
9. Cheltenham
10. Inverness

Exercise 2

1. **ˈlestəʃə** (Leicestershire)
2. **dʌnˈfɜːmlɪn** (Dunfermline)
3. **ˈstiːvn̩ɪdʒ** (Stevenage)
4. **penˈzæns** (Penzance)
5. **ˈgɪlfəd** (Guildford)
6. **kəʊlˈreɪn** (Coleraine)
7. **ˈhʌdəsfiːld** (Huddersfield)
8. **heɪlzˈəʊɪn** (Halesowen)
9. **ˈwɪlmzləʊ** (Wilmslow)
10. **ˈbɑːnstəpl̩** (Barnstaple)

Exercise 3

1. 'James de'cided to 'type the 'letter him'self
2. The 'plane was app'roaching the 'runway at 'high 'speed
3. 'Try to 'see the 'other 'persons 'point of 'view
4. You 'put your 'brakes on when the 'light 'turns to 'red
5. In a 'short 'time the 'house was 'full of 'children

Tape Unit 14

Note: When recordings of conversational speech are used it is no longer possible to give definite decisions about "right" and "wrong" answers. Some problems, points of interest and alternative possibilities are mentioned.

1. **ə bjuːtʰfl̩ gɜːl** (Careful speech would have had **bjuːtɪfl̩** or **bjuːtɪful**.)
2. **wi siːm tə hæv ə defnət wʌn ðeə** (Careful speech would have **defɪnɪt**, **defɪnət** or **defn̩ət**; notice that this speaker uses a glottal stop at the end of 'definite' so the transcription – phonetic rather than phonemic – **defnəʔ** would be acceptable. There is a good example of assimilation in the pronunciation of 'one there'; as often happens when **n** and **ð** are combined, the n becomes dental **n̪**. In addition, the **ð** loses its friction – which is always weak – and becomes a dental nasal, so that this could be transcribed phonetically as **wʌn̪n̪eə**.)
3. **kəd ɪt bi ə stuːl rɑːððn̪ə teɪbl̩** (Careful speech would have **rɑːðə ðən ə**; the **ð** is long, so the symbol is written twice to indicate this.)

4. **ə fɪθ ɪn** (Careful speech would have **fɪfθ**; the transcription cannot, of course, show very fine details of articulation, but it is likely that though the sound one hears is most like **θ** there is some slight constriction between upper teeth and lower lip as well.)
5. **eni pʰkjuːljærətɪz əbaʊt ðæt** (The main elision is of the **ɪ** vowel in the first syllable of 'peculiarities'; a less noticeable case is that instead of having **i** before the **æ** in this word the speaker has a non-syllabic j; note the glottal stop at the end of 'about'.)
6. **æn haʊ mni straɪps ɒn jɔːz** (Careful speech would have **meni**; it is perhaps surprising that the speaker has **æ** rather than **ə** in 'and'; **jɔːz** is a frequently found alternative pronunciation to **jʊəz**.)
7. **wel ɪt əpɪəz tə bʌtn̩ ʌp ɪs gɒt θriː** (The elision is in 'its'; careful speech would have **ɪts** or, since this speaker uses glottal stops quite frequently – notice one between 'it' and 'appears' and another at the end of 'got' – **ɪʔs**.)
8. **ɔːðə wɒtjəkɔːl ɪt ðə sɪl** ('What do you call it' or 'what d'you call it' is used frequently when speakers cannot remember a word.)
9. **baɪ kɒləm ɪntʰ kɒləmz ɔːraɪt** (Careful speech would have **ɪntə** and **ɔːl raɪt**.)
10. **daɪəmən ʃeɪp pætʃ** (Careful speech would have **daɪəmənd ʃeɪpt pætʃ**.)
11. **ænd aɪ ʃd θɪŋk frɒm ɪkspɪrɪəns f krɪtʃɪn nɜɪvz** Careful speech would have **ʃʊd** or **ʃəd** and **əv**.)
12. **wɒt ʃ wi duː neks gəʊ daʊn** (Careful speech would have **ʃəl** and **nekst**.)
13. **ðiː tɒp f ðə bɒtl̩ ɪz prd̩ʒektɪŋ aʊtwədz ɪntʰ ðə ruːm** (Careful speech would have **əv**, **prədʒektɪŋ** and **ɪntə**; the **r** in 'projecting' is devoiced as well as being syllabic; notice the glottal stops, one before the **k** in 'projecting' and another before the **t** in 'outwards'; the strong form of 'the' at the beginning is probably a sort of slight hesitation.)

Tape Unit 15

Exercise 3

1. ˏone
2. ˏtwo
3. ˏthree
4. ˏfour
5. ˏfive
6. ˏsix
7. ˏnow
8. ˏyou
9. ˏmore
10. ˏus

Tape Unit 16

Exercise 1

1. We could go by bus
2. Of course its broken
3. The car was where Id left it
4. How much is the biggest one
5. I knew it would go wrong
6. It was too cold
7. Here it is
8. That was a loud noise
9. We could go from Manchester
10. Have you finished

Exercise 4

1. 'What 'time will they ,come
2. A 'day re'turn to ,London
3. The 'North ,Pole would be warmer
4. 'Have you de'cided to ,buy it
5. I re'corded them on cas,sette

Tape Unit 17

Exercise 4

1. 'Now 'heres the ,weather ·forecast
2. You ,didnt say ,anything about ,rates
3. A ,few ,years ago they were ,too
4. 'No-one could 'say the 'cinema was ,dead
5. Is there ,anything you ·wouldnt ·eat
6. 'Have you 'ever con'sidered ,writing
7. ,That was ,what he ,claimed to be
8. We 'try to do 'our 'shopping in the ,market
9. But I ,never ·go there ·now
10. It ,wouldnt be ,difficult to find ,out

Tape Unit 18

Note: Since these extracts were not spoken deliberately for illustrating intonation, it is not possible to claim that the transcription given here is the only correct version. There are several places where other transcrip-

tions would be acceptable, and suggestions about alternative possibilities are given with some items, in addition to a few other comments.

1. it 'looks like a 'French maga,zine (slight hesitation between 'looks' and 'like')
2. the 'television 'is plugged ,in
3. 'does your 'colander have a ,handle ('does' possibly not stressed)
4. a ,flap on it
5. 'you tell me about ,yours (narrow pitch movement on 'yours'; 'tell' may also be stressed)
6. 'well ,dark hair
7. ,more than ,half ,way
8. but er 'not in the ,other ·corners
9. a ,sort of ,Daily ,Sketch ·format ·newspaper ('sort' possibly not stressed)
10. 'on the ,top | 'on the ,lid (both pronunciations of 'on' might be unstressed)
11. well theyre 'on al,ternate ·steps | theyre 'not on ,every ·step
12. 'what about the ,vent | at the ,back
13. and a 'ladys ,handbag | ,hanging on a ,nail on the ,wall
14. 'you do the ,left hand ·bit of the ·picture | and ,Ill do the ,right hand ·bit
15. were being 'very par,ticular | but we 'just havent 'hit upon 'one of the ,differences ·yet (stress on 'just' is weak or absent)
16. and 'what about your tele,vision | 'two ,knobs | in the ,front |

Tape Unit 19

Note: transcription of natural speech involves making decisions that have the effect of simplifying complex phonetic events. The broad transcription given below is not claimed to be completely accurate, nor to be the only "correct" version.

ɪwəz 'rɑːðə ,fraɪʔnɪŋ
bɪkəz ðə ðərə ,skɔːz
ə ðiːz ,baɪs klz
ju 'riːli ,hæv tʊ
'hæv jə wɪts ə,baʊtʃu
'ɔːl ðə ,taɪm
bɪkəz ðə jə nəʊ ðə ðeɪ ,stop ·sʌdn̩li
ɪts ·ɔːkwəd
bkəz ðə ,træfɪk regjə·leɪʃn̩z
,ɑːmɔː ,pned ɪn ðə ,briːtʃ
ðən ði əb ,zaːvens
aɪm 'not ɪn ,nɒt riːli ·ʃɔː wɒt

ˌregjəleɪʃn̩z ðər ˌɑ:
fɹˌɪnstəns
ðiː ə ˌtɹæfɪk ˈlaɪts
ˈred ˌred ˈlaɪts
ˈduː nɒt ə ˌplaɪ
fjɔː ˈtɜːnɪŋ ˌraɪt
wɪtʃ ˌmiːnz ðət
ˈɪf jə kʌmɪŋ ˈʌp tu ə ˌtɹæfɪk ˈlaɪt
ˈsʌmwʌn ˌstɒpt
hʊˌwɒnts tə ˌgəʊ stɹeɪt ˌɒn
ɔː ˌtɜːn ˌleft
ən ˈjuː wɒnt tə tɜːn ˌraɪt
ðen ju ˈpʊl ˌaʊt
ˌəʊvə ˌtek ðəm
ən ðen ˈkʌt ə ˌkɹɒs
ɪn ˌfɹʌnt

Tape Unit 20

Exercise 1

1. I suppose the best thing is to try later.
2. If he's coming today there ought to be a letter around.
3. The world's greatest lawn tennis festival begins on Monday.
4. We've fixed for the repair man to come and mend it under guarantee.
5. The number's been engaged for over an hour.

Exercise 2

1. aɪ spəʊz ð̩ bes θɪŋz tʰ traɪ leɪtə
2. ɪf ɪz kʌmɪŋ tʰdeɪ ðɹ̩ ɔːt tʰ bi ə letɹ̩ ɹaʊnd
3. ðə wɜːlz greɪtʂ lɔːn tenɪs festʰvl̩ bɪgɪnz ɒn mʌndeɪ
4. wɪf fɪks fə ðə ɹpeə mæn tʰ kʌm əm mend ɪt ʌndə geərɪnti:
5. ð̩ nʌmbəz bɪn ɪŋgeɪdʒ fɹ̩ əʊvɹ̩ ən aʊə

Recommendations for general reading

References to reading on specific topics are given at the end of each chapter. The following is a list of basic books and papers recommended for broader areas of study: if you wish to go more fully into any of these areas you would do well to start by reading these. I would consider it very desirable that any library provided for students using this book should possess most or all of the books listed.

1. English phonetics and phonology

There are two major text-books in this area (sometimes irreverently known as the Old Testament and the New Testament): the older one is D. Jones, *An Outline of English Phonetics* (1918; 9th edition, Cambridge University Press, 1975); the newer one is A. C. Gimson, *An Introduction to the Pronunciation of English* (1962; 4th edition, revised by S. Ramsaran, London: Edward Arnold, 1989). Gimson's book is, not surprisingly, more up to date than Jones', and has the additional advantage of using almost exactly the same symbols as those used in this course. However, the Jones book contains much of value and of interest; both books are valuable sources of information for students who wish to go on to more advanced and detailed study after working through this course. A well-established and popular book at a much simpler level is J. D. O'Connor, *Better English Pronunciation* (2nd edition Cambridge University Press, 1980).

Two more recent books that approach the subject in rather different ways are G. Knowles, *Patterns of Spoken English* (London: Longman, 1987) and C. Kreidler, *The Pronunciation of English* (Oxford: Blackwell, 1989). There is a valuable collection of up-to-date papers on English phonetics in S. Ramsaran (ed.), *Studies in the Pronunciation of English* (London: Routledge, 1990), many of which give an idea of how research in this field is developing.

2. General phonetics

There are two good introductory books: one is P. Ladefoged, *A Course in Phonetics* (New York: Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, 1982) and the other is J. D. O'Connor *Phonetics* (Harmondsworth: Penguin, 1973). D. Abercrombie, *Elements of General Phonetics* (Edinburgh University Press, 1967) is also good, but less suitable as basic introductory reading. Catford, *A Practical Introduc-*

tion to Phonetics (Oxford University Press, 1988) is good for explaining the nature of practical phonetics. See also J. Laver, *Principles of Phonetics* (Cambridge University Press, forthcoming).

3. Phonology

Several books have appeared in recent years that explain the basic elements of phonological theory. P. Hawkins, *Introducing Phonology* (London: Hutchinson, 1984) and F. Katamba, *An Introduction to Phonology* (London: Longman: 1989) are the most basic. R. Lass, *Phonology: an introduction to basic concepts* (Cambridge University Press, 1984) is more advanced.

Covering both this area and the previous one in a readable and comprehensive way is J. Clark and C. Yallop, *An Introduction to Phonetics and Phonology* (Oxford: Blackwell, 1990).

The classic work on the generative phonology of English is N. Chomsky and M. Halle, *The Sound Pattern of English* (New York: Harper & Row, 1968); most people find this very difficult.

4. Accents of English

The major work in this area is J.C. Wells, *Accents of English*, 3 vols. (Cambridge University Press, 1982), a large and very valuable work which deals with accents of English throughout the world. A shorter and much easier introduction is A. Hughes and P. Trudgill, *English Accents and Dialects* (London: Edward Arnold, 1987).

5. Pronunciation teaching

A general book on the subject is MacCarthy, *The Teaching of Pronunciation* (Cambridge University Press, 1978). For English in particular, A.C. Gimson, *An Introduction to the Pronunciation of English* (4th edition, London: Edward Arnold, 1989), chapter 12 is worth reading. Among books written specifically about the teaching of English pronunciation, I would recommend A. Baker, *Introducing English Pronunciation* (Cambridge University Press, 1982), R. Hooke and J. Rowell, *A Handbook of English Pronunciation* (London: Edward Arnold, 1982) and J. Kenworthy, *Teaching English Pronunciation* (London: Longman, 1987).

6. Pronunciation dictionaries

Most modern English dictionaries now print one or more recommended pronunciations for each word listed, so for most purposes a dictionary which gives only pronunciations and not meanings is hardly worth having unless it gives a lot more information than an ordinary dictionary could. For many years the standard work has been the Everyman *English Pronouncing Dictionary* (originally by D. Jones; 14th edition revised by A. C. Gimson, London: Dent, 1977). The more recently published *Longman Pronouncing Dictionary* (J. C. Wells, London: Longman, 1990) contains much more information, and is recommended.

7. Intonation

Two important textbooks are D. Crystal *Prosodic Systems and Intonation* (Cambridge University Press, 1969) and A. Cruttenden *Intonation* (Cambridge University Press, 1986). Both of these deal with theoretical matters. Also recommended is E. Couper-Kuhlen, *An Introduction to English Prosody* (London: Edward Arnold, 1986). More practical guides are D. Brazil, M. Coulthard and C. Johns, *Discourse Intonation and Language Teaching* (London: Longman, 1980), V. Cook, *Using Intonation* (London: Longman, 1979) and J. D. O'Connor and G. F. Arnold, *The Intonation of Colloquial English* (2nd edition, London: Longman, 1973).

8. Stress

As suggested in the chapters dealing with this subject, E. Fudge, *English Word Stress* (London: Allen and Unwin, 1984) is a useful text-book on word stress. R. Kingdon, *The Groundwork of English Stress* (London: Longman, 1958) is still useful. On "sentence stress", see S. Schmerling, *Aspects of English Sentence Stress* (Austin: University of Texas Press, 1976).

Bibliography

Abercrombie, D. (1964) 'Syllable quantity and enclitics in English' in D. Abercrombie *et al.*, pp. 216–22

Abercrombie, D. (1965) 'RP and local accent' in *Studies in Phonetics and Linguistics*, pp. 10–15, Oxford University Press

Abercrombie, D. (1967) *Elements of General Phonetics*, Edinburgh University Press

Abercrombie, D., Fry, D. B., MacCarthy, P. A. D., Scott, N. C. and Trim, J. L. M. (eds.) (1964) *In Honour of Daniel Jones*, London: Longman

Adams, C. (1979) *English Speech Rhythm and the Foreign Learner*, The Hague: Mouton

Albright, R. W. (1958) 'The International Phonetic Alphabet: its backgrounds and development', *International Journal of American Linguistics*, vol. 24, no. 1

Arnold, G. F. (1957) 'Stress in English words', *Lingua*, vol. 6, no. 4, pp. 221–67

Arnold, G. F. (1967) 'Concerning the theory of plosives', *Le Maître Phonétique*, no. 125, reprinted in W. E. Jones and J. Laver (1973), pp. 29–32

Ashby, M. G. (1979) Review of A. Malecot, 'Contribution a l'étude de la force d'articulation en français', *Journal of the International Phonetic Association*, vol. 9, no. 2, pp. 74–80

Baker, A. (1982) *Introducing English Pronunciation*, Cambridge University Press

Bauer, L. (1983) *English Word-Formation*, Cambridge University Press

Bloomfield, L. (1933) *Language*, London: Allen and Unwin

Bolinger, D. (1951) 'Intonation – levels vs. configurations', *Word*, vol. 7, pp. 199–210

Bolinger, D. (1972) 'Accent is predictable (if you're a mind-reader)', *Language*, vol. 48, pp. 633–44

Borden, G. and Harris, K. S. (1984) *A Speech Science Primer*, 2nd edition, London: Williams and Wilkins

Brazil, D., Coulthard, M. and Johns, C. (1980) *Discourse Intonation and Language Teaching*, London: Longman

Brown, G. (1990) *Listening to Spoken English*, 2nd edition, London: Longman (1st edition 1977)

Brown, G., Curry, K. and Kenworthy, J. (1980) *Questions of Intonation*, London: Croom Helm

Brown, G. and Yule, G. (1983) *Teaching the Spoken Language*, Cambridge University Press

Catford, J. C. (1964) 'Phonation types', in D. Abercrombie *et al.*, pp. 26–37

Catford, J. C. (1968) 'The articulatory possibilities of man', in B. Malmberg (ed.) *Manual of Phonetics*, pp. 309–33, Amsterdam: North Holland

Catford, J. C. (1977) *Fundamental Problems in Phonetics*, Edinburgh University Press

Catford, J. C. (1988) *A Practical Introduction to Phonetics*, Oxford University Press

Chen, M. (1970) 'Vowel length variation as a function of the voicing of the consonant environment', *Phonetica*, vol. 22, pp. 129–59

Chomsky, N. and Halle, M. (1968) *The Sound Pattern of English*, New York: Harper and Row

Clark, J. and Yallop, C. (1990) *An Introduction to Phonetics and Phonology*, Oxford: Blackwell

Cook, V. (1979) *Using Intonation*, London: Longman

Coulthard, M. (1977) *An Introduction to Discourse Analysis*, London: Longman

Couper-Kuhlen, E. (1986) *An Introduction to English Prosody*, London: Edward Arnold

Cruttenden, A. (1970) 'On the so-called grammatical function of intonation', *Phonetica*, vol. 21, pp. 182–92

Cruttenden, A. (1986) *Intonation*, Cambridge University Press

Crystal, D. (1969) *Prosodic Systems and Intonation in English*, Cambridge University Press

Crystal, D. (1975) *The English Tone of Voice*, London: Edward Arnold

Crystal, D. and Quirk, R. (1964) *Systems of Prosodic and Paralinguistic Features in English*, The Hague: Mouton

Dauer, R. (1983) 'Stress-timing and syllable-timing reanalyzed', *Journal of Phonetics*, vol. 11, pp. 51–62

Davidsen-Neilsen, N. (1969) 'English stops after initial /s/', *English Studies*, vol. 50, pp. 321–8

Denes, P. and Pinson, E. (1973) *The Speech Chain*, 2nd edition, New York: Anchor

Fox, A. T. C. (1973) 'Tone sequences in English', *Archivum Linguisticum*, vol. 4, pp. 17–26

Fox, A. T. C. (1978) 'To 'r' is human?', *Journal of the International Phonetic Association*, vol. 8, pp. 72–4

Fry, D. B. (1958) 'Experiments in the perception of stress', *Language and Speech*, vol. 1, pp. 126–52, reprinted in D. B. Fry (ed.) *Acoustic Phonetics*, Cambridge University Press

Fudge, E. C. (1967) 'The nature of phonological primes', *Journal of Linguistics*, vol. 3, no. 1, pp. 1–36

Fudge, E. C. (1969) 'Syllables', *Journal of Linguistics*, vol. 5, pp. 253–86

Fudge, E. C. (1984) *English Word Stress*, London: Allen and Unwin

Gimson, A. C. (1960) 'The instability of English alveolar articulations', *Le Maître Phonétique*, vol. 113, pp. 7–10

Gimson, A. C. (1964) 'Phonetic change and the RP vowel system' in D. Abercrombie *et al.*, pp. 131–6

Gimson, A. C. (1977) *English Pronouncing Dictionary*, 14th edition, London: Dent

Gimson, A. C. (1989) *An Introduction to the Pronunciation of English*, 4th edition, revised by S. Ramsaran, London: Edward Arnold

Goldsmith, J. A. (1990) *Autosegmental and Metrical Phonology*, Oxford: Blackwell

Halliday, M. A. K. (1967) *Intonation and Grammar in British English*, The Hague: Mouton

Hardcastle, W. J. (1976) *Physiology of Speech Production*, London: Academic Press

Hardcastle, W. J. and Roach, P. J. (1979) 'An instrumental investigation of coarticulation in stop consonant sequences' in H. H. and P. Hollien (eds.) *Current Issues in the Phonetic Sciences*, Amsterdam: John Benjamins

Hawkins, P. (1984) *Introducing Phonology*, London: Hutchinson

Henderson, E. J. A. (1971) *The Indispensable Foundation*, Oxford University Press

Hogg, R. and McCully, C. B. (1987) *Metrical Phonology: a coursebook*, Cambridge University Press

Holmes, J. N. (1988) *Speech Synthesis and Recognition*, van Nostrand Reinhold

Honey, J. (1989) *Does Accent Matter?* London: Faber & Faber

Honikman, B. (1964) 'Articulatory settings' in D. Abercrombie *et al.*, pp. 73–84

Hooke, R. and Rowell, J. (1982) *A Handbook of English Pronunciation*, London: Edward Arnold

Hughes, A. and Trudgill, P. (1987) *English Accents and Dialects*, 2nd edition, London: Edward Arnold

Hyman, L. (1975) *Phonology: Theory and Analysis*, New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston

Jakobson, R., Fant, C. G. M. and Halle, M. (1952) *Preliminaries to Speech Analysis*, Harvard, Mass.: MIT

Jakobson, R. and Halle, M. (1956) *Fundamentals of Language*, The Hague: Mouton

Jakobson, R. and Halle, M. (1964) 'Tenseness and laxness' in Abercrombie, D. *et al.*, pp. 96–101

James, A. R. (1988) *The Acquisition of a Second Language Phonology*, Tübingen: Narr

Jones, D. (1931) 'The word as a phonetic entity', *Le Maître Phonétique*, vol. 36, pp. 60–5, reprinted in W. E. Jones and J. Laver (1973), pp. 96–101

Jones, D. (1956) *The Pronunciation of English*, 4th edition, Cambridge University Press (first published 1909)

Jones, D. (1975) *An Outline of English Phonetics*, 9th edition, Cambridge University Press

Jones, D. (1976) *The Phoneme: its Nature and Use*, Cambridge University Press

Jones, W. E. and Laver, J. (eds.) (1973) *Phonetics in Linguistics*, London: Longman

Kahn, D. (1976) *Syllable-based Generalisations in English Phonology*, Indiana University Linguistics Club

Katamba, F. (1989) *An Introduction to Phonology*, London: Longman

Kenworthy, J. (1987) *Teaching English Pronunciation*, London: Longman

Kingdon, R. (1958a) *The Groundwork of English Intonation*, London: Longman

Kingdon, R. (1958b) *The Groundwork of English Stress*, London: Longman

Knowles, G. O. (1987) *Patterns of Spoken English*, London: Longman

Krashen, S. (1981) *Second Language Acquisition and Second Language Learning*, Oxford: Pergamon

Kreidler, C. W. (1989) *The Pronunciation of English*, Oxford: Blackwell

Labov, W. (1972) *Sociolinguistic Patterns*, Oxford: Blackwell

Ladefoged, P. (1965) 'The nature of general phonetic theories', *Georgetown University Monograph Series on Languages and Linguistics*, vol. 18, pp. 27–42

Ladefoged, P. (1967) *Three Areas of Experimental Phonetics*, Oxford University Press

Ladefoged, P. (1982) *A Course in Phonetics*, 2nd edition, New York: Harcourt Brace Jovanovich

Lass, R. (1984) *Phonology*, Cambridge University Press

Laver, J. (1968) 'Voice quality and indexical information', *British Journal of Disorders of Communication*, vol. 3, pp. 43–54

Laver, J. (1980) *The Phonetic Description of Voice Quality*, Cambridge University Press

Laver, J. (forthcoming) *Principles of Phonetics*, Cambridge University Press

Lee, W. R. (1958) *English Intonation: A New Approach*, Amsterdam: North Holland

Lehiste, I. (1977) 'Isochrony reconsidered', *Journal of Phonetics*, vol. 5, pp. 253–63

Lieberman, P. and Michaels, S. B. (1962) 'Some aspects of fundamental frequency and envelope amplitude as related to the emotional content

of speech', *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*, vol. 34, pp. 922–7, reprinted in D. Bolinger (ed.) (1972) *Intonation*, Harmondsworth: Penguin, pp. 235–49

Lieberman, P. and Blumstein, S. (1988) *Speech Physiology, Speech Perception and Acoustic Phonetics*, Cambridge University Press

Lisker, L. (1970) 'Supraglottal air pressure in the production of English stops', *Language and Speech*, vol. 13, pp. 215–30

Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English, 2nd edition (1987), London: Longman

MacCarthy, P. A. D. (1952) *English Pronunciation*, 4th edition, Cambridge: Heffer

MacCarthy, P. A. D. (1978) *The Teaching of Pronunciation*, Cambridge University Press

MacMahon, M. K. C. (1986) 'The International Phonetic Association: the first 100 years', *Journal of the International Phonetic Association*, vol. 16, pp. 30–8

Mortimer, C. (1984) *Elements of Pronunciation*, Cambridge University Press

Nolan, F. (1973) *The Phonetic Bases of Speaker Recognition*, Cambridge University Press

O'Connor, J. D. (1957) 'The fall–rise tone in English', *Moderna Sprak*, pp. 27–37

O'Connor, J. D. (1973) *Phonetics*, Harmondsworth: Penguin

O'Connor, J. D. (1980) *Better English Pronunciation*, 2nd edition, Cambridge University Press

O'Connor, J. D. and Trim, J. L. M. (1953) 'Vowel, consonant and syllable: a phonological definition', *Word*, vol. 9, no. 2, pp. 103–22, reprinted in W. E. Jones and J. Laver (1973), pp. 240–61

O'Connor, J. D. and Arnold, G. F. (1973) *The Intonation of Colloquial English*, 2nd edition (first published 1962), London: Longman

O'Connor, J. D. and Tooley, O. M. (1964) 'The perceptibility of certain word boundaries' in D. Abercrombie *et al.*, pp. 171–6

Palmer, H. E. (1924) *English Intonation with Systematic Exercises*, Cambridge: Heffer

Pierrehumbert, J. (1979) 'The perception of fundamental frequency declination', *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*, vol. 66, pp. 363–9

Pierrehumbert, J. (1987) *The Phonetics and Phonology of English Intonation*, Indiana Linguistics Club

Pike, K. L. (1943) *Phonetics*, University of Michigan Press

Pike, K. L. (1945) *The Intonation of American English*, University of Michigan Press

Pike, K. L. (1947) *Phonemics*, University of Michigan Press

Pike, K. L. (1948) *Tone Languages*, University of Michigan Press

Pring, J. T. (1976) 'More thoughts on the r-link business', *Journal of the International Phonetic Association*, vol. 6, no. 2, pp. 92–5

Ramsaran, S. (ed.) (1990) *Studies in the Pronunciation of English*, London: Routledge

Roach, P. J. (1973) 'Glottalisation of /p, t, k, tʃ/: a re-examination', *Journal of the International Phonetic Association*, vol. 3, no. 1

Roach, P. J. (1979) 'Laryngeal-oral coarticulation in glottalised English plosives', *Journal of the International Phonetic Association*, vol. 9, no. 1, pp. 1–6

Roach, P. J. (1982) 'On the distinction between "stress-timed" and "syllable-timed" languages', in D. Crystal (ed.) *Linguistic Controversies*, London: Edward Arnold

Roach, P. J. (1987) 'Rethinking phonetic taxonomy', *Transactions of the Philological Society*, pp. 24–37

Roach, P. J. (1991) 'Transcription', *Oxford International Encyclopedia of Linguistics*, Oxford University Press

Sapir, E. (1925) 'Sound patterns in language', *Language*, vol. 1, pp. 37–51

Schmerling, S. (1976) *Aspects of English Sentence Stress*, Austin: University of Texas Press

Sharp, A. E. (1958) 'Falling-rising intonation patterns in English', *Phonetica*, vol. 2, pp. 127–52

Sledd, J. (1955) Review of Trager and Smith (1951), *Language*, vol. 31, pp. 312–45

Taylor, D. S. (1981) 'Non-native speakers and the rhythm of English' *International Review of Applied Linguistics*, vol. 19, no. 3, pp. 219–26

Trager, G. L. (1964) 'The intonation system of American English' in D. Abercrombie *et al.*, pp. 266–70

Trager, G. L. and Smith, H. L. (1951) *An Outline of English Structure*, Washington, DC: American Council of Learned Societies

Trim, J. L. M. (1959) 'Major and minor tone groups in English', *Le Maître Phonétique*, vol. 112, pp. 26–9, reprinted in W. E. Jones and J. Laver (eds.) (1973) pp. 320–3

Trubetzkoy, N. S. (1939) *Grundzüge der Phonologie*, Transactions du Cercle Linguistique de Prague, 7. (English translation: *Principles of Phonology*, transl. C. A. M. Baltaxe, Berkeley: University of California Press, 1969)

Uldall, E. T. (1960) 'Attitudinal meanings conveyed by intonation', *Language and Speech*, vol. 3, pp. 223–34

Uldall, E. T. (1964) 'Dimensions of meaning in intonation' in D. Abercrombie *et al.*, pp. 271–9

Vachek, J. (1964) 'Notes on the phonematic value of the modern English /ŋ/ sound' in D. Abercrombie *et al.*, pp. 191–205

Wells, J. C. (1965) 'The phonological status of syllabic consonants in English RP', *Phonetica*, vol. 13, pp. 110–13

Wells, J. C. (1970) 'Local accents in England and Wales', *Journal of Linguistics*, vol. 6, no. 2, pp. 231–52

Wells, J. C. (1982) *Accents of English*, 3 vols. Cambridge University Press

Wells, J. C. (1987) 'Computer-coded phonetic transcription', *Journal of the International Phonetic Association*, vol. 17, no. 2, pp. 94–114

Wells, J. C. (1990) *Longman Pronunciation Dictionary*, London: Longman

Wells, R. S. (1945) 'The pitch phonemes of English', *Language*, vol. 21, pp. 27–39

Windsor Lewis, J. (1975a) 'Linking /r/ in the General British pronunciation of English', *Journal of the International Phonetic Association*, vol. 5, no. 1, pp. 37–42

Windsor Lewis, J. (1975b) 'The undesirability of length marks in EFL phonemic transcription', *Journal of the International Phonetic Association*, vol. 5, no. 2, pp. 64–71

Windsor Lewis, J. (1977a) 'The r-link business – a reply', *Journal of the International Phonetic Association*, vol. 7, no. 1, pp. 28–31

Windsor Lewis, J. (1977b) *People Speaking*, Oxford University Press

Index

accents 4, 188–90
  American 81
  Irish 5
  model 6
  Northern 5
  rhotic 60–1
  Royal Family 25
  Scottish 5
  Southern 5
acoustic phonetics 185
Adam's Apple 26
affix word 95
affricate 47, 52, 110–13
airstream, pulmonic 29
allophone 38
alphabet 36
alveolar ridge 9
American pronunciation 4
approximant 59–60
  post-alveolar 59–61
articulators 8
articulatory setting 131–2
articulatory phonetics 8, 185
aspiration 32, 38
assimilation 123–6
  progressive 124
  regressive 24
auditory phonetics 185
auxiliary verb 107

BBC 24
body language 167, 178
brackets 42
breath-group 150
breathing 8
breathy voice 51

cartilage 26
  arytenoid 27
centralisation 42
chart, consonant 61–2
Chinese 10, 136
cluster, consonant 68
coarticulation 130–1
communication 6
comparative 57
compound tone 160
compound word 95, 98–100
computer analysis of speech 185–7
consonants
  affricate 47
  alveolar 9, 56
  bilabial 10, 56
  dental 9
  fricative 47
  glottal 28
  labiodental 10
  lateral 58–9
  nasal 10, 56–8
  retroflex 60
  velar 56
contoid 16
contracted form 102
cover term 35

declination 156
diacritics 42
dialect 4
dialectology 187
diphthong 20
  centring 20, 21
  closing 20, 21
distinctive features 182–4, 190–1

distribution 11, 16, 61
complementary 38

elision 127–8
experimental phonetics 184–7, 191
extra pitch height 137, 142

facial expression 166
fall–rise tone 137, 139, 152–3
falling tone 137, 138
foot 121
force of articulation 34
fortis 33, 52–4
free variation 38
frequency 30, 134
fundamental 141
fricative 47–52
glottal 28
groove 54
slit 54
function word 90, 102, 172

generative phonology 92
gesture 166
glottal stop 28
glottalisation 53–4
glottis 27, 53

hard palate 9
head 146
high 154–7
low 154–7
homorganic 47

intensity 30
International Phonetic Association xi, 16, 39, 45
Chart 40–1
intonation x, 4, 44
contrastive 173
question 175
subordination 177–8, 180
intonation functions
accentual 163, 172–3
attitudinal 63, 164–6
discourse 163, 176–8
grammatical 163, 174–6
syntagmatic 164, 172–8
intrusive r 131

jaws 10
juncture 128–30

key 166, 178
Kono 136

larynx 8, 10, 26
lateral 58–9
lateral release 79
length 86
length-mark 18, 19, 24
lenis 33, 52–4
level tone 140, 145, 157
lexical word 90
linking 128
linking r 128
lip-rounding 14
lip-spreading 14
lips 10
loan word 90
loudness 86
lungs 8, 29

metrical phonology 130
minimal pair 82
morpheme 57
morphology 57
muscles 8

nasal release 80
neutralisation 77, 115

paralinguistic 167, 169–70
pause 150, 166, 174
pharynx 9
phonation 30
phonation type 170
phoneme 3, 36, 38, 110–18
phonemic analysis 110–15
phonemic assignment 110, 115–16

phonemic system 38, 43
phonetics 3
phonology 3, 43
pitch 86, 133
pitch phoneme 141
pitch range 166
plosion 30
plosive
  closure 30
  hold 30
  English 31
  post-release phase 31
  release 30, 31, 71
pre-head 146–7
prefix 95, 98
preposition 105
pressure, subglottal 30
prominence 86
pronunciation teaching 6

question-tag 175–6

r-sound 59–61
realisation 38
Received Pronunciation (RP) 4
respiration 29
retroflex 60
rhotic 60–1
rhythm 120–3
  syllable-timed 121
  stress-timed 120–1
ribs 29
rise–fall tone 137, 139–40, 152–4
rising tone 137, 138

schwa 76
  vowel 16, 20
second language
    acquisition/learning 190, 192
segment 36
semivowel 61
sentence stress 172
sociolinguistics 89
soft palate 9
speech chain 185
speech synthesis 87
  by rule 120
spelling 3, 76
stress x, 4, 44, 75
  levels 87–8
  perception 85–6
  primary 87
  production 85
  simple words 85–93
  tonic 145
  word 88–9
stricture 29
stylistic variation 190
    suffix 95, 96–8
superlative 57
suprasegmental phonology 133
suprasegmental variable
  paralinguistic 167, 169–70
  prosodic 166
  sequential 166
syllabic consonant 72, 75, 78–82, 114
syllable 44, 67–74
  tonic 145, 157
syllable coda 67
syllable onset 67
syllable rhyme 73
symbols ix, 3, 6, 19, 39, 42, 45
  computer 45

tail 147
teeth 9, 49
tonal rhyme 153
tone 135
tone language 135–6, 141–2
tone-unit 144–50
  anomalous 159
  compound 146
  simple 146
tone-unit boundary 145, 158–9, 160, 166
tongue 9, 11, 49
trachea 26

transcription 39
broad 42
narrow 42
phonetic 42
triphthong 23
turn-taking 178

utterance 134

variable stress 100
velar nasal 63–5, 113
velum 9
vocal apparatus 10
vocal cords 27
vocal effects 167
vocal folds 26
vibration 28
vocal tract 8
vocoid 16
voice quality 30, 170
voicing 30, 31
vowel glide 20
vowel length 34
vowel quadrilateral 13, 17
vowel quality 86
vowels 10, 11
back 12
Cardinal 13
close 11
lax 24
long 18
open 11
pure 20
short 14
tense 24

weak form 102–9
weak syllable 75–84
whisper 28

X-ray 185

当代国外语言学与应用语言学文库索引

General Linguistics 普通语言学

Poole, S.	*An Introduction to Linguistics* 语言学入门
Radford, A.M., et al.	*Linguistics: An Introduction* 语言学教程
Robins, R.H.	*General Linguistics* Fourth edition 普通语言学概论
Yule, G.	*The Study of Language* Second edition 语言研究

Phonetics and Phonology 语音学与音系学

Clark, J. et al.	*An Introduction to Phonetics and Phonology* 语音学与音系学入门
Roach, P.	*English Phonetics and Phonology: A Practical Course* Second edition 英语语音学与音系学实用教程

Syntax 句法学

Cook, V.	*Chomsky's Universal Grammar: An Introduction* Second edition 乔姆斯基的普遍语法教程
Radford, A.	*Syntax: A Minimalist Introduction* 句法学:最简方案导论
Radford, A.	*Transformational Grammar: A First Course* 转换语法教程

Semantics 语义学

Lyons, J.	*Linguistic Semantics: An Introduction* 语义学引论
Saeed, J.I.	*Semantics* 语义学

Morphology 形态学

Matthews, P.H.	*Morphology* Second edition 形态学

Pragmatics语用学

Peccei, J.S. *Pragmatics*
语用学

Verschueren, J. *Understanding Pragmatics*
语用学新解

Discourse Analysis 话语分析

Brown, G. et al. *Discourse Analysis*
话语分析

Gee, J.P. *An Introduction to Discourse Analysis: Theory & Method*
话语分析入门:理论与方法

Lexicography 词典学

Hartmann, R.R.K. et al. *Dictionary of Lexicography*
词典编纂学手册

Stylistics 文体学

Thornborrow, J. et al. *Stylistics for Students of Language and Literature*
语言模式:文体学入门

Wright, L. et al. *Stylistics: A Practical Coursebook*
实用文体学教程

Typology 语言类型学

Croft, W. *Typology and Universals*
语言类型学与普遍语法特征

Sociolinguistics 社会语言学

Fasold, R. *The Sociolinguistics of Language*
社会语言学

Hudson, R.A. *Sociolinguistics* Second edition
社会语言学

Wardhaugh, R. *Introduction to Sociolinguistics* Third edition
社会语言学引论

Psycholinguistics 心理语言学

Aitchison, J. *The Articulate Mammal: An Introduction to Psycholinguistics* Fourth edition
会说话的哺乳动物:心理语言学入门

Carroll, D.W. *Psychology of Language* Third edition
语言心理学

Intercultural Communication 跨文化交际

Samovar, L.A.et al. *Communication Between Cultures* Second edition
跨文化交际

Scollon, R.et al. *Intercultural Communication*
跨文化交际

Translatology 翻译学

Baker, M. *In Other Words: A Coursebook on Translation*
换言之:翻译教程

Functional Linguistics 功能语言学

Halliday, M.A.K. *An Introduction to Functional Grammar* Second edition
功能语法导论

Thompson, G. *Introducing Functional Grammar*
功能语法入门

Historical Linguistics 历史语言学

Trask, R.L. *Historical Linguistics*
历史语言学

Corpus Linguistics 语料库语言学

Biber, D.et al. *Corpus Linguistics*
语料库语言学

Kennedy, G. *An Introduction to Corpus Linguistics*
语料库语言学入门

Statistics in Linguistics 语言统计学

Woods, A.et al. *Statistics in Language Studies*
语言研究中的统计学

History of the English Language 英语史

Freeborn, D. *From Old English to Standard English* Second edition
英语史:从古代英语到标准英语

Child Language 儿童语言

Pecoci, J.S. *Child Language* New edition
儿童语言

Learning Strategies 学习策略

Cohen, A.D. *Strategies in Learning and Using a Second Language*
学习与运用第二语言的策略

First Language Acquisition 第一语言习得

Goodluck, H. *Language Acquisition: A Linguistic Introduction*
从语言学的角度看语言习得

Second Language Acquisition 第二语言习得

Cook, V. *Linguistics and Second Language Acquisition*
语言学和第二语言习得

Cook, V. *Second Language Learning and Language Teaching*
Second edition
第二语言学习与教学

Larsen-Freeman, D. et al. *An Introduction to Second Language Acquisition Research*
第二语言习得研究概况

Research Method 研究方法

McDonough, J. et al. *Research Methods for English Language Teachers*
英语教学科研方法

Slade, C. *Form and Style: Research Papers, Reports, Theses*
Tenth edition
如何写研究论文与学术报告

Academic Writing 学术写作

Roberts, W.H. et al. *About Language: A Reader for Writers* Fifth edition
读语言:写作读本

Methodology 教学法

Harmer, J. *How to Teach English*
怎样教英语

Richards, J. et al. *Approaches and Methods in Language Teaching*
语言教学的流派

Trudgill, P. et al. *International English* Third edition
英语:国际通用语

Ur, P. *A Course in Language Teaching: Practice and Theory*
语言教学教程:理论与实践

Testing 测试学

Alderson, J.C. et al. *Language Test Construction and Evaluation*
语言测试的设计与评估

Heaton, J.B. *Writing English Language Tests* New edition
英语测试

Course Design 课程设计

Yalden, J. *Principles of Course Design for Language Teaching*
语言教学课程设计原理

English Grammar 英语语法

Biber, D. et al. *Longman Grammar of Spoken and Written English*
朗文英语口语和笔语语法

Dictionary 辞典

Bussmann, H. *Routledge Dictionary of Language and Linguistics*
语言与语言学辞典

Richards, J.C. et al. *Longman Dictionary of Language Teaching & Applied Linguistics*
朗文语言教学及应用语言学辞典(英英·英汉双解)